

***Photoshop***<sup>®</sup>  
***Elements 7***  
FOR  
**DUMMIES**<sup>®</sup>

by **Barbara Obermeier and Ted Padova**



WILEY

Wiley Publishing, Inc.



***Photoshop***<sup>®</sup>  
***Elements 7***  
FOR  
**DUMMIES**<sup>®</sup>

by **Barbara Obermeier and Ted Padova**



WILEY

Wiley Publishing, Inc.

## Photoshop® Elements 7 For Dummies®

Published by  
**Wiley Publishing, Inc.**  
111 River Street  
Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774  
[www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com)

Copyright © 2009 by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Legal Department, Wiley Publishing, Inc., 10475 Crosspoint Blvd., Indianapolis, IN 46256, (317) 572-3447, fax (317) 572-4355, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

**Trademarks:** Wiley, the Wiley Publishing logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com, Making Everything Easier, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. Photoshop is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Wiley Publishing, Inc., is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

**LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ.**

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit [www.wiley.com/techsupport](http://www.wiley.com/techsupport).

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2008937853

ISBN: 978-0-470-39700-8

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1





## About the Authors

**Barbara Obermeier** is the principal of Obermeier Design, a graphic design studio in Ventura, California. She is the author of *Photoshop CS3 All-in-One Desk Reference For Dummies* and has contributed as author or coauthor on numerous books on Photoshop, Photoshop Elements, Illustrator, and PowerPoint. She is currently a faculty member in the Graphic Design Department at Brooks Institute.

**Ted Padova** is the former chief executive officer and managing partner of The Image Source Digital Imaging and Photo Finishing Centers of Ventura and Thousand Oaks, California. He has been involved in digital imaging since founding a service bureau in 1990. He retired from his company in 2005 and now spends his time writing and speaking on Acrobat, PDF forms, and LiveCycle Designer forms.

Ted has written more than 30 computer books and is the world's leading author on Adobe Acrobat. He has written books on Adobe Acrobat, Adobe Photoshop, Adobe Photoshop Elements, Adobe Reader, Microsoft PowerPoint, and Adobe Illustrator. Recent books published by John Wiley and Sons include *Adobe Acrobat PDF Bible*, *Acrobat and LiveCycle Designer Forms Bible*, *Adobe Creative Suite Bible*, *Color Correction for Digital Photographers Only*, *Color Correction for Digital Photographers For Dummies*, and *Microsoft PowerPoint 2007 For Dummies — Just the Steps*.

## Authors' Acknowledgments

The authors would like to thank our excellent project editor, Kim Darosett, who kept us and this book on track; Bob Woerner, our great Executive Editor; Andy Cummings, Dummies Royalty; Dennis Cohen, technical editing wizard; Laura Miller, copy editor, who made what we wrote sound better; and all the dedicated production staff at Wiley. Additionally, we would like to thank Don Mason of Don Mason Photography, Bakersfield California for helping us out with some tone corrections and his expert advice on digital color correction.

**Barbara Obermeier:** A special thanks to Ted Padova, my coauthor, and friend, who always reminds me there is still a 1 in 53 million chance that we can win the lottery.

**Ted Padova:** My first choice always in coauthoring a book is to do the job with Barbara Obermeier. There's no one I'd rather work with, and I thank Barbara for initially putting together this project and asking me to join her.

## Publisher's Acknowledgments

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments through our online registration form located at <http://dummies.custhelp.com>. For other comments, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

### *Acquisitions and Editorial*

**Project Editor:** Kim Darosett  
**Executive Editor:** Bob Woerner  
**Copy Editor:** Laura Miller  
**Technical Editor:** Dennis Cohen  
**Editorial Manager:** Leah Cameron  
**Editorial Assistant:** Amanda Foxworth  
**Sr. Editorial Assistant:** Cherie Case  
**Cartoons:** Rich Tennant  
([www.the5thwave.com](http://www.the5thwave.com))

### *Composition Services*

**Project Coordinator:** Kristie Rees  
**Layout and Graphics:** Claudia Bell, Carl Byers,  
Melissa K. Jester, Ronald Terry,  
Christine Williams  
**Proofreader:** Melanie Hoffman  
**Indexer:** Potomac Indexing, LLC

---

### **Publishing and Editorial for Technology Dummies**

**Richard Swadley**, Vice President and Executive Group Publisher  
**Andy Cummings**, Vice President and Publisher  
**Mary Bednarek**, Executive Acquisitions Director  
**Mary C. Corder**, Editorial Director

### **Publishing for Consumer Dummies**

**Diane Graves Steele**, Vice President and Publisher

### **Composition Services**

**Gerry Fahey**, Vice President of Production Services  
**Debbie Stailey**, Director of Composition Services

# Table of Contents

## *Introduction* ..... 1

About This Book.....	2
Conventions Used in This Book.....	2
How This Book Is Organized.....	3
Part I: Getting Started.....	3
Part II: Getting Organized.....	3
Part III: Selecting and Correcting Photos.....	3
Part IV: Exploring Your Inner Artist.....	4
Part V: Printing, Creating, and Sharing.....	4
Part VI: The Part of Tens.....	5
Icons Used in This Book.....	5
Where to Go from Here.....	5

## *Part I: Getting Started* ..... 7

### **Chapter 1: Getting to Know the Work Area** ..... 9

Launching Photoshop Elements 7.....	10
Getting Around in Full Edit Mode.....	11
Jumping to Full Edit mode.....	11
Examining the image window.....	12
Moving through the menu bar.....	15
Uncovering the context menus.....	17
Using the Tools panel.....	17
Playing with panels.....	18
Selecting tool options from the Options bar.....	19
Juggling all your interface options.....	19
Looking at shortcuts.....	20
Changing Workspaces.....	21
Using Quick Edit mode.....	21
Using creation tools.....	23
Using the Project Bin.....	23
Creating different views of an image.....	24
Hiding the Project Bin.....	24
Using Bin Actions.....	25
Retracing Your Steps.....	25
Using the Undo History panel.....	25
Reverting to the last save.....	26
Getting a Helping Hand.....	27
Using Help.....	27
Using PDFs from the installation CD.....	28
Using ToolTips.....	28

**Chapter 2: Getting Ready to Edit . . . . . 29**

Controlling the Editing Environment .....	29
Launching and navigating Preferences .....	30
Checking out all the Preferences panes .....	31
Controlling the Organizing Environment.....	32
Understanding the Photoshop Elements Organizer .....	32
Navigating Organizer preferences .....	33
Setting preferences in all the panes .....	34
Customizing Presets.....	35
Getting Familiar with Color .....	36
Introducing color channels .....	36
Understanding bit depth.....	37
Getting Color Right.....	38
Calibrating your monitor .....	39
Choosing a color workspace .....	40
Understanding how profiles work .....	41

**Chapter 3: Working with Resolutions, Color Modes, and File Formats . . . . . 43**

The Ubiquitous Pixels .....	43
Understanding resolution .....	44
Understanding image dimensions .....	46
The Art of Resampling .....	46
Changing image size and resolution.....	46
Understanding the results of resampling .....	48
Choosing a Resolution for Print or Onscreen .....	49
Go Ahead — Make My Mode! .....	50
Converting to Bitmap mode .....	51
Converting to Grayscale mode.....	52
Converting to Indexed Color mode .....	55
Saving Files with Purpose.....	56
Using the Save/Save As dialog box.....	57
Saving files for the Web.....	58
Understanding file formats .....	58
File formats at a glance .....	64
Audio and video formats supported in Elements.....	66

**Part II: Getting Organized..... 67****Chapter 4: Getting Your Images . . . . . 69**

Digital Cameras versus Scanners and Film Cameras .....	70
Grabbing Images from Your Camera.....	71
Choosing a file format .....	71
Using the AutoPlay Wizard.....	72
Using Adobe Photoshop Elements 7.0 – Photo Downloader.....	74
Resizing images from digital cameras.....	75

Using a Scanner.....	76
Preparing before you scan.....	76
Understanding image requirements.....	77
Using scanner plug-ins.....	78
Scanning many photos at a time.....	79
Getting Files from Storage Media.....	80
Using Online Services.....	81
Phoning In Your Images.....	81
Creating Images from Scratch.....	82
A Basic Primer on Camera Raw.....	84
Understanding Camera Raw.....	85
Acquiring Camera Raw images.....	85

## **Chapter 5: Viewing and Finding Your Images . . . . . 93**

The Many Faces of the Organizer.....	93
Adding files to the default Organizer view.....	94
Changing the Organizer display.....	95
Viewing photos in a slide show (Full Screen view).....	99
Moving around the Image Window.....	104
Zooming in and out of images.....	104
Viewing multiple documents.....	106
Using pan and zoom.....	108
Using the Navigator panel.....	108
Sorting Your Photos.....	109
Using sort commands.....	109
Sorting media types.....	110
Using Search Options.....	110
Searching by date.....	110
Searching for untagged items.....	111
Searching collections.....	111
Searching captions and notes.....	111
Searching by history.....	112
Searching metadata.....	112
Searching faces.....	113

## **Chapter 6: Organizing and Managing Your Photos . . . . . 115**

Organizing Groups of Images with Keyword Tags.....	116
Creating a new keyword tag.....	116
Working with keyword tags.....	118
Cataloging Files.....	120
Splitting a big catalog into smaller catalogs.....	120
Importing photos to a new catalog.....	121
Switching to a different catalog.....	122
Creating Albums.....	122
Rating images.....	122
Adding rated files to an album.....	123
Hiding Files That Get in the Way.....	127
Stacking 'em up.....	127
Creating versions.....	129

Sticking Digital Notes on Your Photos .....	130
Automating Your Organization .....	131
Automating common tasks when you export .....	131
Renaming files .....	135
Protecting Your Photos .....	135
Backing up your catalog.....	135
Backing up photos and files .....	136

## *Part III: Selecting and Correcting Photos ..... 137*

### **Chapter 7: Making and Modifying Selections ..... 139**

Defining Selections .....	139
Creating Rectangular and Elliptical Selections .....	140
Perfecting squares and circles with Shift and Alt/Option .....	141
Applying marquee options .....	142
Making Freeform Selections with the Lasso Tools.....	144
Selecting with the Lasso tool.....	144
Getting straight with the Polygonal Lasso tool.....	146
Snapping with the Magnetic Lasso tool .....	147
Working Wizardry with the Magic Wand.....	149
Talking about tolerance .....	149
Wielding the wand to select .....	150
Modifying Your Selections .....	151
Adding to a selection.....	152
Subtracting from a selection .....	152
Intersecting two selections.....	152
Avoiding key collisions .....	152
Painting with the Selection Brush .....	153
Painting with the Quick Selection Brush .....	155
Working with the Cookie Cutter Tool .....	156
Eliminating with the Eraser Tools .....	158
The Eraser tool.....	158
The Background Eraser tool.....	159
The Magic Eraser tool .....	160
Using the Magic Extractor Command .....	160
Using the Select Menu.....	163
Selecting all or nothing .....	163
Reselecting a selection.....	163
Inversing a selection.....	164
Feathering a selection .....	164
Refining the edges of a selection .....	164
Using the Modify commands.....	165
Applying the Grow and Similar commands .....	165
Saving and loading selections .....	166

<b>Chapter 8: Working with Layers</b> .....	<b>167</b>
Getting to Know Layers .....	167
Anatomy of a Layers panel .....	169
Using the Layer and Select menus .....	172
Working with Different Layer Types .....	173
Image layers .....	173
Adjustment layers .....	174
Fill layers .....	176
Shape layers .....	177
Type layers .....	178
Tackling Layer Basics .....	179
Creating a new layer from scratch .....	179
Using Layer via Copy and Layer via Cut .....	180
Duplicating layers .....	180
Dragging and dropping layers .....	181
Using the Paste into Selection command .....	181
Moving a Layer's Content .....	182
Transforming Layers .....	183
Flattening and Merging Layers .....	184
Flattening layers .....	185
Merging layers .....	186
<b>Chapter 9: Simple Image Makeovers</b> .....	<b>187</b>
Cropping and Straightening Images .....	187
Cutting away with the Crop tool .....	187
Cropping with a selection border .....	189
Straightening images .....	189
Using the Divide Scanned Photos command .....	190
Employing One-Step Auto Fixes .....	191
Auto Smart Fix .....	191
Auto Levels .....	192
Auto Contrast .....	192
Auto Color Correction .....	193
Auto Sharpen .....	194
Auto Red Eye Fix .....	194
Editing with Quick Fix .....	195
Cloning with the Clone Stamp Tool .....	199
Retouching with the Healing Brush .....	201
Zeroing In with the Spot Healing Brush .....	203
Lightening and Darkening with Dodge and Burn Tools .....	204
Smudging Away Rough Spots .....	206
Softening with the Blur Tool .....	207
Focusing with the Sharpen Tool .....	208
Sponging Color On and Off .....	209
Replacing One Color with Another .....	210

**Chapter 10: Correcting Contrast, Color, and Clarity . . . . . 213**

Adjusting Lighting .....	214
Fixing lighting with Shadows/Highlights.....	214
Using Brightness/Contrast.....	216
Pinpointing proper contrast with Levels.....	216
Adjusting Color .....	219
Removing colorcasts automatically .....	219
Adjusting with Hue/Saturation.....	220
Eliminating color with Remove Color .....	222
Switching colors with Replace Color.....	222
Correcting with Color Curves.....	224
Adjusting skin tones .....	224
Defringing layers .....	227
Correcting with Color Variations.....	227
Adjusting color temperature with photo filters.....	229
Mapping your colors .....	230
Adjusting Clarity .....	232
Removing noise, artifacts, dust, and scratches .....	232
Blurring when you need to .....	233
Sharpening for better focus.....	235
Working Intelligently with the Smart Brush tools .....	237

**Part IV: Exploring Your Inner Artist ..... 241****Chapter 11: Playing with Filters, Effects, Styles, and More . . . . . 243**

Having Fun with Filters .....	243
Applying filters .....	244
Corrective or destructive filters .....	245
One-step or multistep filters.....	245
Fading a filter.....	245
Selectively applying a filter.....	246
Working in the Filter Gallery .....	247
Distorting with the Liquify Filter .....	249
Correcting Camera Distortion.....	251
Dressing Up with Photo and Text Effects .....	253
Adding Shadows, Glows, and More.....	255
Applying layer styles .....	255
Working with layer styles .....	257
Mixing It Up with Blend Modes.....	258
General blend modes.....	258
Darken blend modes.....	258
Lighten blend modes.....	259
Lighting blend modes.....	260
Inverter blend modes .....	262
HSL blend modes .....	262



Using Photomerge .....	263
Photomerge Panorama.....	263
Photomerge Group Shot .....	266
Photomerge Faces .....	267
Photomerge Scene Cleaner.....	268
<b>Chapter 12: Drawing and Painting .....</b>	<b>271</b>
Choosing Color .....	271
Working with the Color Picker.....	272
Dipping into the Color Swatches panel.....	273
Sampling with the Eyedropper tool.....	274
Getting Artsy with the Pencil and Brush Tools .....	276
Drawing with the Pencil tool .....	276
Painting with the Brush tool.....	278
Creating your own brush .....	279
Using the Impressionist Brush.....	280
Filling and Outlining Selections .....	281
Fill 'er up .....	281
Outlining with the Stroke command.....	283
Splashing On Color with the Paint Bucket Tool .....	283
Working with Multicolored Gradients .....	284
Applying a preset gradient .....	284
Customizing gradients.....	286
Working with Patterns .....	289
Applying a preset pattern.....	289
Creating a new pattern.....	290
Creating Shapes of All Sorts .....	290
Drawing a shape.....	291
Drawing multiple shapes .....	292
Specifying Geometry options .....	293
Editing shapes .....	294
<b>Chapter 13: Working with Type .....</b>	<b>295</b>
Understanding Type Basics .....	295
Creating Point Type.....	297
Creating Paragraph Type.....	298
Specifying Type Options.....	299
Editing Text .....	301
Simplifying Type .....	302
Masking with Type .....	303
Stylizing and Warping Type .....	305
Adjusting type opacity .....	306
Applying filters to your type .....	306
Painting your type with color and gradients.....	306
Warping your type.....	308

**Part V: Printing, Creating, and Sharing..... 309****Chapter 14: Getting It on Paper .....311**

Getting Pictures Ready for Printing .....	312
Working with Color Printer Profiles .....	312
Understanding how Elements uses color profiles .....	312
Converting color to a printer profile .....	313
Printing to Epson Inkjet Printers .....	315
Automatic profile selection for Epson printers .....	317
Selecting a printer profile .....	321
Printing with a custom profile.....	322
Printing to HP Inkjet Printers .....	323
Printing to Canon Printers.....	324
Submitting Files to Service Centers .....	326
Using Online Printing Services.....	327
Exploring Other Print Options .....	328

**Chapter 15: Showing It Onscreen .....329**

Getting Familiar with the Elements Sharing and Printing Options .....	329
Creating a Slide Show.....	330
Creating a project .....	331
Exporting to slides and video.....	334
Opening multipage PDF files in Elements .....	335
Writing Creations to CDs and DVDs .....	336
Showing Your Files on the Web .....	337
Creating an online photo album .....	337
Flip 'Em Over with Flipbooks .....	339

**Chapter 16: Making Creations and Sharing.....341**

Getting a Grip on Assembling Creations.....	341
Creating a Photo Book .....	343
Greetings!.....	345
Creating CD and DVD Labels .....	347
Spreading the Love through Sharing .....	347
Going online with photoshop.com .....	347
Ordering prints online.....	351
E-mailing creations .....	351
Using Photo Mail.....	352

**Part VI: The Part of Tens..... 355****Chapter 17: Ten Tips for Composing Better Photos .....357**

Find a Focal Point .....	357
Use the Rule of Thirds .....	359
Cut the Clutter .....	359

Frame Your Shot ..... 361  
 Employ Contrast ..... 361  
 Use Leading Lines ..... 362  
 Experiment with Viewpoints ..... 362  
 Use Light ..... 363  
 Give Direction ..... 365  
 Consider Direction of Movement ..... 366

**Chapter 18: Ten More Project Ideas . . . . . 367**

Wallpaper and Screen Savers..... 367  
 Flyers, Ads, and Online Auctions..... 369  
 Clothes, Hats, and More ..... 370  
 Posters ..... 370  
 Household and Business Inventories..... 371  
 Project Documentation ..... 371  
 School Reports and Projects..... 372  
 Wait — There’s More ..... 372

*Index* ..... **373**



# Introduction

---

What was once a consumer-grade, low-level program for beginning image editors and a junior cousin to the powerful Adobe Photoshop program has evolved and matured to stand on its own merits now in version 7.0 for Windows and (as is often the case with the release of this program) later on the Macintosh. As of this writing, Elements is available on the Mac only in version 6. However, Adobe's history with Photoshop Elements is that the Mac version typically follows several months after the Windows release.

You won't find much comparison between Adobe Photoshop Elements and Adobe Photoshop in this book, nor will you see any suggestions that you should consider using Photoshop for one thing or another. We don't make suggestions simply because Photoshop Elements is a powerful tool that satisfies many needs of amateurs and professionals alike.

Why should you buy Elements (and, ultimately, this book)? The range of people who can benefit from using Elements is wide and includes a vast audience. From beginning image editors to intermediate users to more advanced amateurs and professionals, Elements has something for everyone. We'll even stick our necks out a little and suggest that many Photoshop users can benefit greatly by adding Elements to their software tool cabinets. Why? Because Elements offers some wonderful creation and sharing tools that Photoshop hasn't yet dreamed of supporting. For example, in Photoshop Elements 7, you can create postcards, greeting cards, and photo albums with just a few mouse clicks. You can place orders with online service centers that professionally print your photo creations. All these opportunities are available in Elements, and we cover these and many more creation ideas in Chapters 15 and 16.

To set your frame of mind to thinking in Photoshop Elements terms, don't think of the program as a scaled-down version of Adobe Photoshop; those days are gone. If you're a digital photographer and you shoot your pictures in JPEG or Camera Raw format, Elements has the tools for you to open, edit, and massage your pictures into professional images. If you worry about color profiling, forget it. Elements can handle the task for you, as we explain in Chapter 4, where we talk about Camera Raw, and in Chapter 14, where we talk about color profiling and printing. For the professional, Photoshop Elements has just about everything you need to create final images for color printing and commercial printing.

If you're a beginner or an intermediate user, you'll find some of the Photoshop Elements quick-fix operations a breeze to use to help you enhance your images, as we explain in Chapters 9 and 10. And, when it comes time for you to print some homemade greeting cards and photo albums — whether you're a beginner, an intermediate user, or a professional user — Elements provides

you with easy-to-follow steps to package your creations, as we cover in Chapters 15 and 16. In addition, the wonderful new sharing services available free to you on Photoshop.com are your gateway to keeping family, friends, and clients connected to your photos, as we explain in Chapter 16.

## About This Book

This book is an effort to provide, in about 400 pages, as much of a comprehensive view of a wildly feature-rich program as we can. There's a lot to Elements, and we try to offer you as much as possible within our limited amount of space. We begged for more pages, but alas, our publisher wants to get this book in your hands in full color and with an attractive price tag. Therefore, even though we may skip over a few little things, all you need to know about using Photoshop Elements for designing images for print, sharing, Web hosting, versatile packaging, e-mailing, and more is covered in the pages ahead.

As we said, Photoshop Elements has something for just about everyone. Hence, we know that our audience is large and that not everyone will use every tool, command, or method described in this book. Therefore, we added a lot of cross-references in the text, in case you want to jump around. You can go to just about any chapter and start reading; and, if some concept needs more explanation, we point you in the right direction for getting some background when it's necessary.

## Conventions Used in This Book

Throughout this book, we point you to menus where commands are accessed frequently. A couple of things to remember are the references for where to go when we detail steps in a procedure. For accessing a menu command, you may see a sentence like this one:

Choose File⇨Get Photos⇨From Files and Folders.

When you see commands like this one mentioned, we're asking you to click the File menu to open the drop-down menu, click the menu command labeled Get Photos, and then choose the command From Files and Folders from the submenu that appears.

Another convention we use refers to context menus. A *context menu* jumps up at your cursor position and shows you a menu similar to the menu you select at the top of the Elements workspace. To open a context menu, right-click the mouse (Shift-click on the Mac).

A third item relates to using keystrokes on your keyboard. When we mention that some keys need to be pressed on your keyboard, the text is described like this:

Press Alt+Shift+Ctrl+S

In this case, you hold down the Alt key, the Shift key, and the Control key and then press the S key. Then, release all the keys at the same time.

## *How This Book Is Organized*

This book is divided into logical parts where related features are nested together in chapters within six different parts of the book.

### *Part I: Getting Started*

If you just bought a digital camera and you're new to image editing in a program like Photoshop Elements, you're probably tempted to jump into fixing and editing your pictures. The essentials usually aren't the most exciting part of any program or book. That's true with this book, too: The more mundane issues related to understanding some basics are assembled in the first three chapters. Although some bits of information aren't as exciting as in many other chapters, you must understand them before you start editing images. Be sure to review the first three chapters before you dive into the other chapters.

In Part I, we talk about the tools, menus, commands, preferences, workspaces, and features that help you move around easily in the program. The more you pick up in the preliminary chapters, the more easily you can adapt to the Elements way of working.

### *Part II: Getting Organized*

In Part II, we talk about getting photos in Elements, organizing your files, searching for files, and grouping your photos, and we give you much more information related to the Photoshop Elements Organizer. The *Organizer* is your central workplace, and knowing a great deal about using the Organizer window helps you move around much faster in the program.

### *Part III: Selecting and Correcting Photos*

Part III relates to creating and manipulating selections. There's a lot to making selections in photos, but after you figure it out (by reading Chapter 7), you

can cut out a figure in a picture and drop it into another picture, drop different backgrounds into pictures, or isolate an area that needs some brightness and contrast adjustment. In Chapter 8, we talk about layers and how to create and manage them in Elements. In many other chapters, we refer you to Chapter 8 because you need to work with layers for many other tasks you do in Elements.

In Chapter 9, we talk about fixing image flaws and problems. That picture you took with your digital camera may be underexposed or overexposed, or it may need some work to remove dust and scratches. Maybe it needs a little sharpening, or some other imperfection requires editing. All the know-hows and how-tos are in this chapter.

In Chapter 10, we cover how to correct color problems, brightness, and contrast. We show you ways to quickly fix photos, as well as some methods for custom image corrections.

### *Part IV: Exploring Your Inner Artist*

This part is designed to bring out the artist in you. Considering the easy application of Elements filter effects, you can turn a photo image into a drawing or apply a huge number of different effects to change the look of your image.

In Chapter 12, we talk about drawing and painting so that you can let your artistic expression run wild. We follow up in Chapter 13 by talking about adding text to photos so that you can create your own layouts, posters, cards, and more.

### *Part V: Printing, Creating, and Sharing*

One critical chapter in this book is Chapter 14, in which we talk about printing your pictures. If your prints don't look the way they do on your monitor, you need to read and reread this chapter.

If screen viewing is of interest to you, we cover a number of different options for viewing your pictures onscreen in Chapter 15. For slide shows, Web-hosted images, animated images, photo viewing on your TV, and even creating movie files, this chapter shows you the many ways you can view your Elements images onscreen.

We wrap up this part with Chapter 16, in which we describe how to make creations and share files by using the new Photoshop.com service provided by Adobe Systems. You have a number of different options for making creations to share or print.



## Part VI: The Part of Tens

The last part of the book contains the Part of Tens chapters. We offer ten tips for composing better images and give you ten more project ideas to try with Elements.

### Icons Used in This Book

In the margins throughout this book, you see icons indicating that something important is stated in the respective text.



This icon informs you that the item discussed is a new feature in Photoshop Elements 7.



A Tip tells you about an alternative method for a procedure, by giving you a shortcut, a workaround, or some other type of helpful information related to working on tasks in the section being discussed.



Pay particular attention when you see the Warning icon. This icon indicates possible side-effects you might encounter when performing certain operations in Elements.



This icon is a heads-up for something you may want to commit to memory. Usually, it tells you about a shortcut for a repetitive task, where remembering a procedure can save you time.



Elements is a computer program, after all. No matter how hard we try to simplify our explanation of features, we can't entirely avoid the technical information. If we think that a topic is complex, we use this icon to alert you that we're moving into a complex subject. You won't see many of these icons in the book because we try our best to give you the details in nontechnical terms.

### Where to Go from Here

As we say earlier in the Introduction, the first part of this book serves as a foundation for all the other chapters. Try to spend a little time reading through the three chapters in Part I. After that, feel free to jump around and pay special attention to the cross-referenced chapters, in case you get stuck on a concept.

When you need a little extra help, refer to Chapter 1, where we talk about using the online help documents available in Elements.

If you have some questions, comments, suggestions, or complaints, go to

<http://support.wiley.com>

We hope you have much success and enjoyment in using Adobe Photoshop Elements 7, and it's our sincere wish that the pages ahead provide you with an informative and helpful view of the program.

# Part I

## Getting Started



## *In this part . . .*

**H**ere you have it: a computer book specifically designed to help you get the most out of a computer software program — and not just any software program, but a powerful one with many complicated features. You probably want to jump in and perform some spiffy editing operations to get that prize photo looking the best you can. Inasmuch as we try to accommodate you in setting forth a how-to book in a nonlinear fashion, where you can freely move around and read about the techniques you want to use without having to read each chapter in order, you have to understand a few basics for editing your photos.

In this first part of the book, we talk about some essentials to help you fully understand all the parts ahead. We first talk about your Photoshop Elements working environment and describe the many tools and features you can use for all your Elements sessions. We also cover the very important task of getting color set for optimum viewing on your computer monitor and describe some essentials you need to know about color as it relates to photo images. Part I contains some important information that you should plan to carefully review and understand before going too far into all the Elements features. Don't pass up this part. Turn the page and start getting acquainted with the Adobe Photoshop Elements basics.



# Getting to Know the Work Area

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Opening Photoshop Elements
  - ▶ Understanding the Elements workspace
  - ▶ Changing workspace views
  - ▶ Working with the Project Bin
  - ▶ Using the Undo History panel
  - ▶ Accessing Help documents
  - ▶ Using keyboard shortcuts
- 

**W**hen you first launch Photoshop Elements, you arrive at a Welcome screen. The Welcome screen offers you several choices for opening up some different editing modes, special Elements tasks that you can perform, and an opportunity to sign up for an Adobe Web-hosted service.

When it comes to editing a photograph, you find quite a collection of tools, panels, buttons, and options in the Photoshop Elements Edit mode. Just a quick glance at the Elements workspace when you enter Full Edit mode shows you some of the power that Elements offers with just a click of your mouse. With all the possibilities, navigating the Elements workspaces and engaging in an editing session can be intimidating. To ease your introduction to the many options for editing your pictures, we break them down for you in this chapter.

Elements has several work areas, and we start off by introducing you to the Welcome screen. Then, we move on to the mode you'll likely use frequently — Full Edit mode. In this mode, you can be creative with all the tools and features Photoshop Elements is known for, such as filters, drawing tools, layers, and more. We then introduce other work areas and tools you may not be as familiar with — Quick Edit mode for making common corrections to photos; Creation mode for collecting your



photos into creations, such as calendars; and the Project Bin for navigating among all your open images.

Before you start working in Elements, you may find it helpful to know how to undo edits so that you can start over easily and find additional sources of help within Elements. We also explain one of the handiest ways to select tools and enter common commands: keyboard shortcuts.

Elements 7 also has the *Organizer*, a powerful tool for acquiring your images and keeping them organized. The Organizer includes features that help you view and search for images, too. We introduce the Organizer in Part II.

## Launching Photoshop Elements 7

A great place to start in Elements is a central navigation area where you can choose what mode and activity you want to engage in. Well, that's exactly what Adobe provides you when you open Photoshop Elements. It's like the command center on the Starship Enterprise, except you won't find Spock asking the computer any questions. The Welcome screen is easy to navigate and intuitive, as you can see in Figure 1-1.

Here's what you find in the Welcome screen:

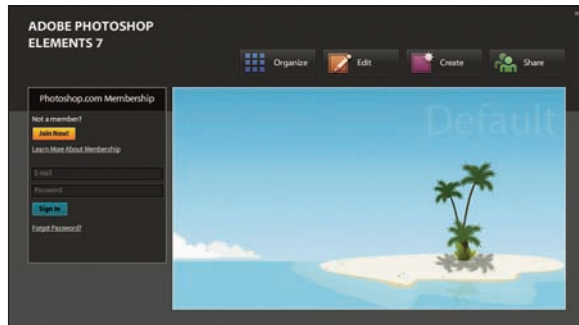
✓ **Photoshop.com Membership:** For many generations of Photoshop Elements, Adobe has depended on third-party services for sharing files and placing orders for prints.

You haven't lost any of these services, but

Adobe has brought the sharing business

under the fold of its own online servers. You get a whopping 2 gigabytes of hard-disk space to upload files and share them with friends. The best thing about the Photoshop.com service is that it's free! Because this feature is closely related to sharing files, we include all the descriptions for using the service in Chapter 16. If you just can't wait to get through all the things we talk about related to other features in Elements, jump to Chapter 16 and have a look at this new Photoshop Elements service.

✓ **Organize:** Click the Organize button to open the Organizer, where you can manage your collections of pictures stored on your hard drive. We cover using the Organizer and so many of its great features in Part II.



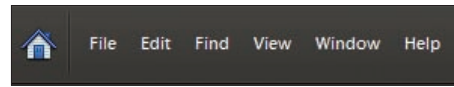
**Figure 1-1:** The Photoshop Elements Welcome screen appears when you launch Elements.



- ✔ **Edit:** If you need to edit a photo, click the Edit button to access options for using either the Quick Fix mode to do some quick editing tasks or Full Edit mode, in which you can do the extraordinary editing jobs.
- ✔ **Create:** Click the Create button to move into the Create mode. In this mode, you can do some fancy things that Elements provides you, such as creating greeting cards, photo books, and calendars.
- ✔ **Share:** The Share workspace is all about sharing your photos. It's all well and good to admire your own creations, but getting kudos from others can make you feel great. The Share workspace provides you options for creating an online album, e-mailing photos, printing your pictures, placing print orders, and copying photos to CD-ROMs and DVDs. We cover all you want to know about sharing your pictures in Chapter 16.

If you know what you want to do in Elements, go ahead and click the appropriate button. But if you enter one mode and then decide you want to do something in another mode, Elements provides you the freedom to easily change modes from within the different workspaces.

Just one more thing before we leave the Welcome screen. You can always return to the Welcome screen after you enter any editing mode. At the top of the Elements window in all modes, a house icon appears, as shown in Figure 1-2. Click this icon to open the Welcome screen again.



**Figure 1-2:** Click the house icon in the menu bar in any editing mode to reopen the Welcome screen.

## Getting Around in Full Edit Mode

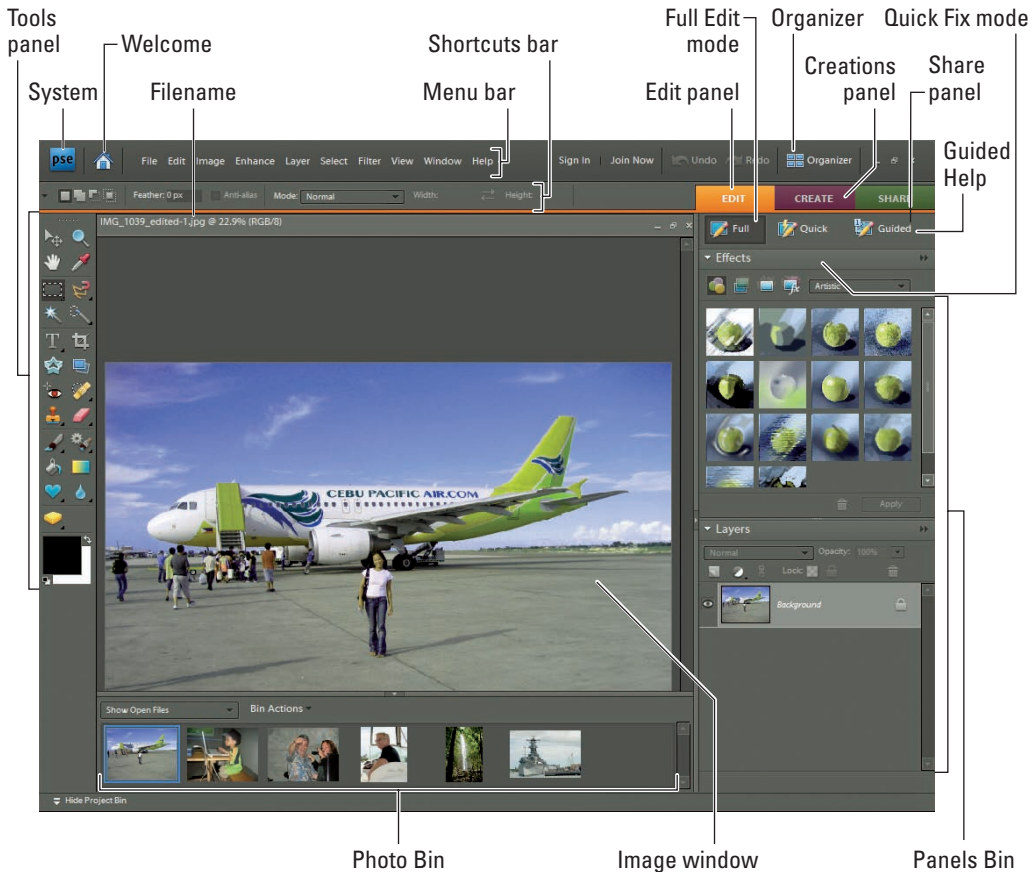
Full Edit mode offers bundles of tools that you can use to edit your images, from correction tools for fixing color and clarity to filters, layers, and more for changing existing photos or creating entirely original images from scratch. But all these tools also make Full Edit mode complex.

Figure 1-3 shows Elements in Full Edit mode, highlighting all the tools and features we discuss in the following sections.

### Jumping to Full Edit mode

You can move into Full Edit mode in a couple of ways:

- ✔ **From the initial Welcome screen:** Click Edit and open a photo. Your Elements window appears in Full Edit mode, as shown in Figure 1-3.
- ✔ **From the Organizer:** Click a photo and click Fix. Click Full Edit to open the selected file in Full Edit mode.



**Figure 1-3:** The Photoshop Elements workspace appears when you open a file in Full Edit mode.



You can also open a context menu (right-click your mouse button to make this menu appear) on a photo in the Organizer and select Full Edit from that menu to open the selected file in Full Edit mode.

### *Examining the image window*

Not surprisingly, the image window's tools and features are most useful when an image is open in the window. To get an image into the image window (as shown in Figure 1-3), follow these steps:

#### **1. Choose File⇨Open.**

The standard Open dialog box appears. It works like any ordinary Open dialog box you find in other applications.



## 2. Move around your hard drive by using methods you know to open folders, and then select a picture.

If you haven't yet downloaded digital camera images or acquired scanned photos and want an image to experiment with, you can use an image found in your My Pictures folder that was installed with Windows.

Elements installs some nice sample images with the application installation. Look in the Photoshop Elements 7\Tutorial folder to find some photos to play with.



## 3. After selecting a picture, click Open.

The photo opens in a new image window in Elements.



You can open as many image windows in Elements as your computer memory can handle. When each new file is opened, a thumbnail image is added to the Project Bin at the bottom of the screen (see Figure 1-3), and the image windows are stacked, with the current active image in the topmost window. To bring another open file to the foreground and make it active, click the respective thumbnail in the Project Bin.

Here's a quick look at important items in the image window, as shown in Figure 1-4:

- ✓ **Scroll bars:** Become active when you zoom in on an image. You can click the scroll arrows, move the scroll bar, or grab the Hand tool in the Tools panel and then drag within the window to move the image.
- ✓ **Magnification box:** Shows you at a glance how much you have zoomed in or out.
- ✓ **Information box:** Shows you a readout for a particular tidbit of information. You can choose what information you want to see in this area by selecting one of the options from the pop-up menu, which we discuss in more detail later in this section.

When you're working on an image in Elements, you always want to know the physical image size, the image resolution, and the color mode. (These terms are explained in more detail in Chapters 3 and 4.) Regardless of which menu option you select



*Photo courtesy Corbis Digital Stock*

**Figure 1-4:** The image window displays an open file within the Elements workspace.

from the status bar, you can get a quick glimpse at these essential stats by clicking the Information box, which displays a pop-up menu like the one shown in Figure 1-5.

- ✔ **Size box:** Enables you to resize the window. Move the cursor to the box, and a diagonal line with two opposing arrows appears. When the cursor changes, drag in or out to size the window smaller or larger, respectively.

You can also resize the window by dragging any of the corners in or out.

- ✔ **Minimize button:** The – button in the upper-right corner of the image window. Click this button to hide the window from view. The window's still open; you just click the image in the Project Bin to return the image to the previous size in the window.
- ✔ **Maximize button:** The button with the box-shaped icon. If you click this button, the Title bar shown at the top of the window disappears and provides you with a little more room for viewing images in the window.
- ✔ **Close button:** Shaped like an X. Click this button to close the active image window and keep Elements open. Alternatively, you can use the keyboard shortcut `Ctrl/⌘+W` or choose `File⇒Close` to close the active window.

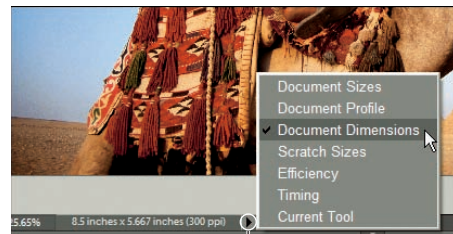


**Figure 1-5:** Click the readout on the status bar, and a pop-up menu shows you important information about your file.

After you're familiar with the overall image window, we want to introduce you to the Information box's pop-up menu, which enables you to choose the type of information you want to view in the Information box. Click the right-pointing arrow to open the menu, as shown in Figure 1-6.

Here's the lowdown of the options you find on the pop-up menu:

- ✔ **Document Sizes:** Shows you the saved file size.
- ✔ **Document Profile:** Shows you the color profile used with the file.
- ✔ **Document Dimensions:** As shown in Figure 1-6, shows you the physical size in your default unit of measure, such as inches.



Click to open pop-up menu

**Figure 1-6:** From the pop-up menu on the status bar, select commands that provide information about your file.

- ✓ **Scratch Sizes:** Displays the amount of memory on your hard drive that's consumed by all documents open in Elements. For example, 20M/200M indicates that the open documents consume 20 megabytes and that a total of 200 megabytes are available for Elements to edit your images. When you add more content to a file, such as new layers, the first figure grows while the second figure remains static.
- ✓ **Efficiency:** Indicates how many operations you're performing in RAM, as opposed to using your scratch disk. When the number is 100%, you're working in RAM. When the number drops below 100%, you're using the scratch disk. If you continually work below 100%, it's a good indication that you need to buy more RAM to increase your efficiency.
- ✓ **Timing:** Indicates the time it took to complete the last operation.
- ✓ **Current Tool:** Shows the name of the tool selected from the Tools panel.

Don't worry about trying to understand all these terms. The important thing to know is that you can visit the pop-up menu and change the items at will during your editing sessions.

## *Moving through the menu bar*

Like just about every program you launch in Windows, Elements supports drop-down menus. The menus are logically constructed and identified to provide commands for working with your pictures (many commands that you don't find supported in tools and on panels). A quick glimpse at the menu names gives you a hint of what might be contained in a given menu list.

Here are the ten different menus:

- ✓ **File:** Just as you might suspect, the File menu contains commands for working with your picture as a file. You find commands in the menu list for saving, opening, processing, importing, exporting, and printing. We cover saving files in Chapter 3 and printing or exporting for other output in Part V.
- ✓ **Edit:** The old-fashioned Copy, Cut, and Paste commands are located in this menu. Additionally, you have some important file settings commands on the menu, including preferences, which we cover in more detail in Chapter 2.
- ✓ **Image:** You use the Image menu most often when you want to effect changes to the entire image, such as changing a color mode or cropping, rotating, and resizing the image. For details about sizing and color modes, check out Chapter 3. For more about cropping and rotating images, flip to Chapter 9.

- ✔ **Enhance:** Just the name of this menu should tell you what commands to expect here. This is where you go to change the appearance of an image, such as changing its brightness and contrast, adjusting its color and lighting, and doing some other smart fix-up work to improve its appearance. On the Enhance→Adjust Color submenu, you find a number of commands that offer you a variety of color adjustments. Look to Chapter 10 for some detail on correcting color. In Chapters 9 and 10, you can find out how to use correction tools so that your images look their best.
- ✔ **Layer:** As we describe in great detail in Chapter 8 (a whole chapter just about layers), most kinds of editing you do in Elements are best handled by using layers. Elements neatly tucks away most of the relevant commands associated with working in layers right in this menu.
- ✔ **Select:** Of just about equal importance to layers are selections. Whereas the Image menu contains commands that are applied to the entire image, you can edit isolated areas of an image by using the commands on the Select menu. To isolate an area, you need to create a selection, as we explain in Chapter 7. This menu contains commands to help you with many essential tasks related to working with selections.
- ✔ **Filter:** The Filter menu is where you find some professional photographic darkroom techniques, or you can completely leave the world of photography and explore the world of a fine artist. With tons of different filter commands, you can create some extraordinary effects. Find out all about filters in Chapter 11.
- ✔ **View:** Zooming in and out of images, turning on a grid, exposing horizontal and vertical rulers, adding annotations, and checking out the print size of your pictures are handled on the View menu. Chapter 5 unearths secrets of the Zoom tool, rulers, and more.
- ✔ **Window:** Elements supports a number of different panels, as we explain in the section “Playing with panels,” later in this chapter. Elements has so many panels that keeping them all open at one time is impractical. Thanks to the Window menu, you can easily view and hide panels, reopen the Welcome window, tile and cascade open windows, and bring inactive windows to the foreground.
- ✔ **Help:** We hope that you get all the help you need right here in this book; but just in case we miss something (or your neighbor has borrowed it, fine book that it is), you have some interactive help right at your mouse-tip on the Help menu. The menu also offers links to the Adobe Web site for more information and a little assistance, courtesy of the tutorials accessible from this menu. (Find a little more detail about accessing help in the section “Getting a Helping Hand,” later in this chapter.)

## Uncovering the context menus

Context menus are common to many programs, and Photoshop Elements is no exception. They're those little menus that appear when you right-click (Windows) or Control+click (Mac), offering commands and tools related to whatever area or tool you right-clicked.



The context menus are your solution when you may be in doubt about where to find a command on a menu. You just right-click an item, and a pop-up menu opens. Before you become familiar with Photoshop Elements and struggle to find a menu command, always try to first open a context menu and look for the command you want in the menu list.

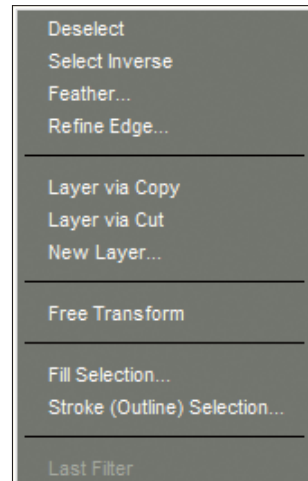
Because context menus provide commands respective to the tool you're using, the menu commands change according to what tool or feature you're using and where you click at the moment you open a context menu. For example, in Figure 1-7, you can see the context menu that appears after we create a selection marquee and right-click that marquee in the image window. Notice that the commands are all related to selections.

## Using the Tools panel

Elements provides a good number of panels for different purposes. The one that you'll find you use most is the Tools panel. In panel hierarchy terms, you typically first click a tool in the Tools panel, and then use another panel for additional tool options or use the Options bar (which we describe in the section "Selecting tool options in the Options bar," later in the chapter) for fine-tuning your tool instruments. More often than not, clicking a tool in the Tools panel is your first step in most editing sessions.

You can easily access tools in Elements by pressing shortcut keys on your keyboard. For a quick glance at the Tools panel and the keystrokes needed to access the tools, look over Figure 1-8.

Notice in the Tools panel that several tools appear with a tiny arrow pointing right and downward in the lower-right corner of each tool. Whenever you see this arrowhead, remember that more tools are nested within that tool group. Click a tool with an arrowhead and hold down the mouse button, or for a faster response from Elements, just



**Figure 1-7:** A context menu for selections.

right-click a tool. A pop-up toolbar opens, as shown in Figure 1-9, and offers you more tool selections within that group.

To select tools within a tool group by using keystrokes, hold down the Shift key and strike the respective key (as shown in Figure 1-8) to access the tool. Keep the Shift key down and repeatedly press the shortcut key to step through all tools in a given group.



Whether you have to press the Shift key to select tools is controlled by a preference setting. To change the default setting so that you don't have to press Shift, choose Edit⇨Preferences⇨General or press Ctrl/⌘+K.



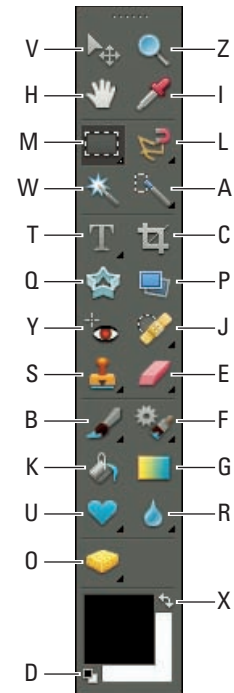
The shortcuts work for you at all times except when you're typing text with the cursor active inside a text block. Be certain to click the Tools panel to select a tool when you finish editing some text.

The tools are varied, and you may find that you don't use all the tools in the Tools panel in your workflow. Rather than describe the tool functions here, we address the tools in the rest of this book as they pertain to the respective Elements tasks.

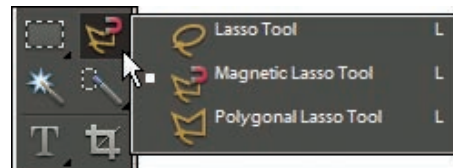
## Playing with panels

Elements provides you with a bunch of panels that contain settings and options used to refine the tools you select in the Tools panel and tasks you perform to edit images. Assume for a moment that you want to let your creative juices loose and create a Picasso-esque painting — something that you can do easily in Photoshop Elements.

First, click the Brush tool and then click a color in the Color Swatches panel. On a new canvas, you begin to paint. When you want to change color, click again in the Color Swatches panel on a different color. This kind of interactivity between the Tools panel and another panel is something you frequently use in Elements.



**Figure 1-8:** You access tools by clicking the tool in the Tools panel or typing a keyboard shortcut on your keyboard.

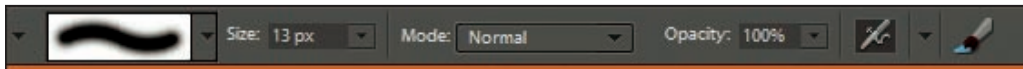


**Figure 1-9:** Click and hold the mouse button on a tool that has a tiny arrowhead to make a pop-up toolbar open.

Panels are accessed from either the Panels Bin or the Window menu. Many options in panels are intuitive. To become familiar with various panel options, just poke around a little, and most of the options will become familiar to you.

### *Selecting tool options from the Options bar*

When you click a tool in the Tools panel, the Options bar offers you choices specific to a selected tool. Figure 1-10 shows the options available when the Brush tool is selected.



**Figure 1-10:** The Options bar provides attribute choices for a tool selected in the Tools panel.

### *Juggling all your interface options*

With all the settings you can use for any given tool, trying to figure out exactly where to select an option for the edit you want to make can become downright frustrating. To help simplify the process of using tools and selecting options for the tools, here's what you might do in your normal workflow:

- 1. Select a tool in the Tools panel.**

Obviously, you need to know what task you want to perform, so selecting the proper tool to complete the task is important to know up front.

- 2. Take a quick look at the Options bar.**

Before moving to other option choices, be certain that you look over the choices on the Options bar. If you want to use a tool such as the Brush tool or the Clone Stamp tool, perhaps you want to make a decision about what size brush tip you want to use. This choice is specific to the selected tool and therefore appears as an Options bar choice.

- 3. Open a panel for more options.**

If you want to use the Brush tool to apply some color to an image, for example, after you select the Brush tip on the Options bar, open the Color Swatches panel and select a color.

- 4. Open a drop-down menu.**

Not all tools support a drop-down menu in the Options bar. When you see a down-pointing arrow, click the arrow to open a menu in which you can find more options for some tools.



## 5. Get some help.

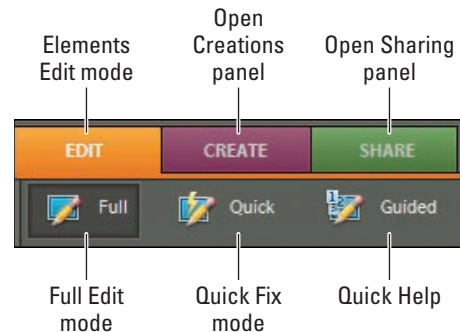
When you hover your cursor over a tool, you see that tool described in blue text. Click the blue text, and your default Web browser opens, displaying a page on Adobe's Web site where help information and tips describe using the respective tool. You'll also find blue text in the More menu. The blue text alerts you to help information that can be shown in your Web browser.

Try following the same sequence when you want to edit images in Elements by first selecting a tool and then checking out the Options bar, opening panels related to providing choices for the task at hand, clicking drop-down menus for additional choices in the panels, and getting some help when you need it.

## Looking at shortcuts

You find the Shortcuts bar to the right of the Options bar and below the Edit, Create, and Share buttons. The Shortcuts bar, as shown in Figure 1-11, serves several purposes:

- ✓ **Quick access to editing tasks:** Buttons permit you to quickly access the Full Edit or Quick Edit modes. The Guided button is used for accessing step-by-step instructions on common editing tasks.
- ✓ **Quick access to other Elements functions:** Buttons appear for quick access to other Elements functions that involve creating calendars, photo collages, online galleries, and slide shows. The Share button offers many options for sharing photos online and via e-mail attachments, ordering photo prints online, and replicating CD/DVDs.



**Figure 1-11:** The Shortcuts bar appears to the right of the Elements window and offers options to engage in different editing modes.

Depending on your editing mode, such as Full Edit, Quick Edit, or Create and Share, the panels change to reflect editing options for a given editing mode.



Shortcuts contain tools and buttons grouped as follows:

- ✓ **Edit:** Click this button to toggle the Full Edit and Quick Edit modes or access the Guided Help.
- ✓ **Create:** Click this button to create Photo Books, Photo Collages, Slide Shows, Order Prints, and create Greeting Cards. Click More Options in the Create panel to access additional creation options.
- ✓ **Share:** Click this button to access options that offer many different ways to share your photos with others. In the Share panel, you find options for creating an Online Album, sending photos via e-mail attachments, using Photo Mail, ordering prints online, and writing CDs and DVDs of photo collections and slide shows. Clicking More Options in the Share panel offers additional options for sharing photos.

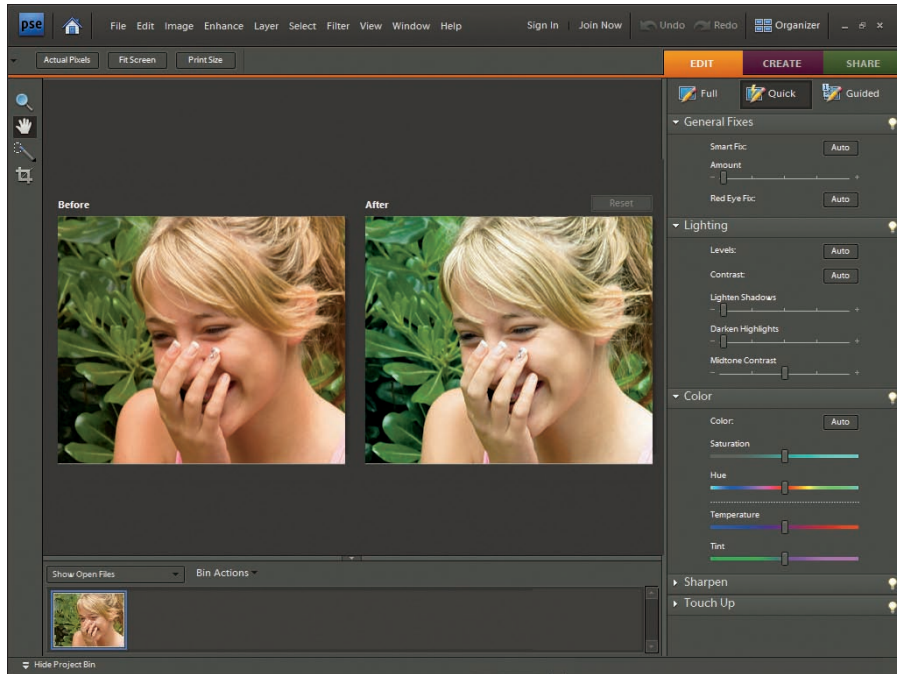
## Changing Workspaces

When you're in Full Edit mode, which we discuss in preceding sections, you can apply any kind of edits to a picture, improve the picture's appearance, and apply all that Elements offers you. This mode is the richest editor in Elements, in terms of accessing all features. Because Elements has so many different kinds of editing opportunities, the program offers you other workspace views, tailored to the kinds of tasks people typically want to perform.

### Using Quick Edit mode

Quick Edit mode is designed to provide you with just those tools that you need to prepare a picture for its intended destination, whether it's printing, onscreen viewing, or one of the other organizing items. Use this mode to make your pictures look good. You don't find tools for adding text, painting with brushes, or applying gradients in Quick Edit mode. Rather, what you find is a completely different set of panels for balancing contrast and brightness, lighting, and sharpening, for example. This mode is like having a digital darkroom on your desktop, where you take care of perfecting an image like you would in analog photography darkrooms.

To enter Quick Edit mode while you're in Full Edit mode, click the Quick button adjacent to the Options bar; the view changes, as shown in Figure 1-12.



**Figure 1-12:** Click Quick in Full Edit mode to change the workspace.

Here are several differences between Full Edit mode and Quick Edit mode:

- ✓ **Completely different sets of panels are docked in the Panels Bin.** All the panels in Quick Edit mode are related to adjusting brightness controls and are designed to improve the overall appearance of your pictures. In addition, all the Windows menu commands for accessing panels are grayed out. While you work in Quick Edit mode, Elements insists on limiting your use of panels to just the ones docked in the Panels Bin. Moreover, you can't undock panels from the Panels Bin by dragging them out, as you can in other modes.
- ✓ **The Tools panel disappears.** Quick Edit mode offers only these tools in the Tools panel:
  - *Zoom*
  - *Hand*
  - *Magic Selection Brush*
  - *Crop*

None of the other Elements tools is accessible while you work in this mode.



If you've used an earlier version of Photoshop Elements, you may remember that you had a Red Eye Removal tool in the Tools panel in Quick Edit mode. The Red Eye Removal tool options are still available in Elements 7, but the options appear in only the General Fixes panel.

- ✓ **Multiple viewing options are available.** Notice in Figure 1-12 that you see two views of the same image. The Before view on the left displays the raw, unedited image. The After view shows you the results of changes you make with panel options and menu commands. You select different viewing modes from menu choices in the View drop-down menu below the image window.

If you want to return to Full Edit mode, click the Full button.

## Using creation tools

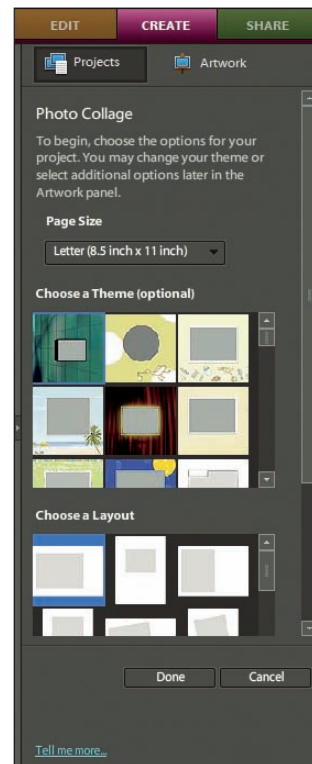
To organize your pictures for display in a variety of different ways, begin by clicking the Create button. The panels in the Panels Bin change to support different creation options. Click one of the listed options for making a new creation or click the More Options button to select from additional options. In Figure 1-13, we clicked the Create button and then clicked the Photo Collage button to start a new creation for a photo collage. As you can see in Figure 1-13, the Panels Bin changed to reflect options available to us for creating our photo collage.

We cover each option available in the various creation panels in greater detail in Chapter 16.

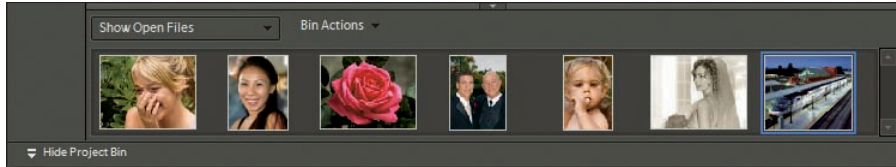
## Using the Project Bin

The Project Bin displays thumbnail views of all your open images. Regardless of whether you work in Full Edit or Quick Edit mode, you can immediately see a small image of all the pictures you have open at one time, as shown in Figure 1-14. You can also see thumbnail views of all the different views you create for a single picture. Find out all the details in the following sections.

If you want to rearrange the thumbnails in the Project Bin, click and drag horizontally to reorganize the order of the thumbnails.



**Figure 1-13:** Click Create and then choose an option for the type of creation you want to edit.



**Figure 1-14:** All open pictures and new views are displayed as thumbnails in the Project Bin.

## Creating different views of an image

What? Different views of the same picture, you say? Yes, indeed. You might create a new view when you want to zoom in on an area for some precise editing and then want to switch back to a wider view. Here's how you do it:

### 1. Double-click a thumbnail image in the Project Bin.

That photo appears in the image window as the active document.

### 2. Choose View→New Window for <filename>.

Note that <filename> is the name of the file in the image window.

### 3. Zoom to the new view.

A new view appears for the active document, and you see another thumbnail image added to the Project Bin.

To zoom quickly, click the Zoom tool and click a few times on the picture in the image window to zoom into the photo.

### 4. Toggle views of the same image.

Double-click the original thumbnail to see the opening view; double-click the other thumbnail to see the zoomed view.



## Hiding the Project Bin

The Project Bin takes up a lot of room at the bottom of the image window, and you're not likely to want it open all the time while editing pictures. Fortunately, Elements provides you with several methods for hiding the Project Bin when you want to create a little more editing real estate.

To temporarily hide the Project Bin, do one of the following:

- ✓ Place the cursor over the separator bar between the image window and the Project Bin. When the cursor changes to two horizontal lines with vertical opposing arrowheads, drag down to collapse the Project Bin. When the Bin is collapsed, drag up the separator bar to open it.
- ✓ Double-click the separator bar to hide the Project Bin.

- ✓ Click the Hide Project Bin text at the bottom of the Project Bin.
- ✓ Open a context menu by right-clicking and select Close at the top of the menu.

## Using Bin Actions

A nice feature in Elements is the Bin Actions menu at the top of the Project Bin. Click Bin Actions to start a new creation, share photos, print all the files open in the Bin, and save the Bin files as an album.

To the left of the Bin Actions menu, you'll find another feature for viewing files in Elements. The Show Open Files (shown by default) is another drop-down menu that offers the default option for showing open files and another choice for showing files from the Organizer. Choose Show Files from Organizer to add the files in your Organizer to the Project Bin.

## Retracing Your Steps

Ever since Apple's Macintosh brought a windows interface to the masses, the Undo command has been one of the most frequently used menu commands in every program developed. You make a change to your document, and if you don't like it, you simply choose Edit⇨Undo or press the keyboard shortcut `Ctrl/⌘+Z`.

In Elements, your options to undo your work provide you much more than reverting back to the last view, as we explain in the following sections.

## Using the Undo History panel

Elements takes the Undo command to new levels by offering you a panel in which all (well, almost all) your changes in an editing session are recorded and available for undoing at any step in an editing sequence.

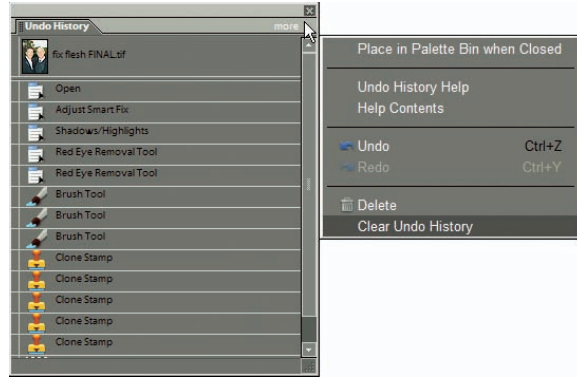
Each edit you make is recorded in the Undo History panel. To open the panel, choose Window⇨Undo History. Make changes to your document, and each step is recorded in the panel, as you see in Figure 1-15.



If Elements slows down and you're moving along at a snail's pace, open the More fly-away menu in the Undo History panel and choose Clear Undo History. Elements flushes all the recorded history and frees up some precious memory that often enables you to work faster.

We said *almost all* steps are recorded because the number of steps the History panel can record is controlled by a preference setting that tops out

at 1,000 steps. If you choose Edit→Preferences (Windows) and look at the Performance preferences, as we explain in more depth in Chapter 2, the number of *history states* (times you can go back in history and undo) defaults to 50. You can change the number to the maximum 1,000, if you like. But realize that the more history states you record, the more memory Elements requires.



**Figure 1-15:** The Undo History panel is shown with the fly-away menu open.

To undo the last edit, you can use the keyboard shortcut **Ctrl/⌘+Z**. When you want to undo multiple edits, open the Undo History panel and click any item listed in the panel. Elements takes you to that last edit while scrubbing all edits that follow the selected item. If you want to bring back the edits, just click again on any step appearing grayed out in the panel to redo up to that level.

All your steps are listed in the Undo History panel as long as you remain in Elements and don't close the file. When the file is closed, all history information is lost.

## Reverting to the last save

While you work away in Elements, always plan on saving your work regularly. Each time you save in an editing session, the Undo History panel preserves the list of edits you made before the save and up to the maximum number of history states defined in the General preferences.

If you save, then perform more edits, and then want to return to the last saved version of your document, Elements provides you with a quick, efficient way to do so. If you choose Edit→Revert, Elements eliminates your new edits and takes you back to the last time you saved your file.

When you choose Revert, *Revert* appears in the Undo History panel. You can eliminate the Revert command from the Undo History panel by right-clicking Revert in the Undo History panel and choosing Delete from the context menu that appears. This command returns you to the edits made after the last save.

## Getting a Helping Hand

You can reach for this book whenever you want some details about accomplishing a task while working in Elements. However, for those little annoying moments, and just in case some coffee stains blot out a few pages in this book, you may want to look for an alternative feature description from another source.

Rather than accumulate a library of Elements books, all you need to do is look at Elements itself to find some valuable help information quickly and easily. If you're stuck on understanding some feature, ample help documents that are a mouse click away can help you overcome some frustrating moments.

### Using Help

Your first stop in exploring the helpful information Elements provides is on the Help menu. In this menu, you can find several menu commands that offer information:

- ✓ **Photoshop Elements Help:** Choose Help⇨Photoshop Elements Help or press the F1 key to open the Elements Help file. You can type a search topic and press Enter to open a list of items that provide helpful information about the searched words.

For quick access to the Help document, type the text you want to search into the text box on the right side of the menu bar in Full Edit or Quick Edit mode.

- ✓ **Glossary of Terms:** While you read this book, if we use a term that you don't completely understand, open the Photoshop Elements glossary. In this glossary, you can find definitions of terms commonly used in photography and image editing, as well as terms related specifically to Elements.
- ✓ **Online Support:** This menu command launches your default Web browser and takes you to the Adobe Web site, where you can find information about Elements, problems reported by users, and some work-around methods for getting a job done. Additional Web assisted help information is available by clicking Photoshop Elements Online and Online Learning Resources. The vast collection of Web pages on Adobe's Web site offers you assistance, tips and techniques, and solutions to many problems that come with editing images. Be sure to spend some time browsing these Web pages.

## Using PDFs from the installation CD

A number of bonus files are stored in PDF form on your installation CD. PDF files require the free Adobe Reader program or one of the commercial Acrobat viewers. Adobe Reader can be installed from the CD during the installation process.

Depending on when you purchased your Elements installer CD, the version of Adobe Reader on the CD may be outdated. If you want to stay with the latest upgrade of Adobe Reader, open your Web browser and type this address in the address bar:

```
www.adobe.com/products/reader
```

Adobe Systems provides easy, step-by-step instructions for downloading the most current, free Adobe Reader program and installing it on your computer.



If you haven't upgraded to at least Adobe Reader 9, be sure to download the most recent version of Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader 9 and higher provide you with some direct connections to Acrobat.com, where you can expand your Photoshop.com storage space to over 7GB (gigabytes). Look at Chapter 16, in which we talk about using Photoshop.com and expanding your online libraries with Acrobat.com.

## Using ToolTips

While you move your cursor around tools and panels, pause a moment before clicking the mouse. A slight delay in your actions produces a ToolTip. Elements provides this sort of dynamic help when you pause the cursor before moving to another location.



# Getting Ready to Edit

## *In This Chapter*

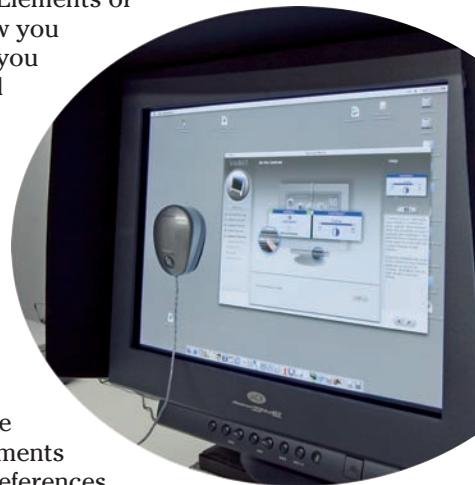
- ▶ Specifying editing preferences
- ▶ Specifying organizing preferences
- ▶ Working with presets
- ▶ Understanding color in Photoshop Elements
- ▶ Setting up your color management system

**A**lthough not as exciting as firing up Elements and working on your precious pictures, customizing Elements for your personal work habits and properly setting up color management is critical to everything else you do in the program. This chapter explains how to take charge of Elements and customize your work environment by adjusting preference settings and setting up a color management system. If you're new to Elements or image editing in general, you might not know just how you want to set up certain features right away. However, you can always refer to this chapter when you review and update settings and options later, after you become familiar with other features in Elements.

## *Controlling the Editing Environment*

Opening Elements for the first time is like moving into a new office. Before you begin work, you need to organize the office. At minimum, you need to set up the desk and computer before you can do anything. In Elements terms, the office organization consists of specifying Preferences settings. *Preferences* are settings that provide a means to customize your work in Elements and to fine-tune the program according to your personal work habits.

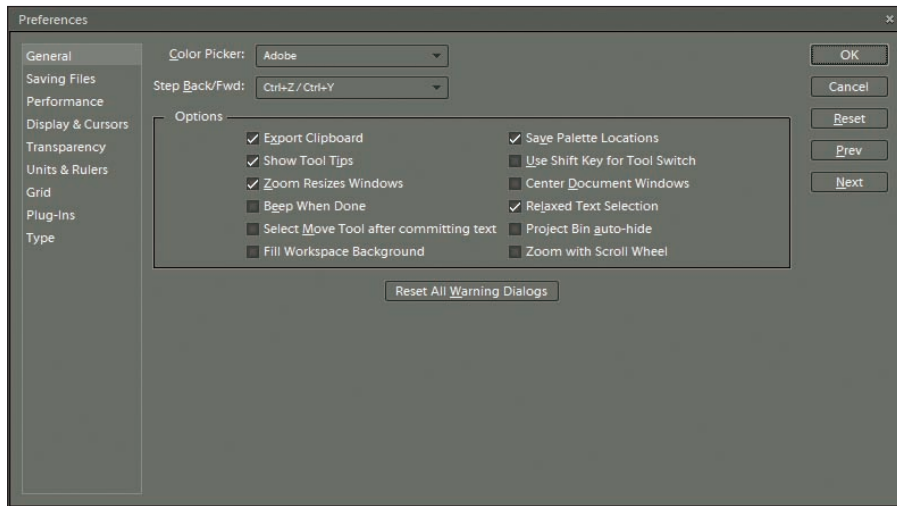
What we offer in the following sections is a brief description of the preference options available to you. When you need some detail regarding one preference



option or another, look at the help documents we discuss in Chapter 1. If you use the help documents as a reference, you won't need to memorize the vast number of settings Elements provides.

## Launching and navigating Preferences

Preferences are all contained in a dialog box that's organized into nine panes. By default, when you open the Preferences dialog box, the opening pane is the General pane. To open the Preferences dialog box, choose **Edit** → **Preferences** → **General**. Alternatively, press **Ctrl+⌘+K**. Using either method opens the Preferences dialog box to the General pane, as shown in Figure 2-1.



**Figure 2-1:** The General pane in the Preferences dialog box.

In Figure 2-1, you see items that are common to all preference panes. Here's a quick introduction to what these items are and how they work:

- ✓ **Panes list:** Elements lists all the different panes in the Preferences dialog box along the left side of the dialog box. Click an item in the list to make the respective pane open on the right side of the dialog box. In earlier versions of Elements, you had a drop-down menu where you selected the different panes.
- ✓ **OK:** Click OK to accept any changes made in any pane and dismiss the Preferences dialog box.
- ✓ **Cancel:** Click Cancel to return to the same settings as when you opened a pane, and it dismisses the dialog box. If you hold down the Alt key, the

Cancel button changes to Reset, and clicking that button performs the same action as clicking the Reset button.

- ✓ **Reset:** If you change the settings options and click Reset, the action takes you back to the same settings as when you opened the Preferences dialog box, and the dialog box remains open.
- ✓ **Prev:** Switch to the previous pane.
- ✓ **Next:** Switch to the next pane. You can also press Ctrl/⌘+(1 through 9 keys) to jump to another pane. Ctrl/⌘+0 opens the Organizer workspace and its Preferences dialog box when you're in the Edit mode Preferences dialog box.

## Checking out all the Preferences panes

The settings in the Preferences dialog box are organized into different panes that reflect key categories of preferences. The following list briefly describes the types of settings you can adjust in each of the Preferences panes:

- ✓ **General preferences**, as the name implies, apply to overall general settings you adjust for your editing environment.
- ✓ **Saving Files preferences** relate to options available for saving files. You can choose to add extensions to filenames, save files with layers or flatten layers when you're saving a file (as we explain in Chapter 8), save files with image previews that appear when you're viewing files as icons on your desktop, and save with some compatibility options.
- ✓ **Performance preferences** is the pane where you find history states (explained in Chapter 1) and memory settings, such as scratch disk settings. (See the sidebar "What's a scratch disk?" below for more on scratch disks.)

Don't use USB 1.1 external hard drives or other drives that have connections slower than USB 2 or FireWire. Using slower drives slows the performance of Elements.



## What's a scratch disk?

Assume that you have 100 megabytes (MB) of free RAM (your internal computer memory) and you want to work on a picture that consumes 200MB of hard disk space. Elements needs to load all 200MB of the file into RAM. Therefore, an auxiliary source of RAM is needed in order for you to work on the image; Elements uses your hard drive. When a hard drive is used as an extension of RAM, this source is a *scratch disk*.

If you have more than one hard drive connected to your computer, you can instruct Elements to use all hard drives, and you can select the order of the hard drives that Elements uses for your extension of RAM. All disks and media sources appear in a list as 1, 2, 3, 4, and so on.

- ✓ **Display & Cursors preferences** offer options for how certain tool cursors are displayed and how you view the Crop tool when you're cropping images.
- ✓ **Transparency preferences** require an understanding of how Elements represents transparency. Imagine painting a portrait on a piece of clear acetate. The area you paint is opaque, and the area surrounding the portrait is transparent. To display transparency in Elements, you need some method to represent transparent areas. (Chapter 7 has more details.) Open the Transparency preferences and make choices for how transparency is displayed in your 2-D Elements environment.
- ✓ **Units & Rulers preferences** let you specify settings for ruler units, column guides, and document preset resolutions.
- ✓ **Grid preferences** offer options for gridline color, divisions, and subdivisions. A *grid* shows you nonprinting horizontal and vertical lines. You use a grid to align objects, type, and other elements. You can snap items to the gridlines to make aligning objects much easier.
- ✓ **Plug-Ins preferences** contain options for selecting an additional Plug-Ins folder for storing third-party utilities to work with Elements.
- ✓ **Type preferences** provide options for setting text attributes. You have options for using different quote marks, showing Asian characters, showing font names in English, and previewing font sizes.

## Controlling the Organizing Environment



A whole different set of Preferences appears when you open the Organizer and choose Edit⇨Preferences or press Ctrl/⌘+K. Initially, you may be confused because the dialog box that opens when you work in the Organizer is also named Preferences. However, a quick glance at the dialog box shows you a different set of Preferences choices. In the following sections, you can find a brief introduction to the Organizer and discover all the different organization preferences that Elements has to offer.



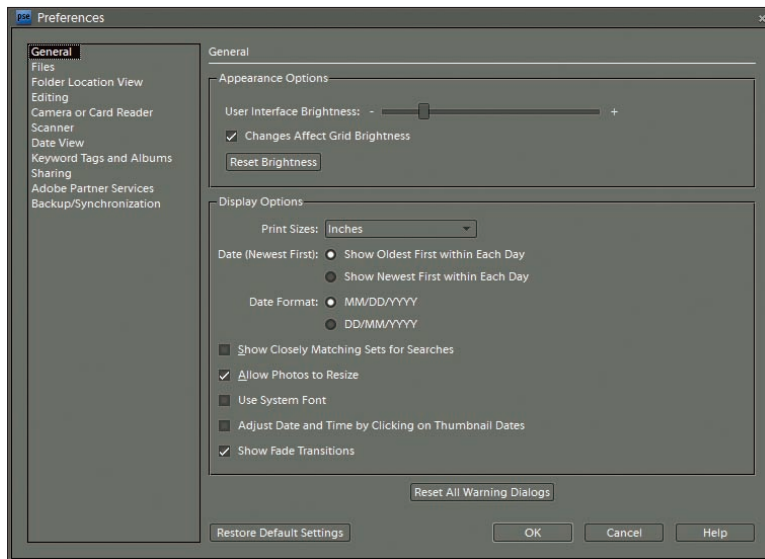
When you open the Full Edit or Quick Fix mode and press Ctrl/⌘+K to open the Preferences dialog box, pressing Ctrl/⌘+K+0 (zero) opens the Organizer Preferences. After you make a preference adjustment in the Organizer Preferences and click OK, or you click Cancel to dismiss the dialog box, you are returned to the Editing mode's Preferences dialog box.

## Understanding the Photoshop Elements Organizer

We cover all you need to know about the wonderful Adobe Photoshop Elements Organizer environment in Chapter 6, so we don't describe in this chapter all that the Organizer offers you. Just be aware that when you're setting the Organizer preferences, you're setting preference options for the Organizer only. To take a quick peek at the Organizer, click the Organize button while in Edit or Quick Edit mode.

## Navigating Organizer preferences

You can open the Organizer Preferences dialog box after opening the Organizer. Users of Elements versions earlier than Elements 6 are familiar with an option to select Organizer Preferences while in the Edit Preferences dialog box. This choice was removed from the Edit Preferences in Photoshop Elements 6 and hasn't reappeared in Elements 7; however, you can use a keyboard shortcut to open the Organizer Preferences dialog box. Press **Ctrl/⌘+0** (zero) to open the Organizer from within a Preferences dialog box in either editor to gain access to the Organizer Preferences dialog box. Alternately, you can choose **Edit⇨Preferences** or press **Ctrl/⌘+K** in the Organizer window to open the Preferences dialog box, shown in Figure 2-2.



**Figure 2-2:** Choose **Edit⇨Preferences** and select a submenu item to open the Organizer Preferences dialog box.

The Organizer Preferences dialog box uses the same metaphor to toggle through a number of panes that the Edit Preferences dialog box uses. Click the names in the list on the left side of the dialog box to open the respective panes on the right side of the dialog box. At the bottom of the dialog box, you find items that are common to all panes in the Preferences dialog box. These include

- ✓ **Restore Default Settings:** Click Restore Default Settings to change all panes to their original defaults.
- ✓ **OK:** Click OK to accept new changes.

- ✔ **Cancel:** Click Cancel in any pane, and any changes you made aren't registered.
- ✔ **Help:** Click Help to open the Help window and find information about Organize & Share preferences.

## *Setting preferences in all the panes*

With the Organizer Preferences dialog box open, here's a quick overview of what you find there:

- ✔ **General preferences:** These items affect a miscellaneous group of settings that are applied to files when you're using the Create tool. Chapter 16 explains this tool in detail.
- ✔ **Files preferences:** Offers options for managing file data, connecting to missing files, prompting to back up your data, saving catalogs, choosing file and folder locations for saved files, rotating images, burning CD/DVDs, and handling preview sizes.
- ✔ **Folder Location View preferences:** Provides options for showing files and folders in groups and selected folders.
- ✔ **Editing preferences:** You can enable another application that provides some editing features not found in Elements to edit an image based on its file type. One good example for adding another editor is when you're editing video clips. If you have Adobe Premiere Elements, you can add Premiere as another editor. If you don't have Premiere installed, you can use another editor, such as Microsoft Media Maker.
- ✔ **Camera or Card Reader preferences:** Handle acquiring images from digital cameras and media storage cards. Your computer may have built-in card readers in which you can insert a media card, such as CompactFlash or Smart Media, or a USB card reader that supports a media card. In other cases, you may have a cable that connects from your camera to a USB port on your computer. These preference options are used with media cards, camera connections, and download options.
- ✔ **Scanner preferences:** If you scan images with a scanner connected to your computer, the Scanner preferences hold all the options you may want to set.
- ✔ **Date View preferences:** View files on new dates that you can add to the pane or from selections for a variety of holiday dates.
- ✔ **Keyword Tags and Albums preferences:** Helps you find and sort your images, as we explain in much more detail in Chapters 5 and 6. Tag preferences offer options for sorting tags and icon views for tags.
- ✔ **Sharing preferences:** Relate to sharing files via e-mail. Options are available for setting an e-mail client and adding captions to e-mailed files.
- ✔ **Adobe Partner Services preferences:** Offer choices for handling program updates and online service orders. You can choose to check for

program updates automatically or manually, choose options for printing and sharing images, and specify how you want to update creations, accounts, and more.

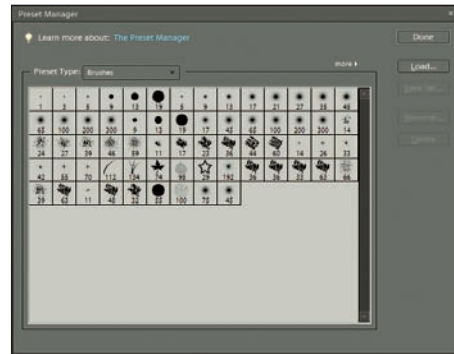
- ✓ **Backup/Synchronization preferences:** This new Photoshop Elements 7 addition is used for synchronizing your files with Photoshop.com. You must be logged onto Photoshop.com in order to see the preferences options.

## Customizing Presets

Part of the fun of image editing is choosing brush tips, swatch colors, gradient colors, and patterns to create the look you want. To get you started, Elements provides you with a number of different preset libraries that can be loaded and used at your will. For example, you can load a Brushes library to acquire different brush tips you use with the Brush tool. But you're likely to want to customize the preset libraries at least a little bit, too.

You can change libraries individually in respective panels where the items are used. For example, you can change color swatch libraries on the Color Swatches panel or brush tips libraries from Options bar choices. Another way you can change libraries is to use the Preset Manager, as shown in Figure 2-3.

We cover using the presets in Chapter 12, which is where you can find out how to use the many different presets that Elements provides. The important thing to note here is that you can change the presets according to your editing needs.



**Figure 2-3:** The Preset Manager dialog box provides a central area where you can change libraries.

To open the Preset Manager dialog box, choose **Edit** ⇨ **Preset Manager**. The options you have available include

- ✓ **Learn More about: The Preset Manager:** Click the blue Preset Manager hyperlinked text to open the Help document and find out more about managing presets.
- ✓ **Preset Type:** Open the drop-down menu to choose from Brushes, Swatches, Gradients, and Patterns.
- ✓ **More:** The More drop-down menu lists different viewing options. You can view the library items as text lists or as thumbnail views.
- ✓ **Done:** Any changes you make in the Preset Manager are recorded and saved when you click Done.



- ✓ **Load:** Click this button to open another library. Elements provides you with several libraries from which to choose for each preset type.
- ✓ **Save Set:** Any changes you make in the Preset Manager can be saved as a new library. Use this option if you make a change so that you don't disturb the original presets.
- ✓ **Rename:** Each item in a library has a unique name. If you want to rename an item, click the thumbnail in the Preview window, click Rename, and type a new name in the dialog box that appears.
- ✓ **Delete:** Click an item in the Preview window and click Delete to remove the item from the library.

## Getting Familiar with Color

We could spend a whole lot of time and many pages in this book delving into the complex world of color theory and definitions. You wouldn't likely read it, and we're not so inclined to reduce this book from a real page-turner to something that's likely to sedate you. Rather, in the following sections, we offer some fundamental principles to make your work in Elements easier when you're editing color images.

### Introducing color channels

Your first level of understanding color is to understand what RGB is and how it comes about. *RGB* stands for *red*, *green*, and *blue*. These are the primary colors in the computer world. Forget about what you know about primary colors in an analog world; computers see primary colors as RGB.

RGB color is divided into *color channels*. Although you can't see the individual channels in Elements, you still need to understand just a little about color channels.

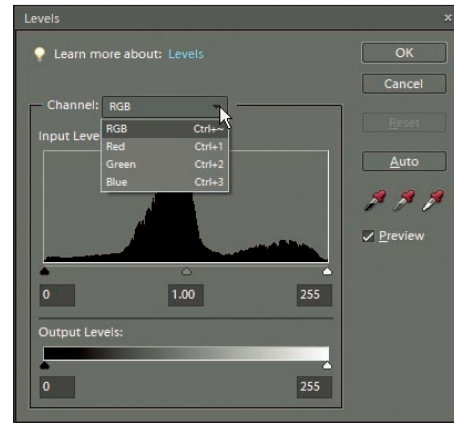
When you see a color *pixel* (a tiny, square dot), the color is represented as different levels of gray in each channel. This may sound confusing at first, but stay with us for just a minute. When you have a color channel, such as the red channel, and you let all light pass through the channel, you end up with a bright red. If you screen that light a little with a gray filter, you let less light pass through, thereby diluting the red color. This is how channels work. Individually, they all use different levels of gray that permit up to 256 levels of light to pass through them. When you change the intensity of light in the different channels, you ultimately change the color.



Each channel can have up to 256 levels of gray that mask out light. The total number of possibilities for creating color in an RGB model is achieved by multiplying the values for each channel ( $256 \times 256 \times 256$ ). The result is more than 16.7 million; that's the total number of colors a computer monitor can display in RGB color.

This is all well and good as far as theory goes, but what does that mean in practicality? Actually, you see some of this information in tools and dialog boxes you work with in Elements. As an experiment, open a file in Elements and choose Enhance⇨Adjust Lighting⇨Levels; the dialog box shown in Figure 2-4 opens.

Notice that the Channel drop-down menu shows you Red, Green, and Blue as individual channels, as well as a composite RGB selection. Furthermore, the Output Levels area shows you values ranging from 0 on the left to 255 on the right. Considering that 0 is a number, you have a total of 256 different levels of gray.



**Figure 2-4:** Choose Enhance⇨Adjust Lighting⇨Levels to open the Levels dialog box.



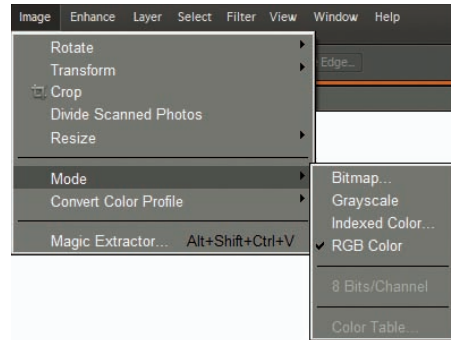
What's important is that you know that your work in color is related to RGB images that comprise three different channels. There are 256 levels of gray that can let through or hold back light and change brightness values and color. See Chapters 9 and 10 for more on using tools, such as levels, to adjust color in this way.

## Understanding bit depth

Another important item to understand about channels is bit depth. A *bit* holds one of two values; one value is for black, the other for white. When you have 256 levels of gray, you're working with an 8-bit-per-channel image — 8 bits with two possible values each is 256, or 256, possible levels of gray. Multiply 8 bits per channel times your 3 channels, and you get 24 bits, which is the common bit depth of images you print on your desktop printer.

Now, take a look at the Image⇨Mode menu. You should see a menu selection that says 8 Bits/Channel, as shown in Figure 2-5. When you open an image in Elements, if this menu command is grayed out, you're working with a 24-bit image, or an image of 8 bits per channel.

What does it mean when you can select the 8 Bits/Channel menu command? You can be certain that your image isn't an 8-bit-per-channel image. You may be able to select this command because some digital cameras and most low-end, consumer-grade scanners can capture images at higher bit depths. You can scan a photo on a scanner at 16 bits per channel. When you do, you end up with many more levels of gray. When you take a picture with a quality digital camera, you can capture 32-bit-per-channel images, and you end up with a file containing 32,768 levels of gray. That's a lot!



**Figure 2-5:** When you can choose 8 Bits/Channel, your image bit depth is higher than 8 bits per channel.

Now, here's the catch. All files need to be reduced to 8 bits per channel before you print them because that's all the information any printer uses. In addition, many tools, commands, and panel options work only with 8-bit-per-channel images. So, you ask, "What's the benefit of acquiring images at higher bit depths than I can print them?"



If you attempt to adjust brightness and contrast, or other image enhancements, in an 8-bit-per-channel image, you often destroy some data. You can cause some noticeable image degradation if you move adjustment sliders too far while working with 8-bit-per-channel images. When you edit your 16-bit and 32-bit images, you don't destroy data — you simply inform Elements which 256 of the total available levels of gray you want to use. The result is an image with more continuous gray tones than you can achieve in 8-bit-per-channel images. (For more on image bit-depth, see Chapter 3.)

## Getting Color Right

In Elements, when it comes to color, the challenge isn't understanding color theory or definitions, but rather matching the RGB color you see on your computer monitor as closely as possible to your output. *Output* can be a printout from a color printer or a screen view on a Web page.

We say match "as closely as possible" because you can't expect to achieve an exact match. You have far too many printer and monitor variables to deal with. However, if you properly manage color, you can get a very close match.

To match color between your monitor and your output, you need to first calibrate your monitor and then choose a color workspace profile. In the following sections, you can find all the details.

## Calibrating your monitor

Your monitor needs to be calibrated to adjust the gamma and brightness, correct any color tints or colorcasts, and generally get your monitor to display, as precisely as possible, accurate colors on your output. You have a few choices for which tool you can use to adjust monitor brightness, ranging from a low-cost hardware device that sells for less than \$100 to expensive calibration equipment of \$3,000 or more — or you can skip the hardware and use tools provided by Adobe or Windows.



*Gamma* is the brightness of midlevel tones in an image. In technical terms, it's a parameter that describes the shape of the transfer function for one or more stages in an imaging pipeline.

We skip the high-end costly devices and software utilities that don't do you any good and suggest that you make, at the very least, one valuable purchase for creating a monitor profile: a hardware profiling system. On the low end, some affordable devices go a long way in helping you adjust your monitor brightness and color balance:

- ✓ **ColorVision Spyder2express:** This is a calibration device on the market. For as low as \$64, you can purchase an easy-to-use, three-step device to balance the color on your monitor and adjust it for optimum brightness. This device is receiving five-star ratings at online resellers, including [www.amazon.com](http://www.amazon.com).
- ✓ **Pantone Huey Monitor Color Correction:** This is another, low-cost calibration system used for calibrating both CRTs and LCDs. This unit retails for \$89 and sells for \$63 at Amazon.com, as of this writing.
- ✓ **X-Rite Eye-One Display 2 (formerly GreTag MacBeth Eye-One Display 2):** This device, like the Spyder2express and Huey, is an easy-to-use profiling tool that works with CRT displays, LCDs, and laptop computers. It sells for around \$195 to \$250. You attach the suction cup to your monitor (see Figure 2-6) and click a few buttons in the software application accompanying the hardware, and Eye-One Display 2 eventually prompts you to save a monitor profile. The profile you create is used automatically by your operating system when you start your computer. When the profile kicks in, your monitor is balanced with the settings that were determined when the device performed the calibration.

On LCD monitors, you need to adjust some of the hardware controls to bring your monitor into a match for overall brightness with your photo prints. Be

certain to run many test prints and match your prints against your monitor view to make the two as similar as possible.

You have a lot to focus on to calibrate monitors and get color right on your monitor and your output. We talk more about color output in Chapter 14. For a good resource for color correction and printing using Photoshop Elements, we recommend that you look at *Color Management For Digital Photographers For Dummies*, by Ted Padova and Don Mason (Wiley).

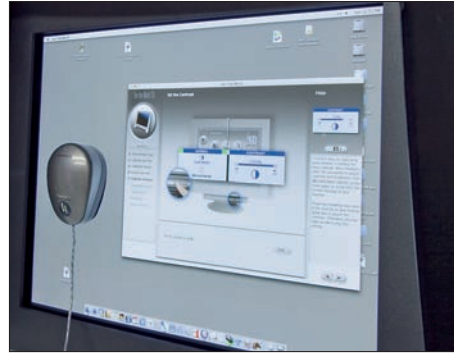
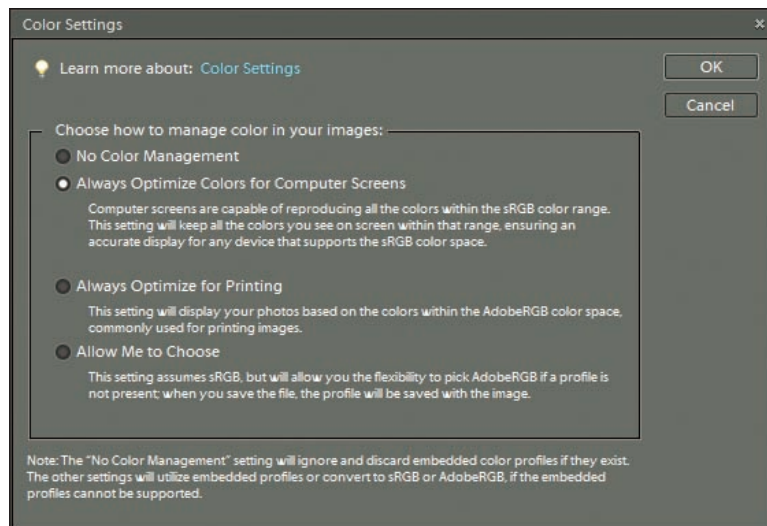


Photo: Courtesy Don Mason Photography

**Figure 2-6:** The Eye-One Display 2 calibration device.

## Choosing a color workspace

After you get your monitor color adjusted by using a hardware profiling system, your next step is to choose your color workspace. In Elements, you have a choice between one of two workspace colors: either sRGB or Adobe RGB (1998). You access your color workspace settings by choosing **Edit**⇨**Color Settings**. The Color Settings dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 2-7.



**Figure 2-7:** The Color Settings dialog box.

The options you have in the Color Settings dialog box include

- ✓ **No Color Management:** This choice turns off all color management. Don't choose this option for any work you do in Elements. When using No Color Management, you need to work with files that have color profiles embedded in the photos. Most likely you won't be using these types of photos. For information related to when you might use the option, see Chapter 14.
- ✓ **Always Optimize Colors for Computer Screens:** Checking this radio button sets your workspace to sRGB. sRGB color is used quite often for viewing images on your monitor. But this workspace often results in the best choice for color printing, too. Many color printers can output all the colors you can see in the sRGB workspace. In addition, many photo services, such as the Kodak EasyShare services we talk about in Chapter 16, prefer this workspace color.
- ✓ **Always Optimize for Printing:** Checking this option sets your color workspace to Adobe RGB (1998). The color in this workspace has more available colors than can be seen on your monitor. If you choose this workspace, you need to be certain that your printer is capable of using all the colors in this color space.
- ✓ **Allow Me to Choose:** When you choose this option, Elements prompts you for a profile assignment when you open images that contain no profile. This setting is handy if you work back and forth between screen and print images.

## *Understanding how profiles work*

You probably created a monitor color profile when you calibrated your monitor. You probably also selected a color profile when you opened the Color Settings dialog box and selected your workspace color. When you start your computer, your monitor color profile kicks in and adjusts your overall monitor brightness and correction for any colorcasts. When you open a photo in Elements, color is automatically converted from your monitor color space to your workspace color.

At print time, you use another color profile to output your photos to your desktop color printer. Color is then converted from your workspace color to your printer's color space. In Chapter 14, we show you how to use color profiles for printing. For now, just realize that each one of these color profiles, and using them properly, determines whether you can get good color output.



# Working with Resolutions, Color Modes, and File Formats

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Understanding and changing resolution
- ▶ Resampling images
- ▶ Understanding color modes
- ▶ Working with file formats

When you open a picture in Photoshop Elements, you're looking at a huge mass of pixels. These *pixels* are tiny, colored squares, and the number of pixels in a picture determines the picture's *resolution*. This relationship between pixels and resolution, which is important for you to understand in all your Elements work, relates to creating selections (as we explain in Chapter 7), printing files (Chapter 14), and sharing files (Chapter 16).

*Color modes* are also represented as collections of pixels. Color modes are important when you're using tools, and printing and sharing files.

This chapter explains some essential points about resolution, color modes, and the file formats you use to save your Elements images. We talk about changing resolution by resizing images, converting color modes, and saving the results in different file formats.



## *The Ubiquitous Pixels*

Files you open in Elements are composed of millions of tiny, square pixels. Each pixel has one, and only one, color value. The arrangement of the pixels of different shades and colors creates an illusion to your eyes when you're

viewing an image onscreen. For example, you may have black and white pixels arranged in an order that creates the impression that you're looking at something gray — not at tiny black and white squares.

Just about everything you do in Elements has to do with changing pixels. You surround them with selection tools to select what appear to be objects in your image; you make pixels darker or lighter to change contrast and brightness; you change shades and tints of pixels for color correction; and you perform a host of other editing possibilities.

We also have another term to throw at you when talking about pixels and Elements files: Your pictures are *raster images*. When you have pixels, you have raster data. If you open a file in Elements that isn't made of pixels, Elements *rasterizes* the data. In other words, Elements converts other data to pixels if the document wasn't originally composed of pixels.



You can also have vector content in an Elements file. Text added with the Type Tool, for example, is a vector object. When you save an Elements file with the Text layer intact or save as a Photoshop PDF file, the vector data is maintained. We talk more about vector data in Chapter 13. For this chapter, you just need to focus on raster data.



To use most of the tools and commands in Elements, you must be working on a raster image file. If your data isn't rasterized, many tools and commands are unavailable.

## Understanding resolution

The number of pixels in a file determines its image resolution. If you have 72 pixels across a 1-inch horizontal line, your image is 72 pixels per inch (ppi). If you have 300 pixels in 1 inch, your image resolution is 300 ppi.



Image resolution is critical to properly outputting files in these instances:

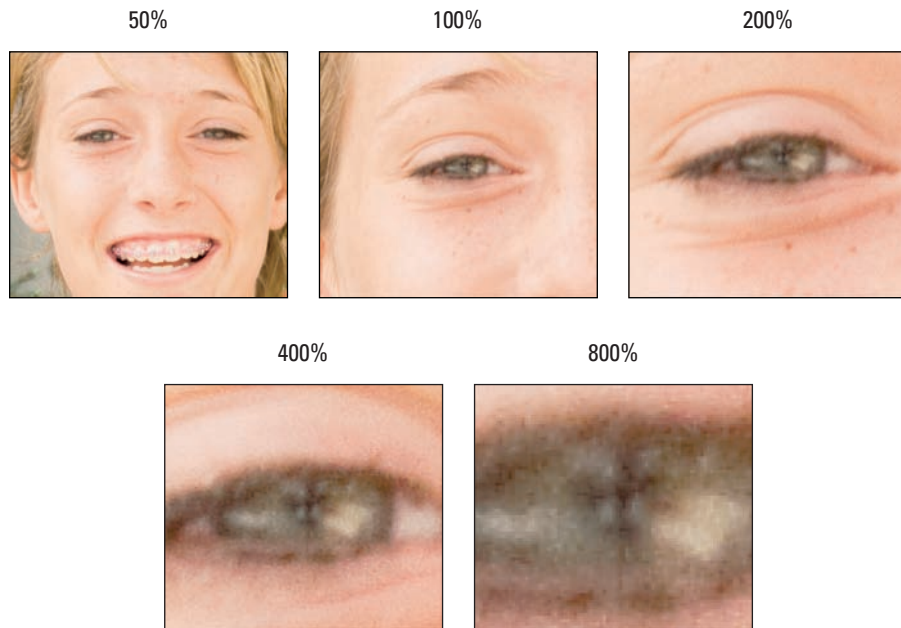
- ✓ **When you print images:** If the resolution is too low, the image prints poorly. If the image resolution is too high, you waste time processing all the data that needs to be sent to your printer.
- ✓ **When you show images onscreen:** Just like images have resolution inherent in their files, your computer monitor displays everything you see on it in a fixed resolution. Computer monitors display images at 72 ppi (or 85 or 96 ppi). That's all you get. What's important to know is that you can always best view photos on your computer monitor at a 72-ppi image size in a 100-percent view.



As an example, take a look at Figure 3-1. You see an image reduced to 50 percent and then at different zoom sizes. When the size changes, the resolution display on your monitor changes. When the size is 100 percent, you see the image exactly as it will print. The 100-percent size represents the image displayed on your monitor at 72 ppi, regardless of the resolution of the file.

This relationship between the image resolution and viewing the image at different zoom levels is an important concept to grasp. If you grab an image off the Web and zoom in on it, you may see a view like the 800-percent view shown in Figure 3-1. If you acquire a digital camera image, you may need to zoom out to a 16-percent view to fit the entire image in the Image window.

The reason that these displays vary so much is all image resolution. That Web page image you grabbed off the Web might be a 2-inch-square image at 72 ppi, and that digital camera image might be a 10-x-15-inch image at 240 ppi. To fill the entire window with the Web image, you need to zoom in on the file. When you zoom in, the resolution is lowered. The more you zoom, the lower the resolution on your monitor.



**Figure 3-1:** The same image is viewed at different zoom levels.



When you zoom into or out of an image, you change the resolution as it appears on your monitor. No resolution changes are made to the file. The image resolution remains the same until you use one of the Elements tools to reduce or add to image resolution.

## Understanding image dimensions

Image dimensions involve the physical size of your file. If the size is 4 x 5 inches, for example, the file can be any number of different resolution values. After the file is open in Elements, you can change the dimensions of an image, the resolution, or both.

When you change only the dimensions of an image (not the number of pixels it contains), an inverse relationship exists between the physical size of your image and the resolution. When image size is increased, resolution decreases. Conversely, when you raise resolution, you lower image size.

## The Art of Resampling

In some cases, images are too large, and you need to reduce their resolution and physical size. In other cases, you might need a higher resolution to output your images at larger sizes. This method of sizing — changing the size, as well as the number of pixels — is *resampling* an image.



Specifically, reducing resolution is *downsampling*, and raising resolution is *upsampling*.

Use caution when you resample images; when you resample, you toss away pixels or manufacture new pixels. We discuss the sampling details in the section “Understanding the results of resampling,” later in this chapter.

## Changing image size and resolution

You can change an image’s size and resolution in a couple different ways. One method is cropping images. You can use the Crop tool with or without resampling images. For more information on using the Crop tool, see Chapter 9. Another method is using the Image Size dialog box, which you use in many of your editing sessions in Elements.

To resize an image with the Image Size dialog box, follow these steps:

### 1. Choose Image⇨Resize⇨Image Size.

Alternatively, you can use the keyboard shortcut Ctrl/⌘+Alt+I. The Image Size dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 3-2.

The Pixel Dimensions area in the Image Size dialog box shows the file size (such as 23.4M). This number is the amount of space the image takes up on your hard drive. The width and height values are fixed unless you click the Resample Image check box at the bottom of the dialog box.

**2. In the Document Size area, you can redefine dimensions and resolution. The options are**

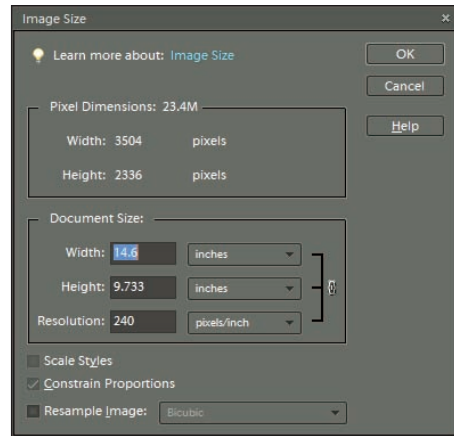
- **Width:** Type a value in the text box to resize the image's width and then press Tab to move out of the field to implement the change. From the drop-down menu to the right of the text box, you can choose a unit of measure: percent, inches, centimeters, millimeters, points, picas, or columns.
- **Height:** The Height options are the same as the Width options with the exception of no column setting. If you keep the sizing proportional, you typically edit either the Width or Height text box, but not both. When you alter either width or height, the resolution changes inversely.
- **Resolution:** Edit the text box to change resolution, and press the Tab key to change the value. When resolution is edited, the Width and Height values are changed inversely (if the Constrain Proportions check box is checked).

**3. If you're okay with resampling your image to get the desired size, select the Resample Image check box.**

With this check box selected, you can change dimensions and pixels at the same time, which results in reducing or increasing the number of pixels. When the box is unchecked, the values for dimensions are linked. Changing one value automatically changes the other values.

Before you resample your image, however, be sure to check out the following section.

**4. If you select the Resample Image check box, you can choose a resampling method, as well as other resample options.**



**Figure 3-2:** Choose Image → Resizer → Image Size to open the Image Size dialog box.

In the drop-down list, you find resampling-method choices. See Table 3-1 for details. The two check boxes above the Resample Image check box become active when you select the Resample Image box. Here's what they do:

- *Scale Styles*: Elements has a Styles panel from which you can add a variety of different style effects to images. (See Chapter 11 for details.) When you apply a style, such as a frame border, the border appears at a defined width. When you select the Scale Styles box and then resize the image, the Styles effect is also resized. Leaving the check box unselected keeps the style at the same size while the image is resized.
- *Constrain Proportions*: By default, this check box is selected, and you want to keep it that way unless you want to intentionally distort an image.

5. When you're done selecting your options, click OK to resize your image.

**Table 3-1 Resampling Methods**

<i>Method</i>	<i>What It Does</i>	<i>Best Uses</i>
Nearest Neighbor	This method is fastest, and the results produce a smaller file size.	This method is best used when you have large areas of the same color.
Bilinear	This method produces a medium-quality image.	You might use this option with grayscale images and line art.
Bicubic	This method is the default and provides a good-quality image.	Unless you find better results by using any of the other methods, leave the default at Bicubic.
Bicubic Smoother	This method improves on the Bicubic method, but you notice a little softening of the edges.	If sharpness isn't critical and you find Bicubic not quite doing the job, try this method. This method tends to work best if you have to upsample an image.
Bicubic Sharper	This method produces good-quality images and sharpens the results.	Downsample high-resolution images that need to be output to screen resolutions and Web pages.

### *Understanding the results of resampling*

As a general rule, reducing resolution is okay, but increasing resolution isn't. If you need a higher-resolution image and you can go back to the original source (such as rescanning the image or reshooting a picture), try (if you can) to create a new file that has the resolution you want, instead of

resampling in Elements. In some cases, upsampled images can be severely degraded.

If you take a picture with a digital camera and want to add the picture to a Web page, the image needs to be sampled at 72 ppi. In most cases, you visit the Image Size dialog box, select the Resample Image check box, add a width or height value, and type **72** in the Resolution text box. What you end up with is an image that looks great on your Web page. In Figure 3-3, you can see an image that was downsampled in Elements from over 14 inches horizontal width.



**Figure 3-3:** Downsampling images most often produces satisfactory results.



If you start with an image that was originally sampled for a Web page and you want to print a large poster, you can forget about using Elements or any other image editor. Upsampling low-resolution images often turns them to mush, as you can see in Figure 3-4.

You might wonder whether upsampling can be used for any purpose. In some cases, yes, you can upsample with some satisfactory results. You can experience better results with higher resolutions of 300 ppi and more if the resample size isn't extraordinary. If all else fails, try applying a filter to a grainy, upsampled image to mask the problem. Chapter 11 has more on filters.



**Figure 3-4:** Upsampling low-resolution images often produces severely degraded results.

## *Choosing a Resolution for Print or Onscreen*

The importance of resolution in your Elements work is paramount to printing files. Good ol' 72-ppi images can be forgiving, and you can get many of your large files scrunched down to 72 ppi for Web sites and slide shows. With output to printing devices, it's another matter. There are many different printing output devices, and their resolution requirements vary.

For your own desktop printer, plan to print a variety of test images at different resolutions. You can quickly determine the best file attributes by running tests. When you send files to service centers, ask the technicians what file attributes work best with their equipment.

For a starting point, look over the recommended resolutions for various output devices listed in Table 3-2.

<i>Output Device</i>	<i>Optimum</i>	<i>Acceptable Resolution</i>
Desktop color inkjet printers	300 ppi	180 ppi
Large-format inkjet printers	150 ppi	120 ppi
Professional photo lab printers	300 ppi	200 ppi
Desktop laser printers (black and white)	170 ppi	100 ppi
Magazine quality — offset press	300 ppi	225 ppi
Screen images (Web, slide shows, video)	72 ppi	72 ppi

## Go Ahead — Make My Mode!

Regardless of what output you prepare your files for, you need to consider color mode and file format. In Chapter 2, we talk about RGB (red, green, and blue) color mode. This color mode is what you use to prepare color files for printing on your desktop color printer or for preparing files for photo service centers.

You can also use color modes other than RGB. If you start with an RGB color image and want to convert to a different color mode, you have menu options for converting color. Photoshop Elements uses an *algorithm* (a mathematical formula) to convert pixels from one mode to another. In some cases, the conversion that's made via a menu command produces good results, and in other cases, you can use some different options for converting modes.

In the following sections, we introduce the modes that are available in Elements and explain how to convert from RGB to the mode of your choice: bitmap, grayscale, or indexed color.



Another mode you may have heard of is CMYK. Although CMYK mode isn't available in Photoshop Elements, you should be aware of what it is and the purposes of CMYK images. CMYK, commonly referred to as *process color*, contains percentages of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black colors. This mode is used for commercial printing. If you design a magazine cover in Elements and send the file to a print shop, the file is ultimately converted to CMYK. Also note that most desktop printers use different ink sets within the CMYK color space.



## Converting to Bitmap mode

Bitmap mode is most commonly used in printing line art, such as black-and-white logos, illustrations, or black-and-white effects that you create from your RGB images. Also, you can scan your analog signature as a bitmap image and import it into other programs, such as the Microsoft Office programs. If you're creative, you can combine bitmap images with RGB color to produce many interesting effects.



The Elements Bitmap mode isn't the same as the Windows `.bmp` file format. In Elements, Bitmap mode is a color mode. A `.bmp` file can be an RGB color mode image, a Grayscale color mode image, or a Bitmap color mode image.



One important thing to keep in mind is that when you combine images into single documents, as we explain in Chapter 8, you need to convert bitmap files to grayscale or color if you want to merge the images with an RGB image. If you convert to grayscale, Elements takes care of converting grayscale to RGB mode.

As an example of an effect resulting from combining grayscale and color images, look over Figure 3-5. The original RGB image was converted to a bitmap and then saved as a different file. The bitmap was converted to grayscale and dropped on top of the RGB image. After adjusting the opacity, the result is a grainy effect with desaturated color.

You can acquire Bitmap mode images directly in Elements when you scan images that are black and white. Illustrated art, logos, your signature, or a copy of a fax might be the kind of files you scan directly in Bitmap mode. Additionally, you can convert your images to Bitmap mode.

Converting RGB color to bitmap is a two-step process. You need to first convert to grayscale and then convert from grayscale to bitmap. If you select the Bitmap menu command while in RGB color, Elements prompts you to convert to grayscale first.



**Figure 3-5:** You can create some interesting effects by combining the same image from a bitmap file and an RGB file.

To convert RGB mode to Bitmap mode, do the following:

1. **Open an image that you want to convert to Bitmap mode in either Full Edit or Quick Edit mode.**
2. **Choose Image⇨Mode⇨Bitmap.**

If you start in RGB mode, Elements prompts you to convert to grayscale.

3. **Click OK, and the Bitmap dialog box opens.**

The Bitmap dialog box provides options for selecting the output resolution and a conversion method.

4. **Select a resolution.**

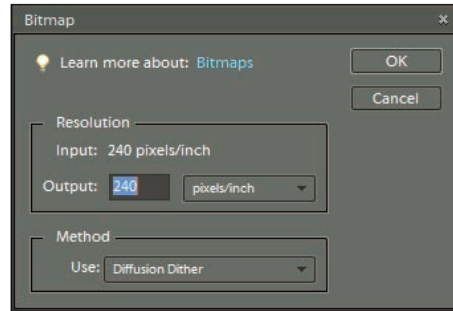
By default, the Bitmap dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-6, displays the current resolution. You can edit the text box and type a new resolution value or accept the default.

5. **From the Use drop-down menu, select from these settings:**

- *50% Threshold*
- *Pattern Dither*
- *Diffusion Dither*

Look over Figure 3-7 to see a comparison of the different methods used in converting RGB images to bitmaps.

6. **Click OK to convert your image to Bitmap mode.**



**Figure 3-6:** Type a resolution for your output and select the conversion method from the Use drop-down menu.

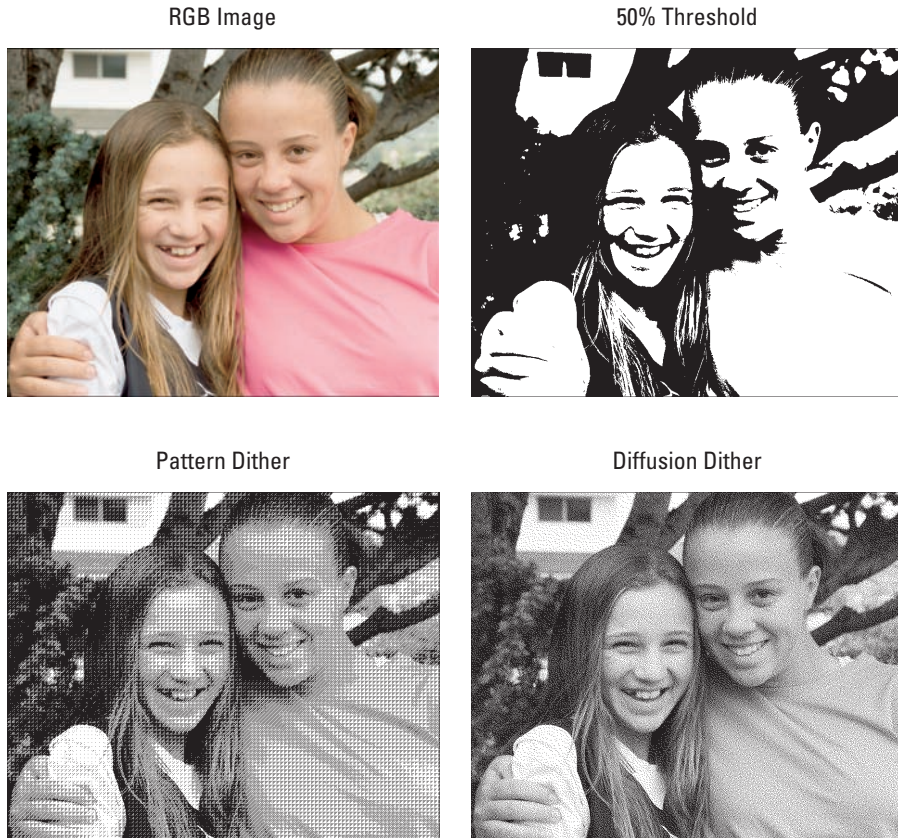
## Converting to Grayscale mode

Grayscale images have black and white pixels and any one of 256 levels of gray. By converting an RGB image to grayscale, you can make it look like a black-and-white photo.



You can convert an image to grayscale in one of three ways, but remember that one of these methods isn't as good as the others. We recommend that you avoid converting to grayscale by choosing Image⇨Mode⇨Grayscale. When Elements performs this conversion, it removes all the color from the pixels, so you lose some precious data during the conversion and can't regain the color after conversion. If you convert an image to grayscale, save the file, and delete the original from your hard drive or memory card, the color image is lost forever. You can save a secondary file, but this method can add a little confusion and require some more space on your hard drive.





**Figure 3-7:** An original RGB image converted to bitmap by using 50% Threshold, Pattern Dither, and Diffusion Dither.

As an alternative to using the menu command for converting images to grayscale, follow these steps:

- 1. Open an RGB image in Elements.**
- 2. Duplicate a layer.**

The default Panels Bin contains the Layers panel. In this panel, you find a pop-up menu when you click More in the upper-right corner. From the menu commands, choose Duplicate Layer. (For more information on working with layers, see Chapter 8.)

- 3. Choose Enhance → Adjust Color → Adjust Hue/Saturation (or press Ctrl/⌘+U) to open the Hue/Saturation dialog box, shown in Figure 3-8.**

**4. Drag the Saturation slider to the far left to desaturate the image.**

All color disappears, but the brightness values of all the pixels remain unaffected. (For more information on using the Hue/Saturation dialog box and the other Adjust Color commands, see Chapter 10.)

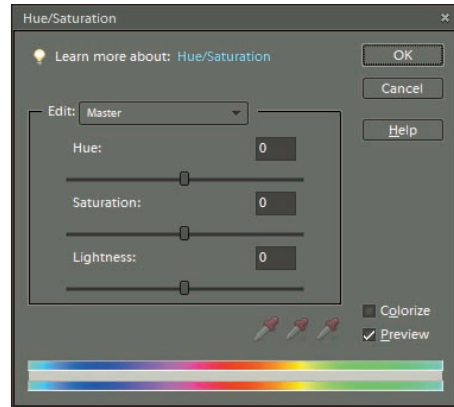
**5. Turn off the color layer by clicking the eye icon.**

In the Layers panel, you see two layers, as shown in Figure 3-9. You don't need to turn off the color layer to print the file in grayscale, but turning it off can help you remember which color layer you used the last time you printed or exported the file.

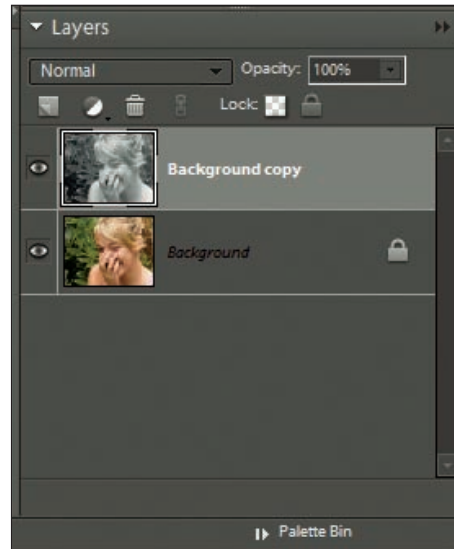
Following the preceding steps provides you with a file that contains both RGB and grayscale. If you want to print the color layer, you can turn off the grayscale layer. If you need to exchange files with graphic designers, you can send the layered file, and then the design professional can use both the color image and the grayscale image.

The other advantage of converting RGB color to grayscale by using the Hue/Saturation dialog box is that you don't disturb any changes in the brightness values of the pixels. Moving the Saturation slider to desaturate the image affects only the color. The luminance and lightness values remain the same.

A menu command was introduced in Photoshop Elements 5 for converting color images to grayscale.



**Figure 3-8:** Open the Hue/Saturation dialog box and move the Saturation slider to the far left to eliminate color.



**Figure 3-9:** The Layers panel shows the grayscale and color layers. You can turn layers on or off by clicking the eye icon.

Choose Enhance→Convert to Black and White in either Edit mode or Quick Edit mode, and you see the Convert to Black and White dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-10.

This dialog box contains many controls for adjusting brightness and contrast in images that you convert to grayscale. You can select from some preset options in the Select a Style list. You move the sliders in the Adjustment Intensity area and view a dynamic preview in the After thumbnail area.



If you want to keep your original RGB image in the same file as the grayscale version, duplicate the background by choosing Duplicate Layer from the Layers panel's More menu. Click the background and choose Enhance→Convert to Black and White. The conversion is applied only to the background, leaving the Background copy layer in your original color mode.

### Converting to Indexed Color mode

Indexed color is a mode you use occasionally with Web graphics, such as saving in GIF format or PNG-8. When saving indexed color images, you can, at times, create smaller file sizes than RGB that are ideal for using in Web site designs.

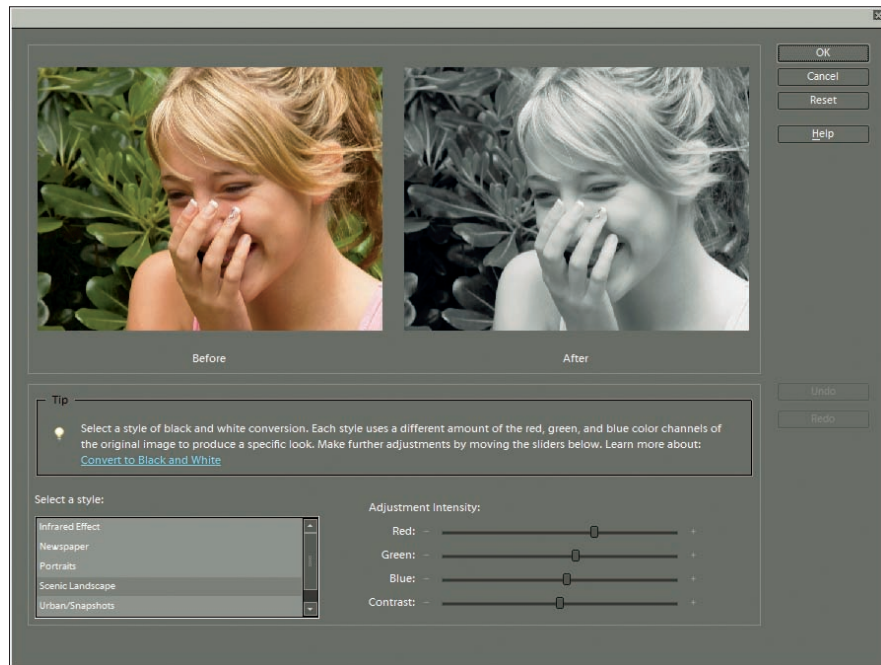


Figure 3-10: The Convert to Black and White dialog box.

RGB images in 24-bit color (8 bits per channel) are capable of rendering colors from a palette of 16.7 million colors, as we explain in Chapter 2. An indexed color image is an 8-bit image with only a single channel. The total number of colors you get with indexed color can be no more than 256. When you convert RGB images to indexed color, you can choose to *dither* the color, which displays the image with a dithered effect much like you see with bit-mapped images. This dithering effect makes the file appear as though it has more than 256 colors, and the transition between colors appears smoother than if no dithering was applied.

On occasion, indexed color images have an advantage over RGB images when hosting the images on Web servers: The fewer colors in a file, the smaller the file size. When you prepare images for Web hosting, you can choose to use indexed color or RGB color. Whether you choose one over the other really depends on how well the image appears on your monitor. If you have some photos that you want to show on Web pages, you should use RGB images and save them in a format appropriate for Web hosting, as we explain in the section “Saving files for the Web,” later in this chapter.

If you have files composed of artwork, such as logos, illustrations, and drawings, you may find that the appearance of index colors is no different from the same images as RGB. If that’s the case, you can keep the index color image and use it for your Web pages.

To convert RGB images to indexed color, choose Image⇨Mode⇨Indexed Color; the Indexed Color dialog box opens. A number of different options are available to you, and fortunately, you can preview the results while you make choices. Get in and poke around, and you can see the options applied in the image window.

## *Saving Files with Purpose*

Photoshop Elements files can be saved in a variety of different formats. Some format types require you to convert a color mode before the format can be used. Therefore, a relationship exists between file formats and saving files. Additionally, bit depths in images also relate to the kinds of file formats you can use when saving files.

Before you go too far in Elements, become familiar with file formats and the conversions that you need to make to save in one format or another. If you do nothing to an image in terms of converting modes or changing bit depth, you can save a file after editing in the same format in which the file was opened. In many circumstances, you open an image and prepare it for some form of output, which requires more thought about the kind of file format you use when saving the file.

## *Using the Save/Save As dialog box*

In most any program, the Save (or Save As) dialog box is a familiar place where you make some choices about the file to be saved. With Save As, you can save a duplicate copy of your image or a modified copy and retain the original file.

To use the Save (or Save As) dialog box, choose File→Save for files to be saved the first time, or choose File→Save As for any file, and a dialog box then opens.

The standard navigational tools you find in any Save dialog box appear in the Elements Save/Save As dialog box. Here are some standard options you find in the Elements Save/Save As dialog box:

- ✔ **Filename:** This item is common to all Save dialog boxes. Type a name for your file in the text box.
- ✔ **Format:** From the drop-down menu, you select file formats. We explain the formats supported by Elements in the section “Understanding file formats,” later in this chapter.

A few options make the Photoshop Elements Save/Save As dialog box different from other Save dialog boxes that you might be accustomed to using. The Save Options area in the Save As dialog box provides these choices:

- ✔ **Include in the Organizer:** If you want the file added to the Organizer, select this check box. (For more information about using the Organizer, see Chapter 6.)
- ✔ **Save in Version Set with Original:** You can edit images and save a version of your image, but only in Quick Edit mode. When you save the file from Quick Edit mode, this check box is active. Select the box to save a version of the original, which appears in the Organizer.
- ✔ **Color:** Check the box for ICC (International Color Consortium) Profile. Depending on which profile you’re using, the option appears for sRGB or Adobe RGB (1998). When the check box is selected, the profile is embedded in the image. See Chapter 2 for more information on profiles.
- ✔ **Thumbnail:** If you save a file with a thumbnail, you can see a miniature representation of your image when viewing it in folders or on the desktop. If you select Ask When Saving in the Saving Files preferences, the check box can be enabled or disabled. If you select an option for Never Save or Always Save in the Preferences dialog box, this box is enabled or disabled (and grayed out) for you. You need to return to the Preferences dialog box if you want to change the option.
- ✔ **Use Lower Case Extension:** File extensions give you a clue to which file format was used when a file was saved. Elements automatically adds the extension to the filename for you. Your choices are to use uppercase or



lowercase letters for the extension name. Select the check box for Use Lower Case Extension for lowercase or deselect the check box if you want to use uppercase characters in the filename.

## Saving files for the Web

You save files for Web hosting in a different dialog box than when you're saving files for other output. Choose File⇨Save for Web, and the Save for Web dialog box opens. We explain all you need to know about how to use the Save for Web dialog box for saving Web images in Chapter 15.

## Understanding file formats

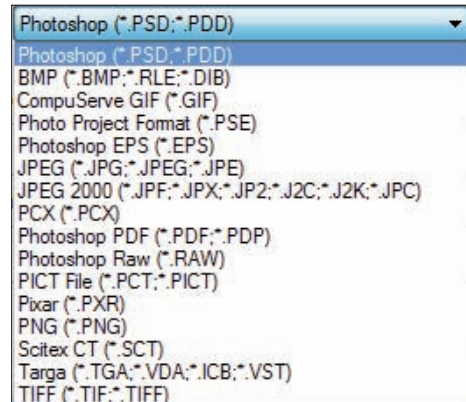
When you save files from Elements, you need to pick a file format in the Format drop-down menu found in both the Save and Save As dialog boxes.



When you choose from the different format options, keep the following information in mind:

- ✓ File formats are especially important when you exchange files with other users. Each format has a purpose, and other programs can accept or reject files depending on the format you choose.
- ✓ Whether you can select one format or another when you save a file depends on the color mode, the bit depth, and whether layers are present. If a format isn't present in the Format drop-down menu when you attempt to save a file, return to one of the edit modes and perform some kind of edit, such as changing a color mode or flattening layers, in order to save the file in your chosen format.

For a glimpse at all the file formats available to you, open a standard RGB color image in Standard Edit mode, choose File⇨Save As, and click the down arrow to open the Format drop-down menu. As you can see in Figure 3-11, you have many format options.



**Figure 3-11:** Open the Format drop-down menu in either the Save or Save As dialog box to make the formats supported by Elements appear.

In the following sections, we explain most of the file formats supported by Elements and the purpose for each format.

***Photoshop (\*.PSD, \*.PDD)***

This format is the native file format for both Photoshop and Photoshop Elements. The format supports saving all color modes and bit depths, and you can preserve layers. Use this format when you want to save in a native format or exchange files with Photoshop users. Also use it for saving files that you need to return to for more editing. When you save layers, any text you add to layers can be edited when you return to the file. (See Chapter 13 for more information on adding text to an image.)

***BMP (\*.BMP, \*.RLE, \*.DIB)***

The term *bitmap* can be a little confusing. You have both a file format type that's bitmap and a color mode that's also bitmap. Don't confuse the two. The bitmap *format* supports saving in all color modes and in all bit depths. The Bitmap *color mode*, which we cover in the section "Converting to Bitmap mode," earlier in this chapter, is 1-bit black-and-white only.

Use the bitmap format when you want to add images to system resources, such as wallpaper for your desktop. Bitmap is also used with many different application programs. If you can't import images in other program documents, try to save them as BMP files.

***CompuServe GIF (\*.GIF)***

Barb was a college coed, and Ted had a mustache and wore a green leisure suit, when CompuServe was the host for our e-mail accounts. We exchanged files and mail on 300 baud modems. Later, in 1987, CompuServe developed GIF (Graphics Interchange Format) to exchange files between mainframe computers and the ever-growing number of users working on Osborne, Kaypro, Apple, and Radio Shack TRS-80 computers.

GIF is now a popular format for hosting Web graphics. GIF images can be indexed color or animated images, and they support the smallest file sizes. Use this format when you need fewer than 256 colors and want to create animation in your images.

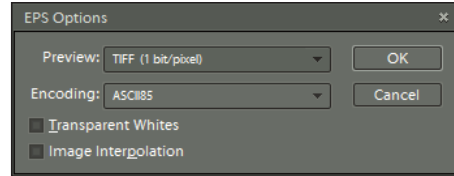
***Photo Project Format (\*.PSE)***

Use this option when you create a project and want to save the file as a project. See Chapter 16 for more on creating projects in Elements.

***Photoshop EPS (\*.EPS)***

Photoshop EPS (Encapsulated PostScript) files are sometimes used by graphic artists when they're designing jobs for commercial printing. The more popular format for creative professionals is TIFF, but Photoshop EPS has some advantages not found in other formats.

Depending on the color mode of your image, you have different options when you're using the Photoshop EPS file format. Select the format in the Save/Save As dialog box and click Save. If you're working on a bitmap image (1 bit), the EPS Options dialog box, as shown in Figure 3-12, opens. It offers an option to save transparency wherever white appears in your document.



**Figure 3-12:** When you're working on 1-bit bitmap images, this dialog box offers an option to save transparency where white appears in the document.

Notice the Transparent Whites check box. You might have a circular logo for which you want the area around the circle to appear transparent. If you import the graphical image in another program, you can see the black in the image, and all the white area is transparent and shows any background through what was white in the original bitmap image. If you save a file in a higher bit depth, the EPS Options dialog box doesn't provide an option for making whites transparent.

### **JPEG (\*.JPG, \*.JPEG, \*.JPE)**

JPEG (Joint Photographic Experts Group) is perhaps the most common file format now in use. JPEG files are used with e-mail attachments and by many photo labs for printing files, and they can be viewed in JPEG viewers and directly in Web browsers. Just about every program capable of importing images supports the JPEG format. Creative professionals wouldn't dream of using the JPEG format in design layouts, but everyone else uses the format for all kinds of documents.

You need to exercise some caution when you're using the JPEG format. JPEG files are compressed to reduce file size. You can scrunch an image of several megabytes into a few hundred kilobytes. When you save a file with JPEG compression, you experience data loss. You might not see this on your monitor, or it might appear noticeably on photo prints if you're using low compression while preserving higher quality. However, when you save with maximum compression, more pixels are tossed away, and you definitely notice image degradation.



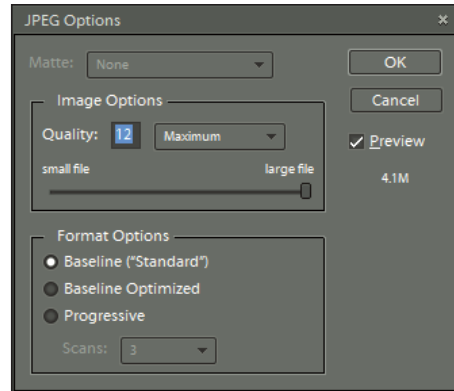
When you save, open, and resave images in JPEG format, each new save degrades an image more. If you need to submit JPEG images to photo labs for printing your pictures, keep saving in Photoshop PSD file format until you're ready to save the final image. Save in JPEG format when you want to save the final file for printing and use a low compression with high quality.

When you select JPEG for the format and click Save, the JPEG Options dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 3-13. You choose the amount of compression by typing a value in the Quality text box or by moving the slider below the Quality text box. The acceptable ranges are from 0 to 12 — 0 is the lowest



quality and results in the highest compression, and 12 is the highest quality that results in the lowest amount of compression.

Notice that you also have choices in the Format Options of the JPEG Options dialog box. The Progressive option creates a progressive JPEG file commonly used with Web browsers. This file type shows progressive quality while the file downloads from a Web site. The image first appears in a low-quality view and shows higher-resolution views until the image appears at full resolution when it's completely downloaded in your browser window.



**Figure 3-13:** When saving in JPEG format, choose the amount of compression you want to apply to the saved image.

### JPEG 2000 (\*.JPF, \*.JPX, \*.JP2, \*.J2K, \*.JPC)

JPEG 2000 is a newer JPEG file format. This format offers you the same mode quality as the JPEG format and an option to save the file with compression without tossing away pixels, in which case, you get *lossless compression*. The JPEG 2000 dialog box shows you, right in the dialog box and before you save the image, the results of the choices you make in terms of the resulting file size.



If you need to save images in JPEG format for your commercial photo lab, check with the technicians and ask whether they support JPEG 2000. If so, save your files in this format with a lossless compression. When files are compressed with lossless compression, you can expect to lose about two-thirds of the original file size. For example, a 6MB file can be reduced to about 2MB when it's saved as JPEG 2000 in a lossless-compression format. Note that if you save files in JPEG 2000 format for the Web, Web browsers need to have a plug-in to see the images.

### PCX (\*.PCX)

PCX is a native PC format first used with PC Paintbrush. Most programs now support newer file formats, and you're not likely to need to save in PCX format. If you have legacy files from years ago, you can open PCX files in Elements, edit them, and save them in a newer format.

### Photoshop PDF (\*.PDF, \*.PDP)

Adobe PDF (Portable Document Format) is designed to maintain document integrity and exchange files between computers. PDF is one of the most popular formats and can be viewed in the free Adobe Reader program available

for installation on your Elements CD installer or by downloading it from the Adobe Web site.

PDF is all over the place in Elements. When you jump into Organize mode and create slide presentations, cards, and calendars, for example, you can export your documents as PDF files. When you save in Photoshop PDF format, you can preserve layers and text. Text is recognizable in Adobe Reader (or other Acrobat viewers) and can be searched by using the Reader's Find and Search tools.

PDF files can be printed, hosted on Web sites, and exchanged with users of Windows, Macintosh, Unix, and Linux. All in all, this format is well suited for all the files you create in Elements that contain text, layers, and transparency, and for when you want to exchange files with users who don't have Elements or Photoshop.

### *Photoshop Raw (\*.RAW)*

This format is used to exchange files between Windows and Mac users and mainframe computers. Unless you prepare files to be viewed on mainframes, don't bother saving in this format.

### *PICT File (\*.PCT, \*.PICT)*

PICT (Picture) format is Apple's answer to PCX on Windows. This format originated with the 1984 introduction of the Macintosh and the MacDraw program. PICT files are helpful for creating slides and video files on the Macintosh and for printing your images on film recorders that don't use PostScript. You might use the format when requested by a Mac user or when sending files that need to be printed as slides on a non-PostScript film recorder.

### *Pixar (\*.PXR)*

This format is used for exchanging files with Pixar workstations.

### *PNG (\*.PNG)*

PNG (Portable Network Graphics) is another format used with Web pages. PNG supports all color modes, 24-bit images, and transparency. Some older browsers, however, may need a plug-in to see PNG files on Web pages. One disadvantage of using PNG is that color profiles can't be embedded in the images, like they can with JPEG.

### *Scitex CT (\*.SCT)*

The Scitex Continuous Tone (CT) format is used by Scitex workstations in commercial printing environments.

### Targa (\*.TGA, \*.VDA, \*.ICB, \*.UST)

Targa is a format for describing bitmap images and is capable of representing bitmaps from black and white, indexed color, and RGB color. It's used for applications that can read Targa files, such as Truevision's hardware.

### TIFF (\*.TIF, \*.TIFF)

TIFF (Tagged Image File Format) is the most common format used by graphic designers. TIFF is generally used for importing images in professional layout programs, such as Adobe InDesign and Adobe PageMaker, and when commercial photo labs and print shops use equipment that supports downloading TIFF files directly to their devices. (**Note:** Direct downloads are used in lieu of opening a Print dialog box.)

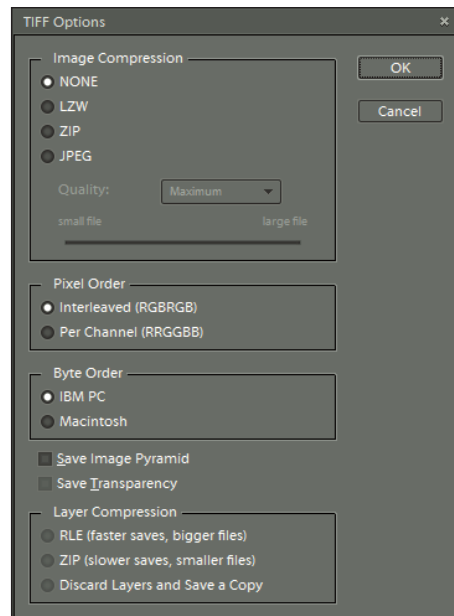
Inasmuch as creative professionals have used TIFF for so long, a better choice for designers using a program such as Adobe InDesign is saving in the native Photoshop PSD file format. This requires a creative professional to save only one file in native format without bothering to save both native and TIFF formats.

TIFF, along with Photoshop PSD and Photoshop PDF, supports saving layered files and works in all color modes. When you save in TIFF format, you can also compress files in several different compression schemes, and compression with TIFF files doesn't lose data unless you choose a JPEG compression.

When you select TIFF for the format and click Save in the Save/Save As dialog box, the TIFF Options dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 3-14.

In the Image Compression area, you have these choices:

- ✓ **NONE:** Selecting this option results in no compression. You use this option when sending files to creative professionals for creating layouts in programs such as Adobe InDesign. None of the compression schemes in the following bullets is recommended for printing files to commercial printing devices.



**Figure 3-14:** Choose TIFF from the Format drop-down menu and click Save to open the TIFF Options dialog box.

- ✓ **LZW:** This lossless compression scheme results in much lower file sizes without destroying data.
- ✓ **ZIP:** ZIP is also a lossless compression scheme. You can favor ZIP compression over LZW when you have large areas of the same color in an image.
- ✓ **JPEG:** JPEG is lossy and results in the smallest file sizes. Use JPEG here the same as when you apply JPEG compression with files saved in the JPEG format.

### File formats at a glance

We've been working with Photoshop, which saves in the same formats listed in this section, since 1989. Yet we have never used all the formats available in Photoshop Elements. At most, you'll use maybe three or four of these formats.



You don't need to remember all the formats and what they do. Just pick the ones you use in your workflow, mark Table 3-3 for reference, and refer to it from time to time until you have a complete understanding of how files need to be prepared in order to save them in your desired formats. If you happen to receive a file from another user in one of the formats you don't use, come back to the description in this chapter when you need some detail on what the format is used for.

**Table 3-3** File Format Attributes Supported by Photoshop Elements

<i>Format</i>	<i>Color Modes Supported</i>	<i>Embed Profiles* Supported</i>	<i>Bit Depth Supported</i>	<i>Layers Supported</i>
Photoshop PSD, PDD	Bitmap, RGB, Index, Grayscale	Yes	1, 8, 24, H	Yes
BMP	Bitmap, RGB, Index, Grayscale	No	1, 8, 24, H	No
CompuServe GIF**	Bitmap, RGB, Index, Grayscale	No	1, 8, 24	No
Photoshop EPS	Bitmap, RGB, Index, Grayscale	Yes	1, 8, 24	No

<b>Format</b>	<b>Color Modes Supported</b>	<b>Embed Profiles* Supported</b>	<b>Bit Depth Supported</b>	<b>Layers Supported</b>
JPEG	RGB, Grayscale	Yes	8, 24	No
JPEG 2000	RGB, Grayscale	Yes	8, 24, H	No
PCX	Bitmap, RGB, Index, Grayscale	No	1, 8, 24	No
Photoshop PDF	Bitmap, RGB, Index, Grayscale	Yes	1, 8, 24, H	Yes
Photoshop RAW	RGB, Index, Grayscale	No	8, 24, H	No
PICT File	Bitmap, RGB, Index, Grayscale	Yes	1, 8, 24	No
Pixar	RGB, Grayscale	No	8, 24	No
PNG	Bitmap, RGB, Index, Grayscale	No	1, 8, 24, H	No
Photoshop Multiple Page Document	Bitmap, RGB, Index	No	1, 8, 24, H	No
Scitex CT	RGB, Grayscale	No	8, 24	No
Targa	RGB, Index, Grayscale	No	8, 24	No
TIFF	Bitmap, RGB, Index, Grayscale	Yes	8, 24, H	Yes

*The letter H in Column 4 represents higher-bit modes, such as 16- and 32-bit images, which you might acquire from scanners and digital cameras. See Chapter 2 for more information on higher-bit images.*

*\*Embedding profiles is limited to embedding either sRGB IEC61966-2.1 or AdobeRGB (1998).*

*\*\*CompuServe GIF doesn't support saving layers, although it supports saving layers as frames. You use the frames when creating an animated GIF file used for Web pages.*

### *Audio and video formats supported in Elements*

In addition to the image formats listed in Table 3-3, Elements supports audio and video files. The support is limited to adding and viewing audio and video files in the Organizer and printing the first frame in a video file. Other kinds of edits made to audio and video files require special software for audio and video editing.

Audio files can be imported in slide shows, as we explain in Chapter 15. The acceptable file formats for audio files are MP3, WAV, QuickTime, and WMA. If you have audio files in another format, you need to convert the file format. For these kinds of conversions, you can search the Internet for a shareware audio-conversion program.

Video files can also be imported in slide shows, as we discuss in Chapter 15. Elements supports the WMV (Windows) video format. Like with audio files, if videos are saved in other formats, such as Apple QuickTime (for Windows users), you need to convert the QT video format to WMV. For video-conversion utilities, you can also find shareware programs to do the job. Search the Internet for a video converter.

# Part II

## Getting Organized



## *In this part . . .*

**T**he first thing you want to do after opening the Photoshop Elements program is to access your photos from a digital camera, from your hard drive, or from your scanner. In this part, we talk about how to access your pictures and get them into Elements for editing. We talk about organizing your pictures by using many impressive organizing features in the program, as well as by searching for photos, labeling them, and then creating different versions of the same picture. When it comes to organizing pictures, Elements is one of the best tools you can find to keep your precious photos neatly cataloged and accessible.





# Getting Your Images

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Acquiring photos from cameras and card readers
- ▶ Scanning photos and artwork
- ▶ Importing photos from CDs, DVDs, and other media
- ▶ Working with online services
- ▶ Acquiring photos from cell phones
- ▶ Creating new documents
- ▶ Working with Camera Raw files

You have many different sources to work with for getting a picture into Elements, where you can play with it, experiment on it, and edit it. If you have a digital camera, you're in the right place; we walk you through all kinds of different options for getting the shots you took with your camera into Elements.

If you have a digital scanner, you're in the right place, too! We talk about scanning photos, as well. If you have some CDs, sources of files on the Internet, some massive collection of images written to a DVD, or even a picture or two that you took with your cell phone, you're still in the right place!

In the preceding chapters, we flirt with opening files. If you followed some of the steps in those chapters for opening images, you should have a feel for using the Open tool and Open command. But there's more to acquiring images than just using the Open command, as you can find out in this chapter.

This chapter covers all you need to know about getting images into Elements from all kinds of sources and answers all your questions about how to move around the workspaces to get your files into Elements.



## Digital Cameras versus Scanners and Film Cameras

If you don't have a digital camera, we encourage you to buy one as soon as you can. Digital cameras and Photoshop Elements were made to work together. If you've spent any time scanning images on a digital scanner, you'll appreciate the speed that a camera offers you compared to a scanner when the time comes to get your images into Elements.

"But I can do more with my scanner than with a digital camera," you say? "Not really," we say. Just for starters, here are some of the benefits you get with a digital camera:

- ✔ **Faster access to files:** Copying images from a digital camera media card is much faster than scanning images from prints and film.
- ✔ **Higher-quality images:** Considering the costs of medium- to high-end scanners, you can shoot much better pictures with a good-quality SLR (single lens reflex) camera with a quality lens than you can scan film or prints with a good-quality consumer-grade scanner.
- ✔ **OCR and text recognition:** Unless you have industrial-strength needs for scanning reams of text documents that need to be interpreted by *optical character recognition (OCR)* software, which converts images to editable text, you'll do just fine with a digital camera and copy stand. If you scan individual pages on a scanner, shooting pages with a camera is much faster and can produce the same results when pages need to be converted to text.
- ✔ **3-D objects:** With digital cameras, you can shoot 3-D objects. Try scanning a pair of shoes — well, maybe some other three-dimensional object — on a scanner bed sometime. The experiment isn't worth getting dirt all over your scanner.
- ✔ **Reduced costs:** With a digital camera, you eliminate film and film-processing costs. You can order photo prints in superstore outlets, at less than ten cents apiece, that are printed on the same photo paper you get with prints from film. What's more, you can order prints of only the pictures you want to keep, rather than develop an entire roll to have just that one good photograph.
- ✔ **Organizing and archiving:** Digital images can be saved to CDs/DVDs, where you can add information for every image to keep them easily organized, as we explain in Chapter 6. Searching a DVD is much faster than searching through photo books of slides, film, or prints. Archiving digital images is fast and easy, and you don't need to worry about scratches, faded colors, or damaged originals.

- ✔ **Control over image processing:** With film, you're stuck with the processing time and temperature that the photo lab uses to process your film. With some digital cameras, you can post-process an image after you shoot it, as we explain in the last section of this chapter.
- ✔ **Video clips:** Many digital cameras provide a video-shooting mode so that you can shoot video.

The preceding list gives you some of the benefits of using a digital camera over using a scanner. Scanners do have their place, and some of the benefits you have with a scanner that you don't have with cameras involve

- ✔ **Auto document feeders:** You can buy scanners that have automatic document feeders, where pages of documents can be scanned unattended. If you need to scan large volumes of pages to recognize text, this operation is much more practical than using a camera.
- ✔ **Legacy pictures:** You can shoot photo prints with digital cameras and, depending on the camera, produce images equal to a scanner. Filmstrips and slides are easily handled with scanners and adapters. However, you can also find attachments for your camera that enable you to shoot slides and negatives. For more information on shooting slides and negatives with a digital camera, check out *Color Correction For Digital Photographers Only*, by Ted Padova and Don Mason (Wiley).

## Grabbing Images from Your Camera

Copying photos from your digital camera to your computer so that you can work with them in Elements is simple if you're familiar with your camera and the tools at your disposal. In the following sections, you can find some points to consider about choosing a resolution when you shoot your pictures, as well as how to use the Microsoft AutoPlay Wizard (Windows Vista) and Adobe Photoshop Elements 7.0 – Photo Downloader after you hook up your camera to your computer.

### Choosing a file format

When you work with digital photos in Elements, the file format of your images is an important point to consider. You choose this format before you take your pictures, and the format is carried over to your computer when you pull images off your camera.

The most common file formats that digital cameras offer are JPEG and Camera Raw. Some cameras offer other options, but these two formats are the most common. Low-cost point-and-shoot cameras offer you only the JPEG format, and the more expensive cameras, including the SLR types, offer you both JPEG and Camera Raw:

- ✓ **JPEG:** Cameras that produce JPEG images process images with JPEG compression before saving them. It's as though your camera performs a darkroom method of film processing when the shot is taken.

We describe the JPEG file format in Chapter 3.

- ✓ **Camera Raw:** This format provides you with an optimum image for editing in Elements. When a Camera Raw image is saved to a media source, all the information the sensor captured is saved with the file. These images are post-processed when you open them. (See the “A Basic Primer on Camera Raw” section, later in this chapter, to find out about opening Camera Raw images.) For example, you can open a Camera Raw image and, before the image opens in Elements, adjust temperature, exposure, and a bunch of other settings. You can return to the original Camera Raw file and change the temperature or exposure, for example, to open the file with different settings. Just like chemical temperature and development time affect analog film processing, similar options affect post-processing Camera Raw images. The difference between analog film and Camera Raw is that after your analog film is processed, you can't change the processing attributes. With Camera Raw, you can go back and post-process the image 100 times and change the processing attributes each time.

Camera Raw also supports higher-bit-depth images than JPEG files do.



If you have a choice between just JPEG and both JPEG and Camera Raw, always choose the latter. You have much more editing control over your images, and ultimately, you get better results.

## Using the AutoPlay Wizard

Microsoft AutoPlay Wizard may launch automatically when your computer is connected to a media source. You can use the wizard to download images from your media source to your computer.

To copy images from a media source or when your camera is connected to your computer, follow these steps:

### 1. Hook up the media to your computer.

Connect your camera or external media reader to your computer, or insert a media source into a port or drive on your computer. The methods available to you should be detailed in the user's guide that shipped with your camera.

When you connect your media to your computer, a dialog box opens, providing options for how to handle the media.

### 2. Under **General Options**, click **Open Folder to View Files Using Windows Explorer**, as shown in Figure 4-1.

### 3. Open the folder containing images on the media card.

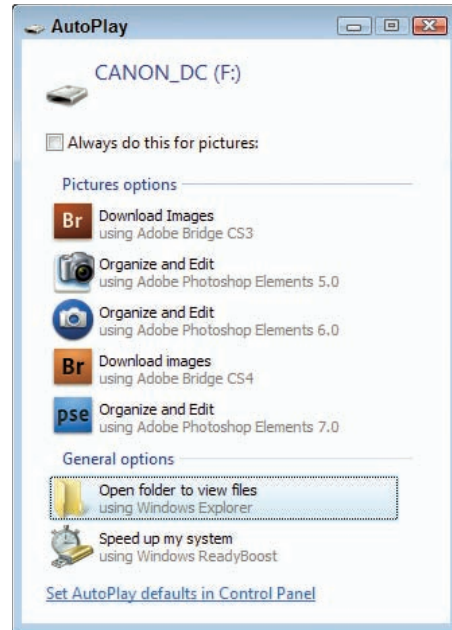
You might find a folder listed as DCIM or another name when you open the media card in Windows Explorer. Double-click the folder name to open the folder.

### 4. Select folders in Windows Explorer and drag them to a folder on your hard drive to copy them to your computer.

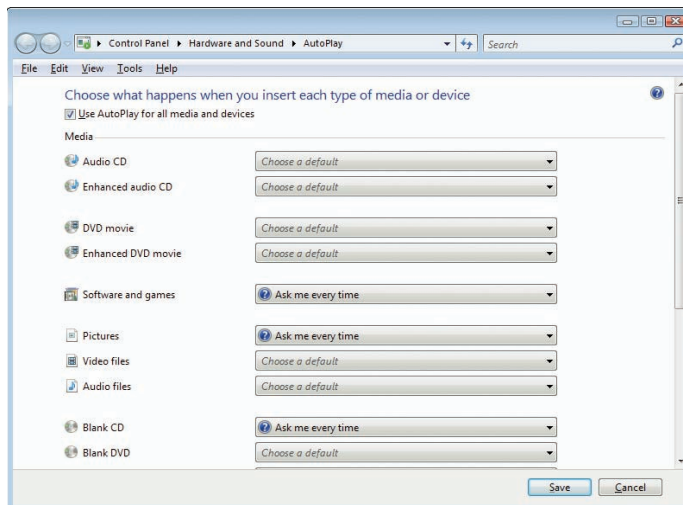
The images are copied to the target folder.



You can set preferences for the AutoPlay by clicking the Set AutoPlay Defaults in Control Panel link in the AutoPlay dialog box. When you open the Control Panel preferences, you can choose from a number of options for handling media, as shown in Figure 4-2. If you want to prevent the AutoPlay Wizard from automatically opening, you can select Take No Actions from the media types' drop-down menus.



**Figure 4-1:** Click the Open Folder to View Files Using Windows Explorer option.



**Figure 4-2:** Choose from a number of options for handling media.

## Using Adobe Photoshop Elements 7.0 – Photo Downloader

The Adobe Photoshop Elements 7.0 – Photo Downloader is installed with your Elements program. Photo Downloader acquires images from digital cameras connected to your computer, from card readers, and from card reader ports on your computer. Photo Downloader is an alternative application to Microsoft AutoPlay.

To use the Adobe Photoshop 7.0 – Photo Downloader, follow these steps:

- 1. Hook up the media to your computer.**
- 2. Click Cancel in the Microsoft AutoPlay Wizard.**

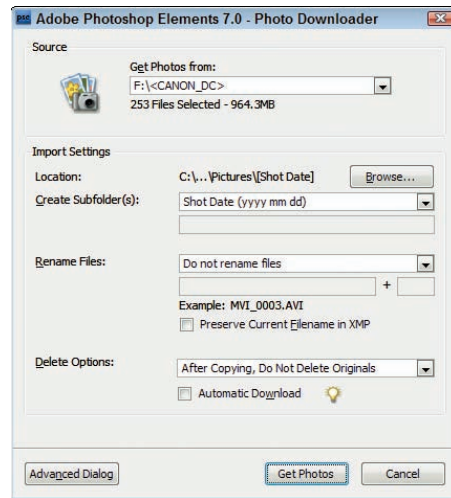
Because the wizard auto-launches, the opening pane appears when you make a connection between your camera media source and your computer. To bail out of the wizard, click Cancel.

- 3. If you don't see the download launch automatically, choose Start → All Programs → Adobe → Adobe Download Manager → Adobe Download Manager. Alternately, you can click the Adobe Download Manager in the Windows status bar.**

You can also launch Elements and choose File → Get Photos and Videos → From Camera or Card Reader, or press Ctrl/⌘+G.

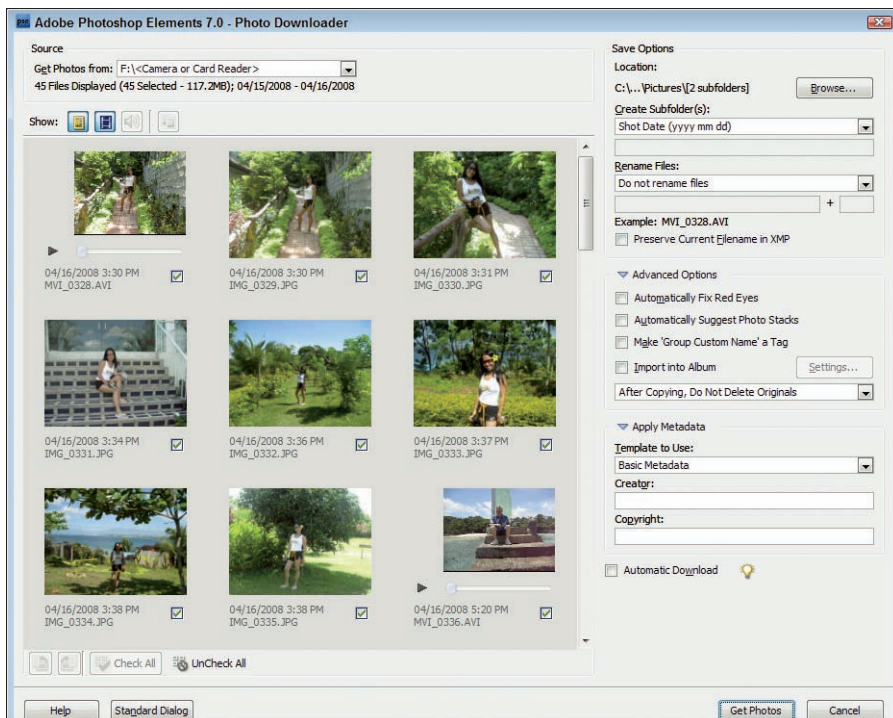
- 4. In the Photo Downloader, shown in Figure 4-3, click Get Photos to copy all the files to your hard drive.**
  - 5. If you want to copy a select group of files to your hard drive, click the Advanced Dialog button in the Photo Downloader Standard dialog box.**
- The Advanced dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 4-4.
- 6. Remove check marks from all photos you don't want to copy to your hard drive.**

By default, all photos are checked in a box below the photo thumbnails.



**Figure 4-3:** The Photo Downloader enables you to copy files from a media card to your hard drive.





**Figure 4-4:** Click Advanced Dialog to open the advanced dialog box, where you can selectively copy photos to your hard drive.

### 7. Click Get Photos to copy the selected photos to your hard drive.

Immediately after you make your selection, the Organizer window opens (if you checked the box for Open Organizer When Finished in the Standard dialog box). All the photos downloaded to your hard drive appear in a new Organizer window.



To simplify the process, stick with using one tool to acquire your digital camera images — either the Microsoft AutoPlay or the Adobe Photo Download Manager.

## *Resizing images from digital cameras*

Depending on your camera and the camera settings you use, you may need to resize your images after you download them.

Camera image resolution, which is measured in *megapixels* (millions of pixels), is a factor in image size at a 6:4 or 4:3 image ration. If you have a 6-megapixel camera, the full-resolution images from your camera are about 3000 x 2000 pixels — 6:4 ratio. The file size for a 6-megapixel image is about 5.7MB.

On the screen, the resolution of all digital camera images is 72 ppi (pixels per inch). Using the 6-megapixel image as an example, the resolution at 72 ppi produces an image a little more than 41 x 27 inches. Regardless of whether your camera takes pictures at 3, 5, or 8 megapixels, the images may all be captured at 72 ppi, but the dimensions vary according to the total number of pixels captured. With other cameras, you might find different resolutions and sizes, especially when capturing images as RAW.

When you visit the Image Size dialog box, deselect Resample Image, and edit the resolution text box when you're preparing images for print. (See Chapter 3 for more information on using the Image Size dialog box.) If your color printer requires 150 ppi, changing a 6-megapixel image from 72 ppi at 41 x 27 inches produces an image of a little more than 20 x 13 inches.

## Using a Scanner

Scanners connect through the same ports as cameras and card readers. Unless you have a *SCSI* (*Small Computer Systems Interface*) device, which is another type of connection port but almost nonexistent today, you use either USB or FireWire. Most low-end scanners sold now are USB devices.

Even the lowest-end scanners provide 16-bit scans that help you get a little more data in the shadows and highlights. Like with a digital camera, a scanner's price is normally in proportion with its quality.

### Preparing before you scan

Just as you'd clean a lens on a digital camera and set various menu selections before clicking the shutter button, you should prepare a few things ahead of time before scanning:

- ✓ **Connect the scanner properly.** Make sure that you have all connections made to your computer according to the user manual that came with your scanner. If you just purchased a scanner, check for any lock bolts and remove them according to the instructions.
- ✓ **Clean the scanner platen.** Use a lint-free cloth and some glass cleaner (applied to the cloth) to remove all dust and particles on the glass. The more dust particles you remove, the easier the job of editing your image in Elements.



- ✔ **Clean the source material.** Be certain that the print or film you want to scan is free of dust and spots.

If you have old negatives that are dirty or that have water spots or debris that you can't remove with a cloth and film cleaner, soak the film in photo *flo* (a liquid you can purchase at a photo reseller). Be certain that your hands are clean and then run the filmstrip between two fingers to remove the excess liquid. Turn on your shower full force with hot water only and hang film nearby to dry it. Remove the film when it's dry, and you should see a surprisingly clean filmstrip compared to your soiled original.

- ✔ **Get to know your scanner software.** When you scan in Elements, the software supplied with your scanner takes charge, and you use the options in this software before it finally drops into an Elements Image window.
- ✔ **Prepare the artwork.** If you plan on scanning pages in a book or pamphlet, remove the pages or try to make photocopies so that the piece you scan lies flat on the scanner platen. Make sure that you observe copyright laws if you're scanning printed works. For faxes and photocopies, try to improve originals by recopying them on a photocopier by using darker settings.
- ✔ **Find the scanner's sweet spot.** Every scanner has an area where you can acquire the best scans. This area is often called the *sweet spot*. To find the scanner's sweet spot, scan a blank piece of paper. The sweet spot is the brightest area on the resultant scan. Other areas should be darker. The sweet spot is most often in the upper-left quadrant, the lower-right quadrant, or the middle of the page. Note the area and plan to place your source material within this area when scanning pictures.

## Understanding image requirements

All scanning software provides you with options for determining resolution and color mode before you start a new scan. You should decide what output you intend to use and scan originals at target resolutions designed to accommodate a given output. Some considerations include

- ✔ **Scan the artwork or photo at the size and resolution for the final output.** If you have a 3-x-5 photo that needs to be 1.5 x 2.5 inches on a Web page, scan the original with a 50-percent reduction in size at 72 ppi. (See Chapter 3 for information about resizing images.)
- ✔ **Size images with the scanner software.** If you have a 4-x-6 photo that needs to be output for prepress and commercial printing at 8 x 12 inches, scan the photo at 4 x 6 inches at 600 ppi (enough to size to 200 percent for a 300 dpi image).

- ✓ **Scan properly for line art.** *Line art* is 1-bit black and white only. When you print line art on laser printers or prepare files for commercial printing, the line art resolution should match the device resolution. For example, printing to a 600 dpi (dots per inch) laser printer requires 600 ppi for a 1-bit line-art image. When you're printing to an image setter at a print shop, or it's going directly to plate or press, the resolution should be 1200 dpi.
- ✓ **Scan grayscale images in color.** In some cases, it doesn't matter, but with some images and scanners, you can get better results by scanning in RGB (red, green, and blue) color and converting to grayscale by using the Hue/Saturation dialog box or the Convert to Black and White dialog box, as we explain in Chapter 3.
- ✓ **Scan in high bit depths.** If your scanner is capable of scanning in 16- or 32-bit, by all means, scan at the higher bit depths to capture the most data. See Chapter 3 for more information about working with higher-bit images.

## Using scanner plug-ins

Generally, when you install your scanner software, a standalone application and a plug-in are installed to control the scanning process. *Plug-ins* are designed to work inside other software programs, such as Photoshop Elements. When you're using the plug-in, you can stay right in Elements to do all your scanning. Here's how it works:

1. **After installing a new scanner and the accompanying software, launch Elements and then open the Organizer by clicking Organize in the Welcome screen.**
2. **From the Organizer, open the Preferences dialog box by pressing Ctrl/⌘+K.**
3. **Click Scanner in the left column and adjust the Scanner preferences, as we describe in Chapter 2.**

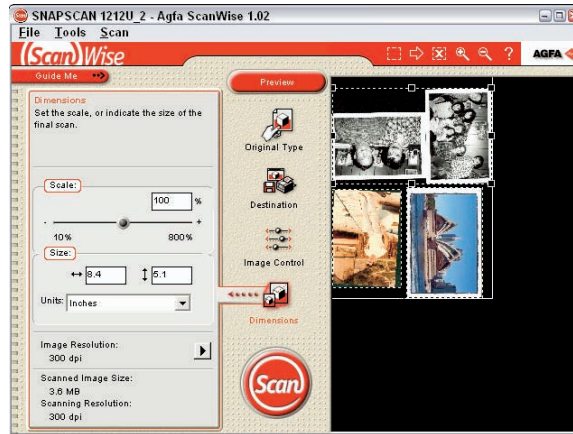
When the Preferences dialog box sees your scanner, you know that the connection is properly set up and you're ready to scan. Here's how to complete your scan:

1. **To open the scanner software from within Elements, choose File⇨Get Photos⇨From Scanner.**

You must be in the Organizer window to access this menu command.

Elements may churn a bit, but eventually your scanner software appears atop the Organizer window, as you can see in Figure 4-5. The window is the scanner software provided by your scanner manufacturer. (Your

window looks different than Figure 4-5 unless you use the same scanner we use.) Regardless of which software you use, you should have similar options for creating a preview; selecting resolution, color mode, and image size; scaling; and other options.



**Figure 4-5:** When you scan from within Elements, your scanner software loads on top of the Elements workspace.

2. **Adjust the options according to your output requirements and the recommendations made by your scanner manufacturer.**
3. **When everything is ready to go, click the Scan button.**

The final image drops into an Elements Image window.

### *Scanning many photos at a time*

If you have several photos to scan, you can lay them out on the scanner platen and perform a single scan to acquire all images in one pass. Arrange the photos to scan on the glass and set up all the options in the scanner window for your intended output. When you scan multiple images, they form a single scan, as you can see in Figure 4-6.



**Figure 4-6:** You can scan multiple images with one pass.

After you scan multiple images, Elements makes it easy for you to separate each image into its own Image window, where you can save the images as separate files. Choose Image⇨Divide Scanned Photos to make Elements magically open each image in a separate window while your original scan remains intact. The images are neatly tucked away in the Photo Bin, where you can select them for editing, as shown in Figure 4-7.



**Figure 4-7:** After you choose Image⇨Divide Scanned Photos, the scan is split into separate Image windows.

## Getting Files from Storage Media

When you acquire images in Elements from media sources, such as CD-ROMs, DVDs, external hard drives, and your internal hard drive, the process is very similar to opening files from digital cameras, which we explain in the section “Grabbing Images from Your Camera,” earlier in this chapter. Insert a CD or DVD into the CD/DVD drive, and the Windows AutoPlay Wizard opens just like when you insert a media cartridge or connect a cable from your camera to your computer.

Likewise, you can also open these files in the Organizer. Just cancel out of the wizard and follow these steps:

1. **Open the Organizer window from the Welcome screen or click Photo Browser from one of the editing modes.**
2. **When the Organizer window opens, choose File⇨Get Photos⇨From Files and Folders.**

Alternatively, you can choose File⇨Open or press Ctrl/⌘+O. The Open dialog box opens.

3. **Open the source drive from the listed drives.**

You see the photos stored on the media.

4. **Select images and click Get Photos (from the Organizer) or Open (from one of the editing modes) to open the files in the Organizer or an editor.**

Now, you can edit the photos in Elements or save them to your hard drive.

## Using Online Services

Online printing and sharing services require you to set up an account with a service. You can access services provided by Adobe, including the new Photoshop.com service, Kodak, and other sources by clicking the Share tab above the Panels Bin in the Organizer and clicking either Order Prints or Online Album. To use a service, you begin by setting up an account, as we explain in Chapter 2.

You can create digital photo albums from your images and share them with friends, family, and coworkers. To initiate a sharing service, you send an e-mail invitation to others. Each member of your sharing group needs to set up an account individually. After everyone has an account, you and your friends can then order prints that are mailed from the online service center. All the kinds of prints you might order from a local superstore or photo lab are available from online services, including specialty items, such as calendars.

After setting up an account and choosing a service, you handle sharing services by using the Share panels, as we explain in Chapter 16.

## Phoning In Your Images

If you've used a previous version of Elements, you may remember that those versions offered a menu command for acquiring images from cell phones. Elements 7 doesn't provide this menu command. If you want to add images to the Organizer or open images in one of the editing modes, you need to copy files via a USB or Bluetooth connection.

After copying files to your hard drive, in Elements, choose File⇨Get Photos and Video⇨From Files and Folders or press Ctrl/⌘+G. Locate the folder into which you copied the files and add them to your Organizer or open them in one of the editing modes.

## Creating Images from Scratch

You may want to start from scratch by creating a new document in Elements. New, blank pages have a number of uses. You can mix and merge images in a new document, as we explain in Chapter 8; create a canvas where you can draw and paint, as we explain in Chapter 12; or use the New dialog box to get some feedback on file sizes, dimensions, and resolution.

You can create new, blank documents by using one of several options. On the Welcome screen, which appears when you first launch Elements, click Edit to launch the Full Edit mode. Choose File⇨New Blank File to open the New dialog box, in which you choose the document size, resolution, and other attributes. Likewise, you can create new files while working in either Quick Edit mode or in the Organizer.

Follow these steps to create a new document while working in any editing mode:

### 1. Open Elements and select an editing mode.

Click Edit in the Welcome screen.

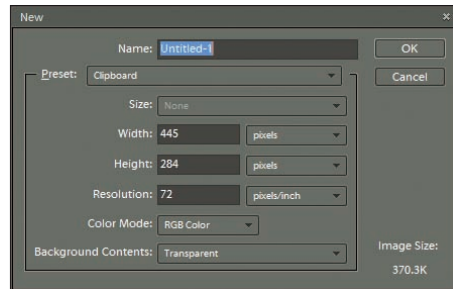
### 2. Choose File⇨New⇨Blank File in any workspace or press Ctrl/⌘+N.

Either way, the New dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 4-8.

### 3. Select the attributes for the new file.

You have several options from which to choose:

- **Name:** Type a name for your file.
- **Presets:** From the drop-down menu, you can select from a number of different sizes.
- **Size:** You can select a preset size from a long drop-down menu. This is optional because you can change the file attributes in the other text boxes and drop-down menus.



**Figure 4-8:** Regardless of the method used to create a new, blank document, the New dialog box opens.

- *Dimensions (Width/Height)*: Values in the Width and Height text boxes are independent. Either box can be edited without affecting the other. Adjacent to the values in the Width and Height text boxes, you find drop-down menus that offer many different options for units of measure, such as the default units of pixels followed by inches, centimeters (cm), millimeters (mm), points, picas, and columns.
- *Resolution*: Resolution here is similar to editing the resolution value in the Image Size dialog box when the Resample check box is selected. The resolution is an independent value and isn't linked to the dimensions. If you want to know how resolution changes dimensions without resampling, create a new, blank file at the known values and click OK. Then, choose Image⇒Resize⇒Image Size and change the values in the Image Size dialog box, which we discuss in Chapter 3.
- *Color Mode*: Your choices are Bitmap, Grayscale, and RGB. (See Chapter 3 for more information about color modes.)
- *Background Contents*: You have three choices: White, Background Color, and Transparent. The selection you make results in the color of the blank image. If you choose Background Color, the current background color assigned on the Tools panel is applied to the background. See Chapter 12 for information on changing background color. If you choose Transparent, the image is created as a layer, and the layer name changes to Layer 0, as we explain in Chapter 8.
- *Image Size*: This value dynamically changes when you change the Width, Height, and Resolution values. The reported value is how much file size is required to save the uncompressed file.

#### 4. Click OK after setting the file attributes to create the new document.

In addition to creating new, blank files, the New dialog box can be a helpful source of information for all your work in Elements. Suppose that you want to know how many images you can copy to a 128MB USB storage device or how large your digital camera files will print with a 150 ppi resolution. All you have to do is press **Ctrl/⌘+N** to open the New dialog box, plug in the values, and read the Image Size number or examine the file dimensions. If your files will be converted to grayscale, choose Grayscale from the Color Mode drop-down menu and check the Image Size number to see how much your file size is reduced. Because this number is *dynamic*, it changes with each change you make to the file attributes.

Another means for creating new documents was introduced in Photoshop Elements 5. Rather than create a new, blank file, you can add pages to an existing file in the form of a project. Just follow these steps:

1. **Open an image in Full Edit mode.**
2. **Open the Project Bin by dragging the separator bar up or clicking the Photo Bin icon in the lower-left corner of the Elements window.**



**3. Right-click the photo thumbnail in the Project Bin.**

The context menu, as shown in Figure 4-9, appears.

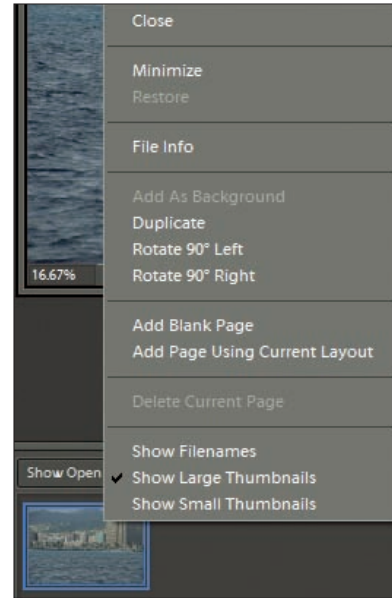
**4. Choose either Add Blank Page (for adding a new, blank page) or Add Page Using Current Layout (to duplicate the current photo as a new page).**

**5. Save the file by choosing File⇨Save As and selecting Photoshop Multiple Project as your file format.**

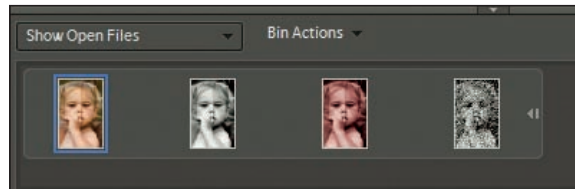
Note that the default format in the Save As dialog box is Photo Project Format (\*.PSE).

All the pages you add to a project are saved as separate files in a folder created automatically by Elements. When you open any one of the images, it appears separately in the Project Bin. To open an image in the stack, click the image you want to open in the Project Bin. Clicking an image in the Project Bin opens that image in the Image Window.

In Figure 4-10, you can see thumbnails of a project where the original RGB image appears on the left, followed by a grayscale image, a sepia-tone image, and a bitmap image — all contained in the same photo project.



**Figure 4-9:** Right-click and then choose an option for adding a page to the photo selected in the Project Bin.



**Figure 4-10:** Click one of the thumbnails in the Project Bin to open the respective photo in the Image window.

## *A Basic Primer on Camera Raw*

We include the elaborate description of Camera Raw in the following sections, after sharing with you all the other options you have for getting images in Elements. We recognize that you may not have a digital camera



capable of capturing Camera Raw images, so this information may not be of much interest to you now.

If you don't have a camera capable of capturing Camera Raw images, you might want to look over the following sections to understand how this file format can benefit you. If you purchase a camera equipped with Camera Raw support, you'll have some understanding of the advantages of using this format.

## *Understanding Camera Raw*

Camera Raw images enable you to post-process your pictures. When you take a picture with a digital camera in Camera Raw format, the camera's sensor records as much information as it can. When you open a Camera Raw file in Elements, you decide what part of that data is opened as a new image.

Suppose that your camera is set for exposure in tungsten lighting, which is used with tungsten flash photography in a studio. If you take this camera outside in daylight and shoot an image, all your images appear with a blue cast because tungsten lighting requires a cooler temperature than daylight.

If you acquire images that are saved in JPEG format, you need to do a lot of color correction after the image opens in Elements. If you shoot the image in Camera Raw format, you just process the image with a warmer temperature (consistent with conditions when the shot was taken), and your color correction in Elements is a fraction of what it is to fix a JPEG image.

Post-processing Camera Raw images requires a plug-in that's installed with Photoshop Elements. When you open a Camera Raw image, the Camera Raw plug-in takes over and provides you with a huge set of options for post-processing the image before you open it in one of the Elements editors.



Each camera developer uses a different flavor of Camera Raw, and some developers use different Raw formats between different models in their product line. Although Adobe tries to keep up with all the various Raw formats, you may find a camera using a format not supported by the Raw plug-in. Be sure to check updates online for Photoshop Elements. As new developments occur, Adobe makes an effort to update plug-ins to support newer formats.

## *Acquiring Camera Raw images*

If you read through the first part of this chapter, you know how to acquire images from your camera and copy them to your hard drive. We don't bother going through those steps again; we just assume that you have some Camera Raw images on your hard drive. That's where you want them, anyway. Opening files from your hard drive is much faster than working off media cards.

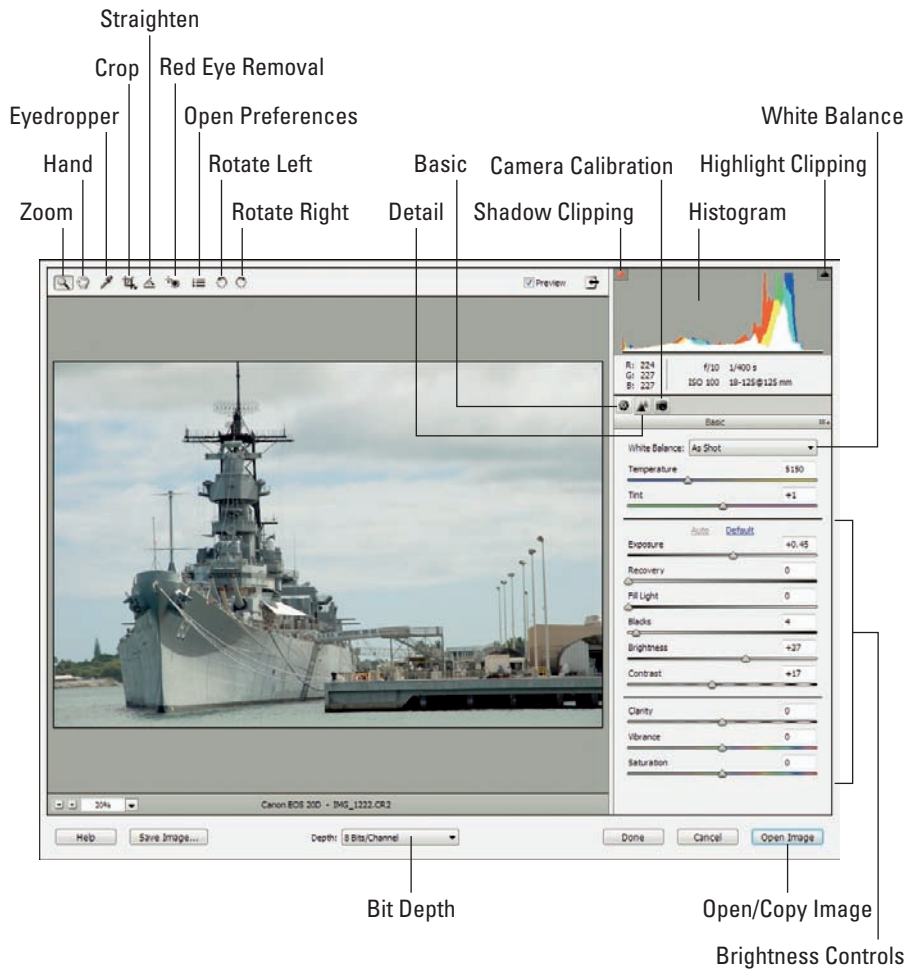
To open a Camera Raw image, follow these steps:

**1. Open the image by pressing Ctrl/⌘+O and selecting it in the Open dialog box.**

If you want to select several images in a row, click the first image, hold down the Shift key, and then click the last image. If you want to select several nonadjacent images, Ctrl/⌘-click each image.

**2. Click Open in the Open dialog box.**

If you're selecting multiple images, only one image appears in the Camera Raw dialog box. When you click Open, the next image opens in the Camera Raw dialog box, as shown in Figure 4-11.



**Figure 4-11:** Open a Camera Raw image, and the image opens in the Camera Raw plug-in window.

As you can see in Figure 4-11, you can use a vast number of options to post-process your image before you drop it into Elements. This window is like a digital darkroom, where you can process the film and see what you're doing to the image before you accept the changes.

### 3. Choose from the options to post-process your images.

If you have your monitor properly calibrated, as we explain in Chapter 2, all the adjustments you make for Camera Raw format are dynamically updated in the image preview. Don't be shy. Poke around and adjust settings to see the results in the preview area. The more you play with the settings, the more you find out how to get the best out of Camera Raw.

A large number of settings are in the Camera Raw window, as the following list describes; mark this section to refer to when you work with Camera Raw images:

✔ **Tools:** Nine tools appear in the window:

- *Zoom:* Zooms in and out of the image preview.
- *Hand:* Moves the image around, like it does in the Elements image window.
- *Eyedropper:* Samples color in the image. We cover using the Elements Eyedropper tools in Chapter 12, and that information also applies to using the Eyedropper in the Camera Raw window.
- *Crop tool:* Draw a marquee with the Crop tool and make your color and brightness adjustments. The adjustments are applied only to the area defined by the Crop tool. When you click Open Image, the photo opens cropped to the area you marked with the Crop tool.
- *Straighten tool:* The Straighten tool enables you to draw a horizontal axis to straighten a crooked photo.
- *Red Eye Removal:* Click the Red Eye Removal tool to remove red-eye caused by flash lighting.
- *Open Preferences dialog box (Ctrl/⌘+K):* Click this tool to open the Camera Raw Preferences dialog box, where you can make some choices for saving image settings, change default image settings, and use the Adobe Digital Negative (DNG) format.
- *Rotate Left:* This tool appears first to rotate counterclockwise.
- *Rotate Right:* The last tool you see below the title bar is used to rotate clockwise.

The last two rotation tools are self-explanatory.

✔ **Preview:** Check the box to show dynamic previews of your edits.

**✔ Shadow/Highlight Clipping:**

The Shadow and Highlight buttons above the histogram denoted by up-pointing arrows show clipping in the *shadows* (dark areas of the image) and *highlights* (light areas of the image). *Clipping* means that, in a certain area, some data and, ultimately, some detail have been lost in an image. Think of clipping as something that you don't want to appear in your pictures. When you make adjustments with these two check boxes selected, shadow clipping is shown in blue and highlight clipping is shown in red in the image preview. Take a look at Figure 4-12, in which we exaggerate clipping to show how the clipping preview appears.



**Figure 4-12:** Shadow clipping appears in red, and highlight clipping appears in blue.

✔ **RGB values:** These values appear below the histogram. When you first open an image, you don't see any values in the RGB area. Click the Zoom tool, the Hand tool, or the Eyedropper tool and move the cursor over the image preview. When you move any of these tools around the image, the RGB values corresponding to the point below the cursor are reported in this area.

✔ **Histogram:** This graph displays all three channels (red, green, and blue) in an image simultaneously. The histogram changes when you change other options in the Camera Raw window.

The histogram graphs how pixels in an image are distributed. The distribution includes the number of pixels at each color-intensity level (one of the 256 levels you can find out about in Chapter 3).

If images have pixels concentrated in the shadows, you see the histogram skewed to the left. Conversely, images with pixels concentrated in the highlights reveal a histogram skewed to the right.

When you begin to understand histograms better, you can develop your skill to the point where a quick glance at the histogram provides you with a clue to what adjustments you need to make to improve images.

✔ **Detail icons:** The three icons change the pane below the histogram. The Basic choices are shown in Figure 4-11. Click the Detail icon to apply sharpening and noise reduction, as shown in Figure 4-13, or click the Camera Calibration icon to select a camera profile.

✔ **Settings (pop-up menu):** This pop-up menu opens when you click the small icon on the far right of the Basic tab. From this menu, you have choices for applying settings to the open image. If you change any setting, the menu option changes to *Custom*. If you previously made setting

choices on a Camera Raw image and want to return to the shot as it was taken by the camera, open the image and select Camera Raw Defaults.

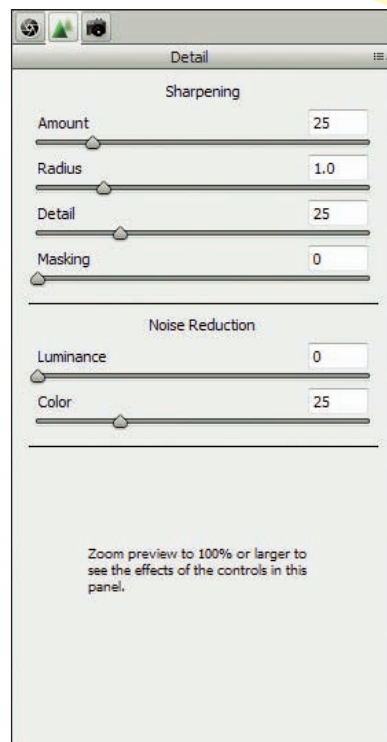
Another option is Previous Conversion. This selection is handy if you have a collection of images that all require the same settings. After adjusting the first image, open additional images and select Previous Conversion. The Camera Raw plug-in applies the last settings you made to a Camera Raw image to the currently open file.

Sharpening sharpens images. You can choose to sharpen images in the Camera Raw window or in Elements. Try to avoid sharpening here and use the sharpening tools in Elements, as we explain in Chapter 9.

Noise Reduction includes options for adjusting the luminance and color. You've probably seen images with a lot of noise. In extreme cases, they look like the pictures were printed on sandpaper. Noise in an image is okay if that's an effect you intentionally apply to a picture. However, if you want a smooth-looking image, you have to eliminate any noise introduced by the camera. Luminance Smoothing reduces grayscale noise. The next setting is Color Noise Reduction, which is used to reduce color noise.

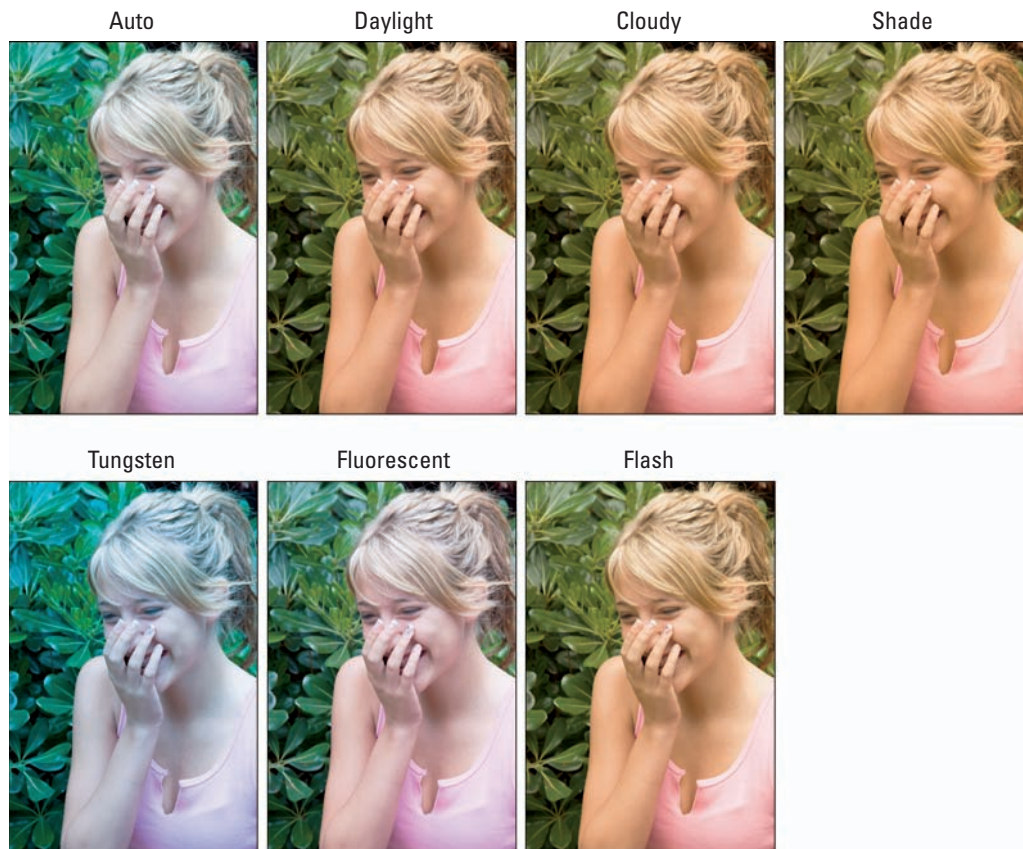
- **White Balance:** White Balance settings (available in the Basic tab — the far-left icon below the histogram, as shown in Figure 4-11) are used to adjust the color balance of an image to reflect the lighting conditions under which the shot was originally taken. Think of the sensor in a digital camera capable of capturing the entire range of white balance the sensor can see. You make a choice not necessarily for what you see, but rather for the white balance for the shot you took. Therefore, if your camera is set for taking pictures under one set of lighting conditions, then you move to another set of lighting conditions and forget to change the settings, you can let the Camera Raw plug-in make a correction for the white balance because the sensor picked up the entire range, and the necessary data is contained in the file.

In Figure 4-14, you can see a picture taken with the camera set for tungsten lighting, but the shot was taken outdoors in daylight. By changing the White Balance in the Camera Raw dialog box, you can see how the settings affect the image color.



**Figure 4-13:** Click the triangle icon below the histogram to open the Detail tab, which includes options for sharpness and noise reduction.





**Figure 4-14:** Changing White Balance can dramatically change the image color.

- ✓ **Temperature:** If one of the preset White Balance options doesn't quite do the job, you can move the Temperature slider or edit the text box to settle on values between one White Balance choice and another. Use this item to fine-tune the White Balance.
- ✓ **Tint:** Tint is another fine-tuning adjustment affected by White Balance. This slider and text box are used to correct any green or magenta tints that might appear in a photo.
- ✓ **Brightness adjustments:** Several adjustment sliders and text boxes help you control the image brightness and tonal range. Notice the Exposure setting. This item lets you correct photos taken at the wrong exposure. In analog darkrooms, you might ask technicians to push or pull film during processing, which results in longer and shorter processing times.

Changing exposure times compensates for under- and overexposing film. A nice advantage of using Camera Raw is that you can change the exposure for one image and then later open the original raw image and change to a different exposure value. Analog film can't be reprocessed, but with Camera Raw, you can reprocess over and over again.

Other options for the brightness and tonal controls are similar to the choices you have in the Elements Full Edit mode. For more information on these adjustments, see Chapter 10.

- ✔ **Cancel/Reset:** When you open the Camera Raw window, the button you see by default is Cancel. Press the Alt key, and the button changes to Reset. If you want to scrub all the settings you made and start over, press Alt and click Reset.
- ✔ **Open Image/Open Copy:** This single button has two different purposes:
  - *Open Image:* This button is the default. Click Open after you choose all your settings to process the photo and open it in Elements.
  - *Open Copy:* Press the Alt key, and the button changes to Open Copy. Click Open Copy to open a copy of the raw image.
- ✔ **Done:** Clicking Done doesn't open the image in Full Edit mode. Click Done after making changes to the settings, and the new settings become the new defaults for your Raw image. You can clear the defaults by opening the pop-up menu and selecting Camera Raw Defaults.
- ✔ **Zoom:** In this drop-down menu, you can choose from several zoom presets. You can also edit the text box, click the minus (–) button to zoom out, or click the plus (+) button to zoom in. Using any option zooms the image preview.
- ✔ **Help:** Clicking this button opens a Help document to assist you in understanding more about Camera Raw.
- ✔ **Save Image:** Click the Save Image button to open the Save Options dialog box, where you can rename the image to save a copy and make choices for saving in Adobe's DNG format.
- ✔ **Depth:** If your camera is capable of shooting higher bit depths, they're listed here. If you want to convert to 8-bit images for printing, you can select the option from the drop-down menu.

All we can hope to provide in this book is a simple cursory view for using Camera Raw. Several entire books have been written exclusively covering the Camera Raw format and how to open files in the Camera Raw plug-in window. For a more detailed look at using Camera Raw, see *Color Management for Digital Photographers For Dummies*, by Ted Padova and Don Mason (Wiley).





# Viewing and Finding Your Images

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Viewing photos in the Organizer
- ▶ Navigating the Image window
- ▶ Sorting photos
- ▶ Searching for photos

**T**he *Organizer* is a powerful tool that helps you locate files and keeps your photos arranged and organized. You can easily access the Organizer by clicking the Organizer button on the menu bar while you're in one of the editing modes. Or, when you open the Welcome screen, click the Organize button.

In this chapter, you can discover how to view and organize your pictures in the Organizer and the Image window, and how the many options help speed up your work in Photoshop Elements.

## *The Many Faces of the Organizer*

The default Organizer view is like a slide sorter, and this view is one you're likely to use in all your Elements work sessions. The Organizer provides an efficient means to access the photos you want to open in one of the editors. Just double-click a photo in the Organizer, and you see the image zoom in size to fill an Organizer window. You can carefully examine the photo to be certain that it's the one you want and then just select which editor you want to use from the Editor drop-down list on the menu bar, from the context menu you open on the image in the Organizer window, or by clicking the Fix button in the Panels Bin.

In addition to the default view in the Organizer, you have some other opportunities for examining your pictures. You can view pictures in a slide show, or you can view pictures side by side to compare them.



## Adding files to the default Organizer view

Before you explore alternative viewing options in the Organizer, take a look at how you add photos to the thumbnail images you see in the Organizer window.

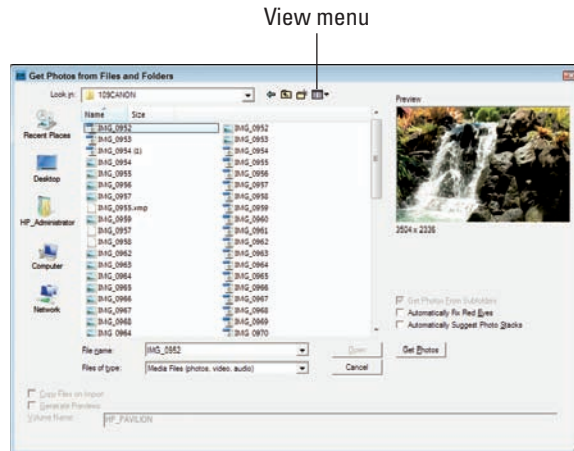
After copying the photos to your hard drive, as we explain in Chapter 4, here's how you add those files to an existing group of images in the Organizer:

- 1. View the photos that you want to add to the Organizer window.**

Be certain that you have photos in the Organizer window.

- 2. In the Organizer, choose File → Get Photos → From Files and Folders.**

The Get Photos from Files and Folders dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 5-1.



**Figure 5-1:** The Get Photos from Files and Folders dialog box.

- 3. From the View menu (shown in Figure 5-1), choose Large icons (or Medium icons).**

In Large icon (or Medium icon) view, thumbnail images of most of your files appear in a scrollable list large enough to see some detail. (**Note:** You might not see Camera Raw files and some files saved in different formats.) This view makes it easy to locate the files you want to add to the Organizer. For example, if you want to load only Camera Raw images, you can easily see them represented as icons, rather than the image previews.

**4. Select files to add to the Organizer window.**

Click a thumbnail and use either the Shift key or the Ctrl/⌘ key to select additional photos. When you hold down Shift and click, all photos between the first thumbnail and the thumbnail you Shift-click are selected. When you Ctrl/⌘-click, you can select additional noncontiguous photos.

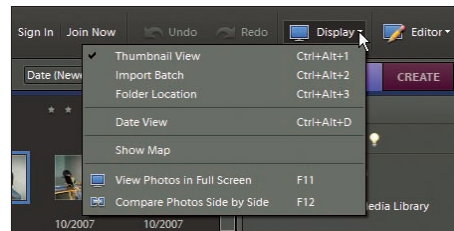
**5. Click Get Photos to add the selected photos to the Organizer window.****6. Add the new photos to the Organizer window you originally opened by clicking the Back button on the Shortcuts bar.**

The photos you add to the Organizer may appear out of order when you're viewing them in the Organizer. Depending on the sort order, which we explain in the section "Sorting Your Photos," later in this chapter, the additional photos you added to the Organizer can appear before or after, or integrated within, the original photos. Use the scroll bar in the Organizer to view the added photos.

## Changing the Organizer display

When you open the Organizer, the default view is a Thumbnail display. Your photos, videos, projects, audio files, and so on are shown with a mini image or icon that can be adjusted to different sizes. In the Shortcuts bar, a slider can be moved left to create smaller thumbnail views or right to create larger thumbnail views in the Organizer window.

The Thumbnail display is one of many options for viewing photos and other files in the Organizer. A quick glance at the Display dropdown menu shows some alternate views available to you, as shown in Figure 5-2.



**Figure 5-2:** Click Display in the menu bar to see the options for alternate views in the Organizer.

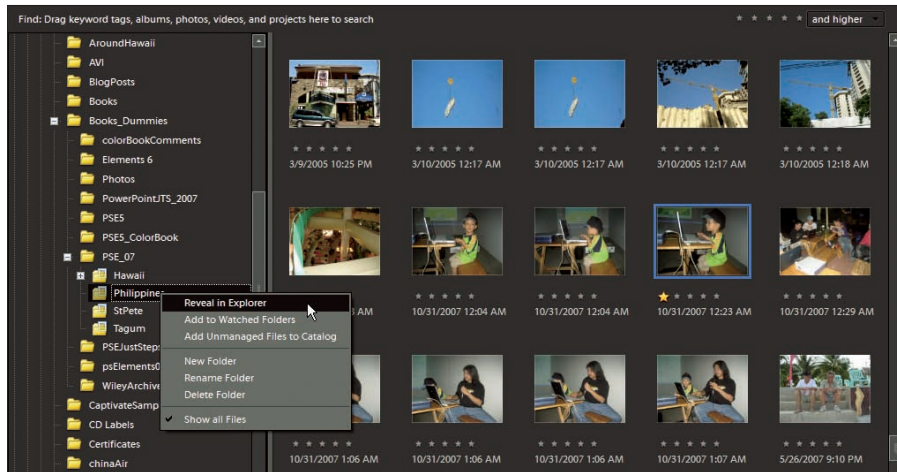
### Import Batch view

Below the default option for Thumbnail views, you find Import Batch. Open the Display menu and then select Import Batch, or press Ctrl/⌘+Alt+2 on your keyboard. The display in the Organizer keeps the view set to thumbnails, but the order of your files changes to a date order according to the date you imported files with the Get Photos and Videos command, which we discuss in Chapter 4. This view can be helpful if you want to organize images according to the batch you imported on a given day.

### Folder Location View

What's nifty about the Folder Location display is that you can peruse your hard drive for all files and folders while you remain in the Organizer window. Just select Folder Location from the Display menu or press **Ctrl/⌘+Alt+3** to make an Explorer sidebar show you your hard drive(s), network locations, and offline media.

Choose Folder Location to make the view change to the display shown in Figure 5-3. When you want to poke around a folder, right-click and select Reveal in Explorer from the context menu. A Windows Explorer window opens on top of the Organizer window and shows you all the files contained in that folder.



**Figure 5-3:** Choose Folder Location from the Display menu and then right-click to open a context menu.

When you find an image you want to edit, right-click and choose **Open With** → **Adobe Photoshop Elements 7.0 (Editor)**. The image then opens in Full Edit mode in Elements.



When you want more of the screen window dedicated to seeing the files in the Organizer, hide the Panels Bin by clicking the separator bar. One click on the tiny right-pointing arrow on the separator bar hides the panel. Click the arrow on a collapsed panel to reopen that panel. In Figure 5-3, you see the Organizer window with the Panels Bin hidden, thereby displaying more thumbnail images in the Organizer window.

### Date view

Choose Date View ( Ctrl/⌘+Alt+D) from the Display menu to change your Organizer window to a calendar showing you the dates your images were shot. The date information is derived from metadata imported with your images that were recorded by your camera. (For more information on metadata, see “Searching metadata,” later in this chapter.)

If you shoot many pictures on a given date, the images are stacked on the calendar for that date. In the Project Bin, you find arrows that are used to scroll the stacked images left or right, and a number appears in the lower-left corner of the image thumbnail view. In Figure 5-4, the numbers appear as 5 of 6; on April 13, 2008 (the date at the top of the thumbnail), six photos were taken, and the current view is the fifth photo in the stacked order.



**Figure 5-4:** The Project Bin shows a thumbnail view of a photo with scroll arrows and numbers.

To return to the Organizer thumbnail display, click the binoculars icon or press Ctrl/⌘+Alt+O (the letter O, not zero).

### Show Map

How would you like to see a visual display of where your photos were taken geographically? Photoshop Elements 7 provides you the answer with Yahoo! Maps and an option for placing your photos on a world map.

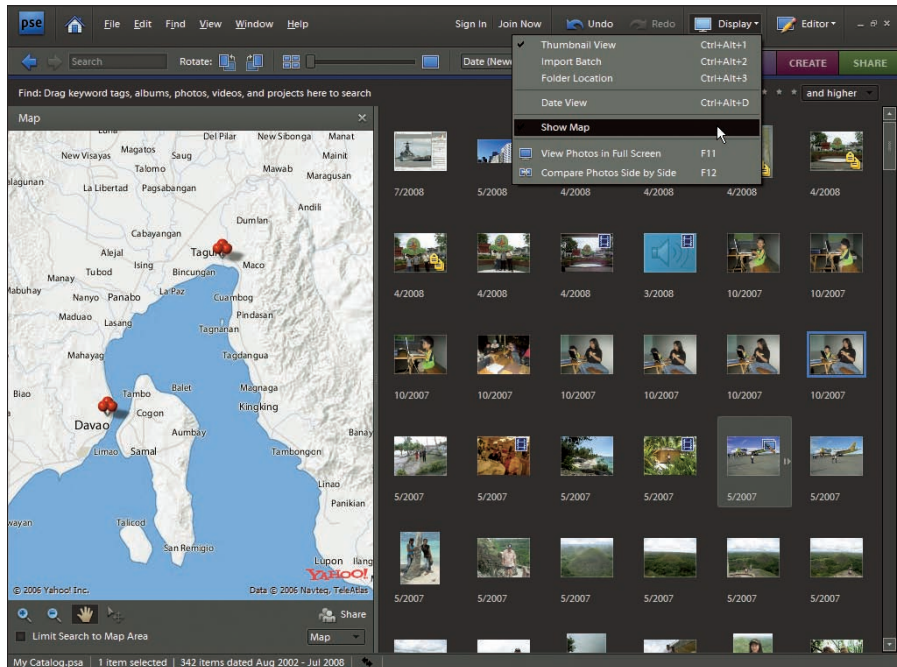
To open Yahoo! Maps in Elements, open the Display menu in the Shortcuts bar and choose Show Maps. The Map panel on the left side of the Organizer window opens, as shown in Figure 5-5.

You must have an Internet connection active on your computer to work with Yahoo! Maps.

To map the location of photos shown in the Organizer to Yahoo! Maps, you can choose from a couple different options:



- ✓ **Select photos in the Organizer and drag them to a map location on the map in the Map panel.**
- ✓ **Select photos in the Organizer and right-click one of the selected photos.** From the menu options, choose Place on Map. In the dialog box that opens, type a city name and click the Find button. If more than one city is reported in the dialog box, click the city name you want to use for the mapped photos.



**Figure 5-5:** Choose Show Map from the Display menu to open Yahoo! Maps.

To move around the map, place the cursor inside the Yahoo! Map panel and drag the map with the Hand tool within the panel window. If you go too far left, don't worry; the Asian, Indian, and Eastern European countries are found by dragging right across the Atlantic and eastward. Dragging left stops somewhere around the International Date Line; so, if you live in Singapore, you need to keep dragging right to find your country.

Zooming in the Map panel is handled by the tools you see at the bottom of the map. Use the Zoom In tool to find cities and road maps in a detailed view. Use the Zoom Out tool after you find the location you want to use.

After you add photos to the map, you can view the images by clicking the red pin placed on the map each time that you add photos to a location. Click the red pin to open a pop-up window that shows a thumbnail view of the current photo with smaller photos in a slide organizer below the primary image thumbnail, as shown in Figure 5-6. Click the left and right arrows in the pop-up window to scroll the slides. Clicking the current image thumbnail in the pop-up window opens the image in a slide show view. To find out more about slide show views, see the following section.

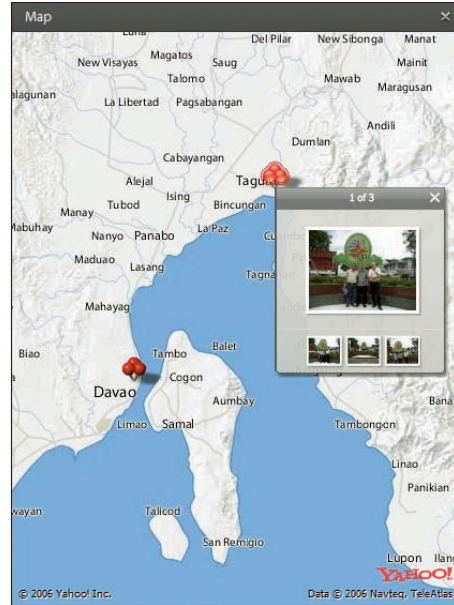


In the Map panel, you can choose from several display options in the drop-down menu on the bottom-right side of the panel. Choose from the default Map, a Hybrid map, or Satellite map. Choose Satellite to locate Uncle Jeremy's house, where the last family reunion took place and you shot all those wonderful pictures.

To close the Map panel, return to the Display menu and choose Show Map again. The panel collapses, and you're back to the standard Organizer view.



When you view panels in Elements, drag the vertical separator bar on a panel to widen the panel or reduce the panel size. Look for the arrow-head on the vertical bar separating the Organizer window from a panel, and click and drag left or right to change panel sizes.



**Figure 5-6:** Click a red pin to open a pop-up window that shows the images placed on the map.

## Viewing photos in a slide show (Full Screen view)

Are you ready for some exciting viewing in Photoshop Elements? To take an alternative view of your Organizer files, you can see your pictures in a self-running slide show (in Full Screen view), complete with transition effects and background music. Full Screen view takes you to a slide show view. For the purposes of clarity, think of Full Screen view and viewing a slide show as the same thing. Full-screen viewing temporarily hides the Elements tools and menus, and gives you the most viewing area on your monitor to see your pictures.



Viewing files in slide show mode can be helpful for quickly previewing the files you want to edit for all kinds of output, as well as for previewing photos that you might use for an exported slide show, which we explain in Chapter 15.

### Setting up your images for viewing

To set up your slide show and/or enter Full Screen view, follow these steps:

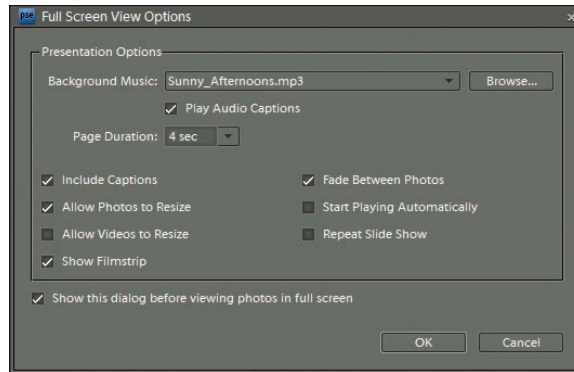
1. **Open the Organizer.**

**2. Select images that you want to see in a slide show or use all the images in the Organizer for your slide show.**

If no images are selected when you enter Full Screen view, all photos in the Organizer window are shown in Full Screen view.

**3. Choose Display⇨View Photos in Full Screen (or press F11 on your keyboard).**

The Full Screen View Options dialog box, shown in Figure 5-7, opens.



**Figure 5-7:** Choose Display⇨View Photos in Full Screen to open the Full Screen View Options dialog box, where full-screen viewing options are selected.

**4. Choose the options for your slide show in the dialog box.**

The Full Screen View Options dialog box offers a number of choices for viewing a slide show in Full Screen view. Table 5-1 explains each option.

**5. After you determine the attributes for full-screen viewing, click OK.**

You enter full-screen mode. For a moment, the Full Screen View toolbar appears at the top of the window. This toolbar hides automatically after a few seconds. We explain in Table 5-1 how Full Screen view appears if you select the Show Filmstrip check box, as shown in Figure 5-8.



To exit Full Screen view and return to the Organizer, press the Esc (Escape) key on your keyboard.





**Figure 5-8:** When Show Filmstrip is selected, the Full Screen view shows thumbnail images of the files selected for viewing on the right side of the Image window.

**Table 5-1 Using the Full Screen View Options Dialog Box**

<i>Option</i>	<i>What It Does</i>
Background Music	You can select a preinstalled sound file from the drop-down list or click the Browse button to locate sound files stored on your computer. The sound file formats you can use with Elements are .mp3, .wav, and .wma. You can add sound files to the Organizer by choosing File→Get Photos→From Files and Folders and selecting sound files.
Play Audio Captions	You can add audio captions to images. Select this check box to play these captions.
Page Duration	You can specify the duration of each slide before it advances to the next slide. The text box accepts durations ranging from 1 to 3600 seconds.
Include Captions	You can add text captions to images, as we explain in Chapter 6. If you want to see the text captions, select this check box.
Allow Photos to Resize	Images appear at full-screen size when you select this check box. Be certain that the resolution is sufficient before resizing the images to fit the screen. Image resolution is optimal at 72 ppi (pixels per inch) at 100-percent size, as we point out in Chapter 3.

(continued)

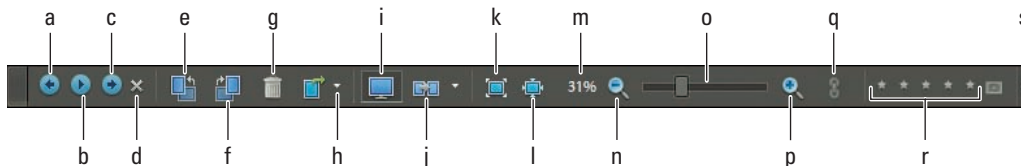
**Table 5-1** (continued)

<i>Option</i>	<i>What It Does</i>
Allow Videos to Resize	Any video clips you add to the Organizer can be played in the slide show. If you select this check box, the video frames are sized to full-screen size. You also need to be certain that the video supports a resolution sufficient to clearly see the video frames. When in doubt, test a movie clip in Full Screen view to see whether the quality is satisfactory.
Show Filmstrip	When this check box is selected and you open the files in Full Screen view, a filmstrip appears along the right side of the full-screen window. Click the thumbnails in the filmstrip to jump to the selected slide.
Fade between Photos	This option adds a fade transition between slides.
Start Playing Automatically	Select this check box to make the slide show move into play mode automatically. If you don't check the box, you must click a tool in Full Screen view to start the play manually.
Repeat Slide Show	Select this check box to create a continuous loop. You could use this option for a self-running kiosk.
Show This Dialog Before Viewing in Full Screen	If you want to dismiss the Full Screen View Options dialog box to keep it from appearing each time you enter Full Screen view, deselect this box. To bring back this dialog box whenever you enter Full Screen view, press <b>Ctrl/⌘+K</b> to open the General Preferences dialog box and click the Reset All Warning Dialogs button. If you want to keep the dialog box from opening but access it after entering Full Screen view, choose Full Screen View Options from the Action drop-down menu on the Full Screen toolbar. See the following section for details on using the toolbar.

### *Working with the toolbar*

While in Full Screen view, you can play the slide show and move back and forth between slides. These options and more are available to you on the toolbar that opens when you first enter full-screen viewing. After the toolbar disappears, you can bring it back by simply moving the mouse.

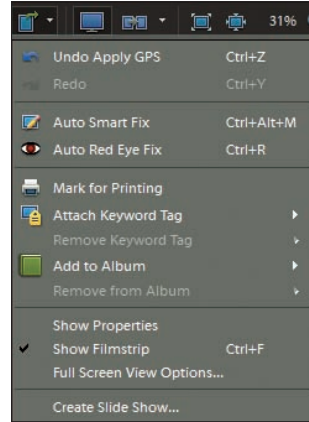
The toolbar, shown in Figure 5-9, contains tools for the following:



**Figure 5-9:** The Full Screen View toolbar.

- a **Previous Photo (left-arrow key):** Click this button to view the previous slide or press the shortcut left-arrow key.
- b **Play/Pause (spacebar):** Click this button to pause play. When play is paused, the icon changes, and you can click the new icon to resume play.
- c **Next Photo (right-arrow key):** Click this button to view the next slide or press the shortcut right-arrow key.
- d **Exit (Esc):** Click this button or press Esc to exit Full Screen view.
- e **Rotate 90 Degrees Left (Ctrl/⌘+left-arrow key):** Click this button to rotate the photo counterclockwise in the Image window and in the Organizer default window.
- f **Rotate 90 Degrees Right (Ctrl/⌘+right-arrow key):** This button works the same as the button in the preceding bullet, but rotates to the right (clockwise).
- g **Delete (Del):** Press this key to delete the photo in the Image window from the slide show and the Organizer.
- h **Action Menu:** The commands on this drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 5-10, provide options for editing images, printing, and organizing files. For more information on the editing options, see Chapter 9. For information on printing, see Chapter 14. For information on organizing, see Chapter 6.
- i **Full Screen View (F11):** When you enter Full Screen view, this tool is selected.
- j **Side by Side/Above and Below (F12):** From this drop-down menu, you can choose to show two slides horizontally or vertically. The selected slide in the filmstrip is compared to the next slide in the filmstrip. Additionally, you can click a slide and Ctrl/⌘-click to compare two selected slides. To return to the default view, click the Full Screen View tool.

- k **Fit in Window ( Ctrl/⌘+0)**: This tool zooms the view as large as needed to fill in the Image window.
- l **Actual Pixels ( Ctrl/⌘+Alt+0)**: Use this tool to see images at actual sizes.
- m **Current Zoom Percentage**: Shows you the zoom level of the image in the Image window. You can't edit this readout.
- n **Zoom Out ( Ctrl/⌘+-)**: Click this tool to zoom out.
- o **Specify zoom level**: Move the slider left to zoom out and right to zoom in.
- p **Zoom In ( Ctrl/⌘++)**: Click this tool to zoom in on the image.
- q **Sync Pan and Zoom in side-by-side view**:  
Panning and zooming are synchronized by default. When two slides are compared and appear side by side or one above the other, both images are sized together while you change the zoom level. Click the chain-link icon to desynchronize the view.
- r **Specify a favorites ranking for this photo**: Click one of the five stars to specify a favorites ranking.
- s **Show Only Navigation Controls**: You can collapse the toolbar to show only the first four tools (and this one). When the toolbar is collapsed, click the arrow again to expand to the default toolbar.



**Figure 5-10:** The Action drop-down menu.

## Moving around the Image Window

When you edit images in either Quick Edit or Full Edit mode, you continually interact with the Image window. Whether you're zooming in and out of a single window or viewing multiple windows, you need to work comfortably in this area for all your editing tasks. To help you move around the Image window, Elements provides a rich set of tools. If you become familiar with the many viewing options and keyboard shortcuts available in Elements, all your editing jobs will be much easier. The tools, menu commands, and panels we describe in the following sections are essential for just about everything you do in Elements.

### Zooming in and out of images

Zooming in and out of images is a task you perform routinely while editing images in the Image window and also when working in other windows, such as the Camera Raw window and the Full Screen View window. Zooming in is

necessary when you want to precisely edit a section of an image or examine detail in a small area. You then need to zoom out to see the edits as they compare to the entire image.

### *Zoom by clicking*

The Zoom tool appears on the Tools panel. To use the tool for zooming in and out, follow these steps to take a look at how it all works:

- 1. Click the Zoom tool on the Tools panel to select it (or simply press Z).**
- 2. Move the cursor, now loaded with the Zoom tool, to the Image window and click the place where you want to zoom.**

To zoom in more, click again; keep clicking until you zoom in far enough.

- 3. To zoom out of an image, keep the Zoom tool selected, hold down the Alt key, and click.**

The cursor changes to a magnifying glass tool with a minus (–) symbol when you hold down the Alt key.

### *Zoom to a selection*

Another way to change a view is to zoom to a target area in an image. Here's how:

- 1. Click the Zoom tool on the Tools panel.**
- 2. Drag a box around the area you want to zoom.**

A dashed rectangle marquee appears, as shown in Figure 5-11.

- 3. Move the rectangle marquee if you need to adjust the selection.**

Now, it's time to get fancy. If you have a marquee drawn with the Zoom tool and the size appears just right, but you want to move the rectangle, press the spacebar while you keep the mouse button pressed. You can drag the marquee rectangle anywhere in the image to zoom to the area defined by the rectangle boundary.

- 4. Release the mouse button.**

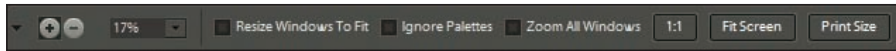
The view zooms to fit the space defined by the marquee rectangle.



**Figure 5-11:** Click the Zoom tool on the Tools panel and drag around an area you want to zoom.

### Using the Options bar

Above the Image window and below the Shortcuts bar, you find the Options bar. The Options bar is ever-changing, offering different options when you select different tools on the Tools panel. When you click the Zoom tool, the Options bar changes, as shown in Figure 5-12. You have many similar choices for zooming in and out of images and a few options unique to the Options bar:



**Figure 5-12:** Click the Zoom tool on the Tools panel to make the Options bar change to reflect choices for zooming in and out of images.

- ✓ **Zoom In/Zoom Out tools:** You can choose Zoom In or Zoom Out as separate tools to avoid using the Alt key to toggle between the two.
- ✓ **Zoom percentage:** This figure shows you the current zoom level as a percentage. You can edit the text by typing values between 5 and 3200.
- ✓ **Zoom slider:** Click the down-pointing arrow to open a slider bar. Drag the slider left to zoom out or right to zoom in.
- ✓ **Resize Windows to Fit:** Select this check box to resize the window along with the image zoom. Deselect the box to zoom in and out of an image while the Image window remains at a fixed size.
- ✓ **Ignore Palettes:** This check box is selected when you select the Resize Windows to Fit check box. Selecting this box ignores panels when you're using the Zoom tool, so you can zoom to an area covered by the panels. If you deselect the box, you can't zoom to an area beneath the Project Bin.
- ✓ **Zoom All Windows:** If you have multiple images open and select this check box, zooming with the Zoom tool zooms all open documents simultaneously.
- ✓ **1:1:** Zooms the current window to a 1-to-1 ratio, showing the zoom level at which the file will be printed.
- ✓ **Fit Screen:** Click this button to fit the image within the Image window.
- ✓ **Print Size:** Often, this option shows you the same size as 1:1, where the image is zoomed to the size of the print file.

### Viewing multiple documents

When you need to view two or more images at one time, choose **Window** ⇨ **Images** to open a submenu of viewing options used for viewing multiple files. The Window menu also provides a list of all your open documents. Here's a list of options you find on the submenu:

- ✓ **Maximize Mode:** In Maximize mode, you see only one Image window and lose the option for resizing the window by dragging the lower-right corner in or out. If you want to bring back the title bar and the resizing options, choose Window⇨Images⇨Maximize Mode again. Notice the Maximize Mode check box; click it to remove the check mark on the submenu and minimize the Image window.
- ✓ **Tile:** Tiling images reduces Image window sizes to a size that accommodates viewing all images in scrollable windows within the Elements workspace. Choose Window⇨Images⇨Tile when multiple images are open to get a view similar to the one shown to Figure 5-13.



**Figure 5-13:** Open several images in one of the editing modes and choose Window⇨Images⇨Tile to show all Image windows.

- ✓ **Cascade:** Choose Window⇨Images⇨Cascade to make the Image windows overlap each other in a cascading view.
- ✓ **Match Zoom:** Set the zoom level for one of several images open in Elements and choose Window⇨Images⇨Match Zoom. All open documents are zoomed to the same level as the foreground image.
- ✓ **Match Location:** If you zoom in to, for example, the upper-right corner and then select Match Location, all open images zoom to the same location in the respective photos.





✓ **Bring Image to Foreground:** When you open photos, the open documents are listed by name on the Window menu. The active document is the foreground image. If you want to edit another image, choose Window and select the image you want to edit. That image comes to the foreground as the active image.

Although you can use a menu command to bring images to the foreground and make them active, you can perform the same action by clicking an image thumbnail in the Project Bin.

## Using pan and zoom

When you zoom in on a document larger than the Image window can accommodate, scroll bars provide a means for moving the image inside the window. Moving the image around a window is *panning* the image.

You can also use the Hand tool to pan the image. Zoom in to an image and click the Hand tool. Click and drag the image around the window. If you want to zoom in or out while the Hand tool is selected, hold down the Ctrl/⌘ key, and the Hand tool temporarily changes to the Zoom In tool. Hold down Ctrl/⌘+Alt to temporarily change the Hand tool to the Zoom Out tool.

## Using the Navigator panel

The Navigator panel affords you several different options for both zooming and panning an image.

To open the Navigator panel, choose Window⇨Navigator. The Navigator panel, as shown in Figure 5-14, opens as a floating panel in the Elements workspace. (For more information on floating panels, see Chapter 1.)

While you select options for zooming on the Navigator panel, the image preview in the Panel window stays fixed to show you the entire image. When you zoom in and out inside the panel, the corresponding zoom is applied to the active document.



Either use the zoom tools on the panel or drag the slider left and right to zoom in and out. If you place the cursor inside the image preview thumbnail, you can drag a rectangle and zoom into the image.

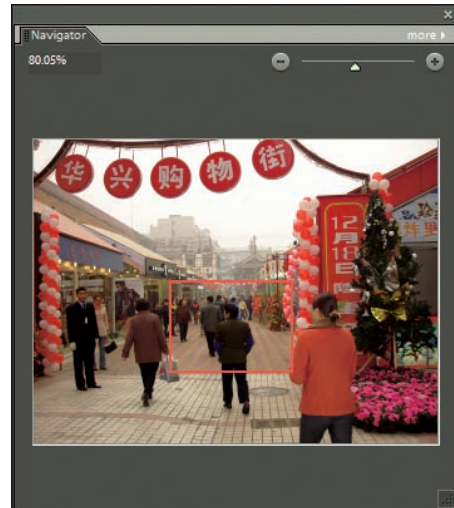


Figure 5-14: The Navigator panel.



Using the Navigator panel can be particularly helpful if you use two monitors. Just drag the Navigator panel to your second monitor, where you can change zoom levels without having the panel obscure the background image.

## Sorting Your Photos

With all the Photoshop Elements modes and workspaces, you need a consistent starting place to handle all your editing tasks. Think of the Organizer as Grand Central Station, and from this central location, you can take the Long Island Railroad to any destination you desire. In Elements terms, rather than head out to Port Washington, you travel to an editing mode. Rather than go to the Hamptons, you journey through all the creation areas. In short, the Organizer is the central depot on the Photoshop Elements map.

In addition to being a tool to navigate to other workspaces, the Organizer is a management tool you can use to organize, sort, search, and describe photos with identity information. In terms of sorting and organizing files, Elements provides many different options, and we cover them all in the following sections.

### Using sort commands

One quick way to sort images in the Organizer is to use the menu in the Shortcuts bar in the Organizer window for date sorting. Two options are available to you, as shown in Figure 5-15.



**Figure 5-15:** You can quickly sort files in date ascending or descending order.

The sorting options available to you from the menu are

- ✓ **Date (Newest First):** Select this option to view images according to the date you took the photos, beginning with the most recent date.
- ✓ **Date (Oldest First):** This option displays photos in chronological order, starting with the oldest file.

As we mention in the section “Changing the Organizer display,” earlier in this chapter, you can also view files according to the Import Batch date and Folder Locations. Under the Display menu you have options for

- ✓ **Import Batch:** You might import a batch of photos in one Photoshop Elements session and import another batch in the same session or in another session. When you select Import Batch, the images appear organized in groups, according to the date the batch was created.

- ✓ **Folder Location:** Click Folder Location to make an Explorer pane appear on the left side of the Organizer window. You can browse your hard drive for folder locations and select a folder containing images you imported into the Organizer.

### *Sorting media types*

Photos can also be sorted according to media type. Elements supports viewing photos, video files, audio files, projects, and Adobe PDF files. To select different media types, choose View⇨Media Types, and a submenu offers options for viewing the different media types. Select a menu item from the submenu to make all media types matching the menu command appear in the Organizer window.

## *Using Search Options*

The Organizer's Find menu is devoted entirely to searching photos. From the Find menu, you can locate photos in collections, catalogs, and the Organizer window according to a variety of different search criteria.

To use the commands on the Find menu, you need to have photos loaded in the Organizer window, or create collections or catalogs, which we explain in Chapter 6. The categories in the following sections can be searched in the Organizer.

### *Searching by date*

When you have a number of different files in an Organizer window from photos shot on different dates, you can narrow your search to find photos, and all other types of files supported by Elements, through a date search.

Be careful, though. The date is taken from the camera metadata; but if a date isn't available from the camera data, the date is taken from the file creation date. The creation date is not likely to be the date you shot the photo.

To search files by date, follow these steps:

- 1. Open files in the Organizer by choosing File⇨Get Photos and then choosing a submenu command for acquiring files.**

To open files stored on your hard drive, choose the From Files and Folders submenu command.

2. **Select a date range by choosing Find⇨Set Date Range.**

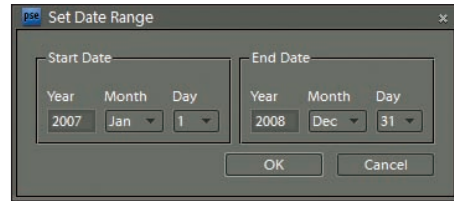
The Set Date Range dialog box, shown in Figure 5-16, opens.

3. **Specify the dates.**

Type a year in the Start Date Year text box. Select the month and day from the Month and Day drop-down lists. Repeat the same selections for the end date.

4. **Click OK.**

The thumbnails shown in the Organizer window include only files created within the specified date range.



**Figure 5-16:** Open the Set Date Range dialog box and specify the start and end dates.

## *Searching for untagged items*

You can tag files with a number of different criteria, as we explain in Chapter 6. When tags are added to images, you can sort files according to tag labels. We cover sorting by tag labels in Chapter 6, too. For now, take a look at the Find menu and notice the Untagged Items command. If you haven't added tags to some items and want to show only the untagged files so that you can begin to add tags, choose Find⇨Untagged Items or press **Ctrl/⌘+Shift+Q**. Elements displays all files without tags in the Organizer window.

## *Searching collections*

Collections are among many items we address in Chapter 6. You can create collections and then select a collection on the Collections panel. Selecting a collection is like having a first level of sorting. You can then search by date or other sort options discussed in the preceding and following sections to narrow the choices.

## *Searching captions and notes*

In Chapter 6, we talk about adding captions and notes to your files. When captions or notes are added to files, you can search for the caption name, contents of a note, or both. To search caption names and notes, follow these steps:

1. **Open files in the Organizer by choosing File⇨Get Photos and then choosing a submenu command for acquiring files.**

If you're opening files stored on your hard drive, choose the From Files and Folders submenu command.

## 2. Choose Find⇄By Caption or Note.

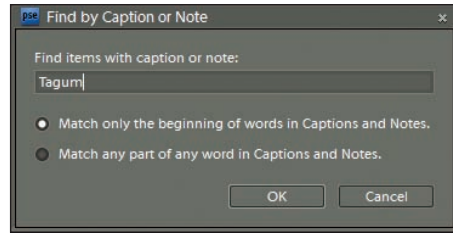
The Find by Caption or Note dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 5-17.

Options in the dialog box are

- *Find Items with Caption or Note:* In the text box, type the words you want to locate.
- *Match Only the Beginning of Words in Captions and Notes:* Click this radio button when you know that your caption or note begins with words you type in the text box.
- *Match Any Part of Any Word in Captions or Notes:* Click this radio button if you're not sure whether the text typed in the box is used at the beginning of a caption or note, or whether it's contained within the caption name or note text.

## 3. Click OK.

The Results appear in the Organizer window.



**Figure 5-17:** Choose Find⇄By Caption or Note to open the dialog box in which search criteria for captions and notes are specified.

## Searching by history

Elements keeps track of what you do with your photos, such as printing, e-mailing, sharing, and performing a number of other tasks. You can search for files based on the file history by choosing Find⇄By History. Selecting options on the By History submenu reports files found on date searches meeting the history criteria.

## Searching metadata

Metadata includes information about your images that's supplied by digital cameras as well as custom data you add to a file. *Metadata* contains descriptions of the image, such as your camera name, the camera settings you used to take a picture, copyright information, and much more.

Searching metadata is easy. Just choose Find⇄By Details (Metadata) in the Organizer. The Find by Details (Metadata) dialog box opens. The first two columns in the dialog box offer a number of different choices for search criteria and options according to the criteria. In the third column, you specify exactly what you want to search by typing search criteria in the text box. Clicking the plus button adds new lines to add more criteria to the search, as shown in Figure 5-18, and clicking the minus button deletes a line.

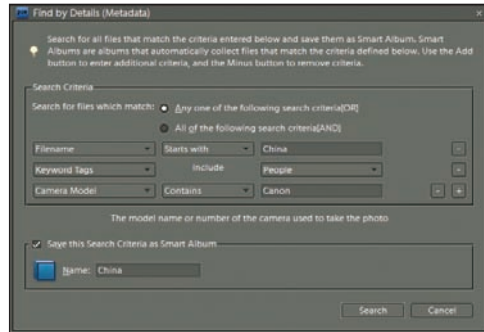
## Searching faces

If a magical method is available to you for searching files in Elements, it has to be searching for faces. When you choose Find⇨Find Faces for Tagging, Elements searches through files you select in the Organizer window and examines each image for a face — *Homo sapiens* faces, to be exact.



Note that you should first select image thumbnails in the Organizer window and then choose Find⇨Find Faces for Tagging. If you don't select files, Elements searches the entire catalog. Be aware that if you search through a large catalog, Elements takes some time to complete the search.

The results of the search magically include all photos containing faces in a new Organizer window. Although the command is intended to identify images you can tag, you can use the command for invoking a search and choosing to view all files containing faces.



**Figure 5-18:** Choose Find⇨By Details (Metadata) in the Organizer to open the dialog box in which metadata are specified.





# Organizing and Managing Your Photos

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Creating and organizing keyword tags
  - ▶ Creating catalogs
  - ▶ Working with albums
  - ▶ Creating stacks and versions
  - ▶ Adding captions and notes
  - ▶ Batch processing files
  - ▶ Backing up files
- 

Downloading a bunch of media cards filled with photos and leaving them in folders distributed all over your hard drive is like having a messy office with papers stacked all over your desk. Trying to find a file, even with all the great search capabilities we cover in Chapter 5, can take you as much time as sorting through piles of papers. What you need is a good file-management system.

In this chapter, we talk about organizing and annotating files, and the important task of backing up files. Be certain to take a little time to understand the organizational methods that Elements offers, keep your files organized when you copy them to your hard drive, and back up files to CDs or DVDs. The time you invest in organizing your pictures helps you quickly locate files when you need them.



## Organizing Groups of Images with Keyword Tags

Elements provides you with a great opportunity for organizing files, in the form of keyword tags. After you acquire your images in the Organizer, as we discuss in Chapter 4, sort them out and add some permanent keyword tags according to the dates you took the pictures, the subject matter, or some other categorical arrangement.



Keyword tags are referred to as *collections* in Elements 5 and earlier.

In the Organizer window, two panels help you sort your pictures and keep them well organized. You use the Keyword Tags panel (which we talk about in the section “Working with keyword tags,” later in this chapter) to identify individual images by using a limitless number of options for categorizing your pictures. On the Keyword Tags panel, you can create keyword tags and collection groups to neatly organize files.



Keyword tags are handy when you want to use the many different project options, which we explain in Chapter 16. You create a keyword tag from files stored in various folders on your hard drive and preview the images to be used in a creation. Select the images you want to use when creating slide shows and photo albums, for example. When you finish with the creations, go back and delete the keyword tag.

In the following sections, you can find out how to create and manage keyword tags.

### Creating a new keyword tag

To create a new keyword tag and add photos to the tag, follow these steps:

#### 1. Open photos in the Organizer.

Open the Organizer window by clicking the Organizer button in an editing mode or by selecting Organize on the Welcome screen. Choose File→Get Photos and Videos→From Files and Folders. Note that you should have copied some photos to your hard drive, as we explain in Chapter 4.

#### 2. To create a new keyword tag, click the plus sign (+) icon in the Keyword Tags panel to open a drop-down menu and then choose New Keyword Tag.

The Create Keyword Tag dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 6-1.

#### 3. Type a name for the tag in the Name text box and add a note to describe the keyword tag.

You might use the location where you took the photos, the subject matter, or other descriptive information for the note.

4. **If you want to assign the keyword tag to a map location on the Yahoo! Maps, as we discuss in Chapter 5, click the Place on Map button.**

When you click Place on Map, a dialog box opens in which you type a city name for placing the image on Yahoo! Maps. Type a city name and select the correct city from options provided in a second dialog box.

5. **Click OK in the Edit Keyword Tag dialog box.**

You return to the Organizer window.

6. **In the Organizer window, select the photos you want to keyword tag.**

Click a photo and Shift-click another photo to select photos in a group. Click a photo and Ctrl-click (⌘-click on the Mac) different photos scattered around the Organizer window to select photos in a nonconsecutive order.

7. **To add a new keyword tag to a photo (or selection of photos), click one of the selected photos in the Organizer window and drag the photo thumbnail to the New Tag icon in the Keyword Tags panel.**

Alternatively, you can drag a tag to the selected photos.

When you release the mouse button, the photos are added to the new keyword tag.

8. **Repeat Steps 3 through 7 to create keyword tags for all the images you want to organize.**
9. **To view one or more keyword tags, click the empty square adjacent to a keyword tag icon to show the photos within that group in the Organizer window.**

When you click the empty square, an icon in the shape of a pair of binoculars appears inside the square, as shown in Figure 6-2. All photos matching the keyword tags are shown in the Organizer window.

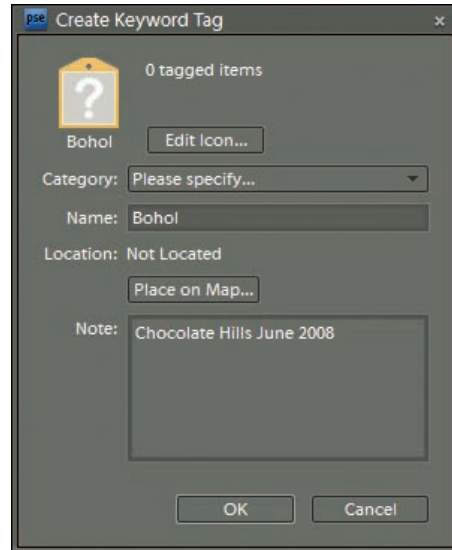


Figure 6-1: The Create Keyword Tag dialog box.



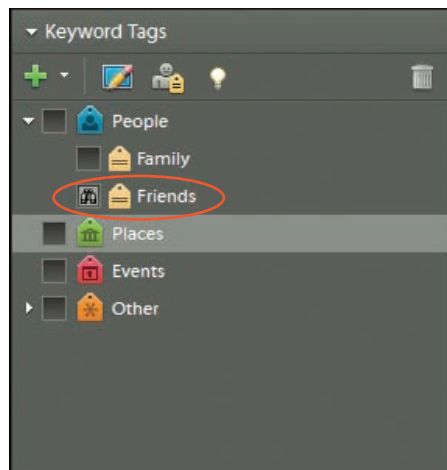
To return to viewing all photos in the Organizer, click the binoculars in the Tags panel. The square returns to empty and turns off viewing the tagged files.

## Working with keyword tags

You can manage keyword tags by using menu commands from the New drop-down menu and other commands from a context menu that you open by right-clicking (Control-clicking on the Mac) a keyword tag on the Keyword Tags panel.

In the New drop-down menu, you can access these commands:

- ✔ **New Keyword Tag:** Create a new keyword tag, as we describe in the steps in the preceding section.
- ✔ **New Sub-Category:** A *sub-category* is like a nested bookmark. Create a sub-category by selecting New Sub-Category from the New menu; a dialog box opens, prompting you to type a name for the new sub-category. As an example for how you might use keyword tags and sub-categories, you might have a keyword tag named Uncle Joe's Wedding. Then, you might create sub-categories for Bride Dressing Room, Ceremony, Family Photos, Reception, and so on.
- ✔ **New Category:** Choose New Category from the New menu in the Keyword Tags panel to open a dialog box that prompts you to type a name for the new category. By default, you'll find predefined category names for People, Places, Events, and Other. If you want to add your own custom category, use this menu command.
- ✔ **From File:** If you export a keyword tag, the file is written as XML (eXtensible Markup Language). When you choose From File, you can import an XML file of a keyword tags file.
- ✔ **Save Keyword Tags to a File:** You can save keyword tags to a file that can be retrieved with the From File command. This option is handy when you open a different catalog file and want to import the same collection names created in one catalog file to another catalog file. (See the section "Cataloging Files," later in this chapter.)
- ✔ **Collapse All Keyword Tags:** Keyword tags appear like bookmark lists that can be collapsed and expanded. An expanded list shows you all the sub-category keyword tags. Choose Collapse All Keyword Tags to collapse the list.
- ✔ **Expand All Keyword Tags:** This command expands a collapsed list.



**Figure 6-2:** A binocular icon appears when you click an empty square.



When you create a new keyword tag, you see a large icon in the Keyword Tags panel. The default tags appear with small icons. You can access the items that appear below default tags by clicking the right-pointing arrow to expand the list.

Right-click (Control-click on the Mac) a collection name to make the following menu commands appear:

- ✓ **Change <keyword tag name> Keyword Tag to a Sub-Category:** Choose this menu command to change a keyword tag to a keyword tag sub-category.
- ✓ **Edit <keyword tag name> Keyword Tag:** This menu command opens the Edit Keyword Tag dialog box. You can rename a keyword tag, change the note, or change the map location in this dialog box. Alternatively, you can click the Pencil tool on the Keyword Tags panel to open the same dialog box.
- ✓ **Delete <keyword tag name> Keyword Tag:** Select a keyword tag and select this menu option to delete a keyword tag. Alternatively, click the Trash icon in the panel to delete a keyword tag. Note that deleting a keyword tag doesn't delete files.
- ✓ **Place on Map:** Choose Place on Map to add images to a Yahoo! Map location, as we describe in Chapter 5.
- ✓ **Remove from Map:** Choose this command to remove tags from the Yahoo! Maps.
- ✓ **Show on Map:** This command opens the Yahoo! Maps panel and shows the red pin at the map location with which the image(s) are associated.
- ✓ **New Search Using <keyword tag name> Keyword Tag:** This command searches through a catalog and displays all the photos assigned the keyword tag in the Organizer window.
- ✓ **Add Photos with <keyword tag name> Keyword Tag to Search**  
**Results:** If you select one photo in the Organizer, the number is one. Selecting more than one photo changes the number to the total number of selected images. When you open a context menu, the selected images are added to the keyword tag where the context menu is opened.
- ✓ **Exclude Photos with <keyword tag name> Keyword Tag from Search**  
**Results:** Select photos in the Organizer window and choose this command to exclude the selected photos from the search.
- ✓ **Attach <keyword tag name> Keyword Tag to <n> Selected Items:** Select a file in the Organizer window and choose this command to attach the keyword tag to the file.

**WARNING!**

Keyword tags are saved automatically with the catalog you work with. By default, Elements creates a catalog and auto-saves your work to it. If you happen to create another catalog, as we explain in the next section, your keyword tags disappear. Be aware of which catalog is open when you create keyword tags in order to return to them.

## Cataloging Files

When you open files in the Organizer, all your files are saved automatically to a catalog. The files themselves aren't really saved to the catalog, but rather links from the catalog to the individual files are saved. *Links* are like pointers that tell the catalog where to look for a file. When you add and delete files, the catalog is continually updated.

**WARNING!**

When you open more files in the Organizer, the default catalog file grows, and the maximum size of the catalog file is limited only by your available hard drive space. Working with a single catalog file has some disadvantages. For example, if your catalog file becomes corrupted and unrecoverable, you lose all the work you've done organizing files into keyword tags. If you work with many files, the Organizer performance slows down.

Rather than work with a single catalog file, you can fine-tune your file organization by creating several catalogs. You might want to organize files according to subject matter, dates, locations, or some other division of categories, and then create separate catalogs for each category. You can find all the details in the sections that follow.

## Splitting a big catalog into smaller catalogs

Follow these steps to break off part of a large catalog into a smaller one:

### 1. Open files in the Organizer.

If you have a large collection of files (300 images or more) open in an Organizer window, you can start with your open files. If you don't yet have files open, choose **File**⇨**Get Photos and Videos** and get photos from one of the submenu commands to load up the Organizer window.

### 2. Tag files that you want to place in another catalog with keyword tags.

After tagging the files, click the icon adjacent to the keyword tag name to show only the tagged files in the Organizer.

### 3. Choose **File**⇨**Catalog** to open the Catalog Manager dialog box, shown in Figure 6-3.

Here's something to keep in mind when working with catalogs: You don't create or access catalogs by using menu commands. All the aspects of working with a catalog are handled in the Catalog Manager dialog box.

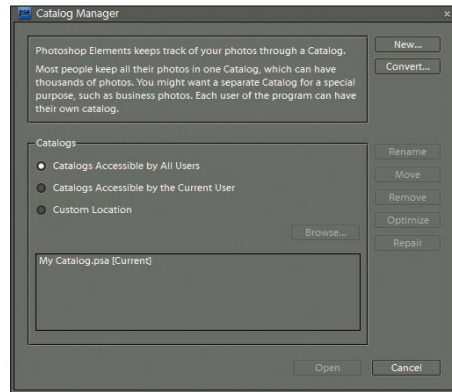
**WARNING!**

**4. Click New.**

A dialog box opens, prompting you to name your new catalog.

**5. Type a descriptive name for the catalog and click OK.****6. Add and delete files in the Organizer.**

You can delete files that don't belong to your newly created catalog topic and add files by choosing File⇨Get Photos and Videos. Furthermore, you can add or delete keyword tags, as we describe in the preceding section. The view you create in the Organizer is saved automatically to your new catalog file.



**Figure 6-3:** Choose File⇨Catalog to open the Catalog Manager dialog box.



When you delete a file from a catalog, Elements prompts you in a dialog box to confirm the deletion. Also, in the dialog box is a check box for deleting files from your hard disk. If you click the box, the file is deleted from your hard disk. Be certain to exercise caution so that you don't inadvertently delete your only copy of a photo.

### *Importing photos to a new catalog*

To keep your photos organized and your catalog files small, you can start a completely new catalog before you import photos. Follow these steps:

- 1. Choose File⇨Catalog and click New in the Catalog dialog box that appears.**
- 2. When the New Catalog dialog box opens, type a name for the new catalog in the File Name text box and then click Save.**
- 3. If you want to add free music files installed with Elements, select the Import Free Music into All New Catalogs check box.**
- 4. Choose File⇨Get Photos and Videos to add files to the new catalog.**

When the Get Photos from Files and Folders dialog box opens, a list of media files appears in the dialog box when the Import Free Music into All New Catalogs check box is selected.

- 5. Select the free music files to add to your collection; then navigate your hard drive and select the photos you want to add. After you identify all the files, click Open.**

The selected music files and photos are added to your new collection.



## *Switching to a different catalog*

When you need to open a different catalog file, choose File⇨Catalog and select the name of the catalog you want to open. Click Open at the bottom of the dialog box to open the selected catalog. The Organizer window changes to reflect files contained in that catalog.

Notice the Repair and Optimize buttons in Figure 6-3. If you can't see thumbnail previews of images or open them in one of the editing modes, your catalog file might be corrupted. Click the Repair button to try to fix the problem. When catalogs get sluggish, you might need to optimize a catalog to gain better performance. Click Optimize in the Catalog Manager routinely to keep your catalog operating at optimum performance.

## *Creating Albums*

With keyword tags, you can organize files into categories and sub-categories, which helps keep your files neatly organized within a catalog. Elements offers additional organizing control in the Albums panel. You might want to organize an album for sharing photos with others on Photoshop.com, assemble an album and rate each photo with a range from one to five stars, create a slide show, or just use the Albums panel to further segregate images within different categories.

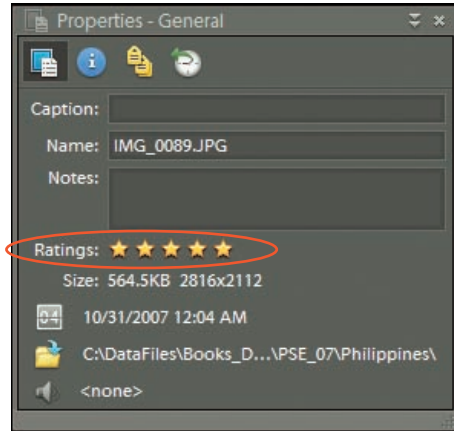
Think of a catalog as a parent item and keyword tags albums as its children. Within keyword tags, you can use the sort options (discussed in Chapter 5) to sort files according to date. If you still have a number of files in an Organizer window that are hard to manage, you can create tags that form sub-categories within the keyword tags. Additionally, you can create an album out of a number of photos within a given keyword tag. For example, you might have a huge number of photos taken on a European vacation. Your catalog contains all the images taken on that trip. You can then create keyword tags for files according to the country visited. You then might rate the photos according to the best pictures you took on your trip. The highest-rated images could then be assembled in an album and viewed as a slide show.

## *Rating images*

You can rate photos in the Organizer by tagging images with one to five stars. You might have some photos that are exceptional, which you want to give a five-star rating, whereas poor photos with lighting and focus problems might be rated with one star.

In versions earlier than Photoshop Elements 6, you rated photos directly in the Organizer window below each photo thumbnail. In Elements 6 and Elements 7, you rate photos in the Properties panel or use the Edit⇨Ratings submenu.

To rate a file with a star rating, open a context menu by right-clicking a photo and select Properties from that menu. The Properties — General panel, shown in Figure 6-4, opens. Click a star to rate the photo. Alternately, you can click a photo, choose Edit ⇨ Ratings, and choose a star rating from the submenu that appears.



**Figure 6-4:** A collection of photos rated with stars.



Photoshop Elements 7 has changed how you view different ratings. Rated views are no longer available in the Organizer window, like they were in earlier versions of Elements. Now, you have a menu in the Shortcuts bar, which appears in the top-right corner of the Organizer window. Notice the five stars and the drop-down menu. The menu choices include

- ✓ **And Higher:** Click a star adjacent to the menu and choose And Higher to make the photos with that rating and all ratings above the selected star appear in the Organizer window.
- ✓ **And Lower:** Click a star adjacent to the menu and choose And Lower to view all photos rated with the selected star and lower. For example, if you click the third star, when you choose the menu command, all photos rated with three stars or fewer appear in the Organizer window.
- ✓ **Only:** If you click five stars (or any other rating) and select Only, only the images rated with the selected star are shown in the Organizer window.

To return to a view in which all your photos are shown in the Organizer, including all photos you haven't rated, click Show All in the Shortcuts bar.

## *Adding rated files to an album*

You might want to rate images with star ratings and then add all your images to an album. Within the album, you can still choose to view your pictures according to star ratings.

### *Creating an album*

In the section “Organizing Groups of Images with Keyword Tags,” earlier in this chapter, we discuss how creating keyword tags and assigning tags to photos help you organize a collection of photos and how sub-categories help you break down a collection into additional categories. With albums and star

ratings, you can further break down a collection into groups that you might want to mark for printing, sharing, or onscreen slide shows.

To create an album, follow these steps:

1. **Click the plus sign (+) icon in the Albums panel and choose New Album from the drop-down menu shown in Figure 6-5.**

The Albums panel expands to show the Album Details.

2. **Name the new album.**

Type a name for the album in the Album Name text box, as shown in Figure 6-6.

3. **View the Backup/Synchronization Help.**

Click the light bulb to display the help information related to checking the Backup/

Synchronize check box. Checking this check box protects your files by using backup services provided by Photoshop.com.

4. **Click the help note to dismiss it from view.**

5. **Drag photos from the Organizer to the items window in the Album Details panel, shown in Figure 6-6.**

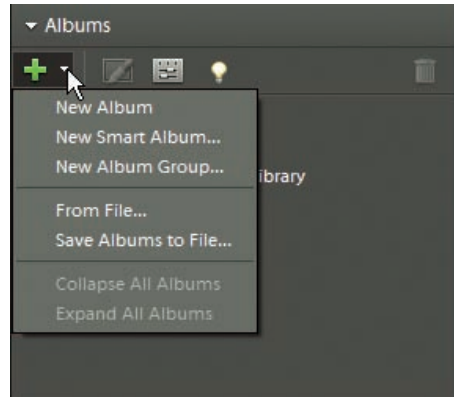
Alternately, you can select photos in the Organizer and click the plus sign (+) icon to add them to the album.

6. **Click Done at the bottom of the panel.**

Your new album now appears listed in the Albums panel.

That's it! Your new album is created, and the photos you drag to the album are added to it. You can isolate all the photos within a given album by clicking the album name in the Albums panel.

Creating multiple albums uses only a fraction of the memory that would be required if you wanted to duplicate photos for multiple purposes, such as printing, Web hosting, sharing, and so on.



**Figure 6-5:** Click the plus sign (+) icon to open the drop-down menu and then choose New Album.



### Creating a Smart Album

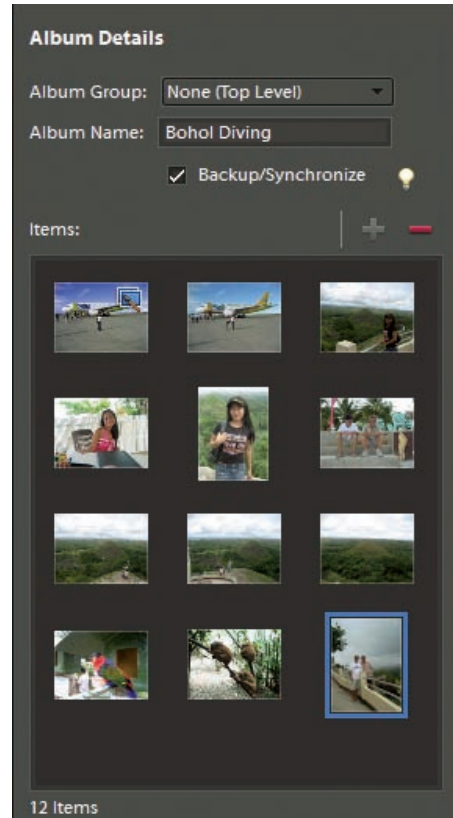
You can perform a search based on a number of different criteria. You can, for example, rate images with stars and choose to view all files with three or more stars, or maybe you changed camera models and want to show only the photos taken with your newest camera. You can search a catalog for metadata, location, or some other criterion. Furthermore, you can combine searches, for example, first searching for a location and then searching the files within a given date range.

The point is that after you perform a search, you can save the search results in the form of a Smart Album. After you have all the files shown in the Organizer based on the searches you perform, you can create a Smart Album by opening the New menu in the Albums panel and choosing New Smart Album.

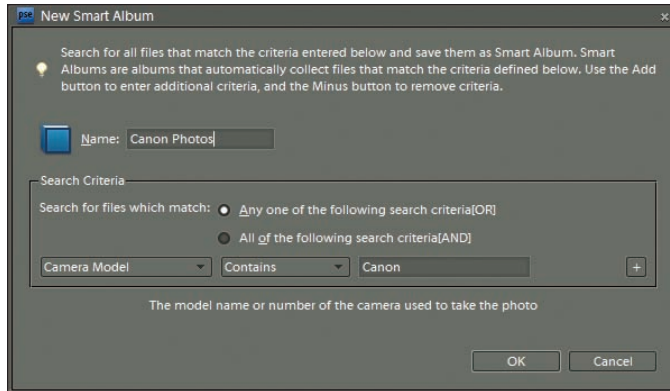
The New Smart Album dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 6-7. Type a name for your new Smart Album and make selections for the search criteria below the Name text box. Click OK, and the Smart Album is listed above the albums in the Albums panel.

### Creating an Album Group

The Albums panel contains all the albums and Smart Albums you create in an organized list. By default, the albums are listed in alphabetical order. If you add many albums to the panel, the list can be long, making it difficult to find the album you want to use for a given editing session.



**Figure 6-6:** Drag photos to the Items area in the Album Details panel.



**Figure 6-7:** Type a name for your new Smart Album, add the search criteria, and click OK to add the album to the Albums panel.

An *Album Group* is no more than a divider shown in the Albums panel. You don't add photos to the group. You nest albums within a group in a hierarchical order. To understand how to create an Album Group, follow these steps:

**1. Create several albums.**

To begin, you should have two or more albums added to the Albums panel. For example, suppose that you have many photos of a vacation trip to Hawaii. You want to divide the photos by images taken at a luau, a diving trip, a day on Waikiki Beach, or other similar events that you want to group together. For each category, such as Luau, Diving, or Waikiki, you create a separate album.

**2. Create an Album Group by clicking the New menu in the Albums panel and choosing New Album Group.**

The Create Album Group dialog box, as shown in Figure 6-8, opens.

**3. Type a name for the group in the Album Group Name text box.**

**4. Click OK.**

Your new Album Group is added to the Albums panel.

**5. Click and drag an album onto the Album Group name in the Albums panel.**

The albums you drag to the Album Group are nested within the group, as shown in Figure 6-9.



**Figure 6-8:** Type a name for your new Album Group in the Create Album Group dialog box.

Figure 6-9 shows an expanded Album Group, as denoted by the list (below Hawaii photos) and the disclosure triangle. To collapse a group, click the down-pointing arrow. The group names remain visible and provide you with more viewing space in the Albums panel, making it easier to scroll long lists.

Like keyword tags, albums can be saved to an XML (eXtensible Markup Language) file, and the files can be loaded in the Albums panel. Open the New menu, where you find commands for Save Albums to File and From File. You can export an album to a file and then copy the file to another computer, making it easy to organize photos on several computers.



Figure 6-9: Albums are nested below an Album Group.

## Hiding Files That Get in the Way

Elements offers a few ways to hide files so that you can keep your images organized and easy to find.

With a simple menu command, you can mark selected files in the Organizer as *hidden*. You might have several files of the same subject and want to keep only one file visible in the Organizer window. However, you may not want to delete the other photos. As such, you can hide files in the Organizer window and show the hidden files by using menu commands.

Select files you want to hide, and from either the Edit menu or a context menu, choose **Visibility** ⇨ **Mark as Hidden**. To see the files you mark for hiding, return to the same **Visibility** menu and choose **Show Hidden**. Essentially, you remove the check mark for **Show Hidden**, resulting in hiding the files. To easily toggle between showing and hiding files marked for hiding, choose **View** ⇨ **Hidden Files**. Selecting this menu command toggles between showing and hiding the files you marked for hiding.

## Stacking 'em up

Think of *stacks* like a stack of cards that are face-up. You see only the front card, and all the other cards are hidden behind that card. Stacks work the same way. You hide different images behind a foreground image. At any time, you can sort the images or display all images in the stack in the Organizer window.

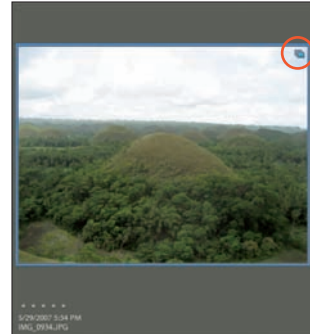
To create a stack, follow these steps:

**1. In the Organizer, select several photos.**

You can select any number of photos. However, you can't stack audio or movie files.

**2. Choose Edit⇨Stack⇨Stack Selected Photos.**

Elements stacks your photos. The first image you select remains in view in the Organizer window. In the upper-right area, an icon that looks like a stack of cards appears on the image thumbnail when you've stacked some images, as shown in Figure 6-10. The thumbnail itself appears as though it sits atop a stack of other thumbnails.



**Figure 6-10:** An image thumbnail.

After you stack a group of images, you can use the Stack submenu commands to manage the photos. Click a stack to select it and then choose Edit⇨Stack. The submenu commands that are available include

- ✓ **Automatically Suggest Photo Stacks:** Select this command to make Elements search the photos in the Organizer window for visually similar appearances. Photos that have visually similar appearances are opened in a separate window, where you can select photos you want to stack. Make a selection of two or more photos, and select Stack Selected Photos.
- ✓ **Stack Selected Photos:** This command remains grayed out unless you have several photos selected to create a stack.
- ✓ **Unstack Photos:** Click a stack in the Organizer and choose this command to return all images to the Organizer window and eliminate the stack.
- ✓ **Expand Photos in Stack:** This command expands the stack to show all thumbnail images in the Organizer window.
- ✓ **Collapse Photos in Stack:** This command collapses a stack to show only the top photo in the Organizer window.
- ✓ **Flatten Stack:** After you stack some photos, this command becomes available.  
Be careful with this command. When you flatten a stack, all photos except for the top photo are deleted from the catalog (not from your hard disk).
- ✓ **Remove Photo from Stack:** Choosing this command removes the selected photos from the stack.





- ✓ **Set as Top Photo:** You also need to first choose Expand Photos in Stack before accessing this command. If you don't like the topmost photo, select another and choose this menu command to move the selected photo to the top of the stack.



If you want to view all stacks in an Organizer window in expanded form, choose View⇨Expand All Stacks. Using this command doesn't require you to individually select stacks in the Organizer before expanding them.

## Creating versions

*Versions* are similar to stacks, but you create versions from only one file. You can edit an image and save both the edited version and the original as a version set. Additional edits can be made in either editing mode and saved to a version set. To create a version set, follow these steps:

**1. Select an image by clicking it in the Organizer window.**

**2. Apply an edit.**

For example, right in the Organizer, you can correct some brightness problems in your image. Choose Edit⇨Auto Smart Fix to adjust contrast and brightness. See Chapter 10 for more details on adjusting contrast and brightness.

**3. View the items in the version set by clicking the image in the Organizer and choosing Edit⇨Version Set⇨Expand Items in Version Set.**

Elements automatically creates a version set for you when you apply the Auto Smart Fix to the file. A new Organizer window opens and shows two thumbnail images — one representing the original image and the other representing the edited version.

**4. To open the original in Full Edit mode, select the original image and then select Full Edit from the Display drop-down menu on the Organizer Menu bar.**

**5. Edit the image in Full Edit mode.**

You can choose from many different menu commands to edit the image. For example, change the color mode to Indexed Color by choosing Image⇨Mode⇨Indexed Color, as we explain in Chapter 3.

**6. Save a version by choosing File⇨Save As.**

**7. In the Save Options area of the Save As dialog box, select the Include in the Organizer and Save in Version Set with Original check boxes.**

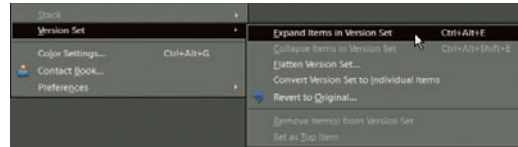
**8. Click Save.**

The edit made in Full Edit mode is saved as another version in your version set.



When you have a version set, you can open the Edit⇨Version Set submenu and choose menu commands that are similar to commands available with stacks. (See the preceding section for details.)

After you create a version set, you find additional submenu commands you can use to manage the version set. Choose Edit⇨Version Set, or open a context menu on a version set and then choose Version Set. The submenu, as shown in Figure 6-11, opens.



**Figure 6-11:** Use the Edit menu or a context menu opened on a version set, and then choose Version Set to open the submenu.

Items listed in the Version Set submenu include:

- ✓ **Expand Items in Version Set:** Click a version set and choose this menu command to expand the items in the version set.
- ✓ **Collapse Items in Version Set:** When items are expanded, you can return them to a collapsed view by selecting this command.
- ✓ **Flatten Version Set:** Be careful here. If you choose this command, you lose all items in the version set except the top image.
- ✓ **Convert Version Set to Individual Items:** This command removes items from the version set and adds each version as a separate image to the Organizer window.
- ✓ **Revert to Original:** This command deletes the version set and returns you to the original, unedited version of the file.
- ✓ **Remove Item(s) from Version Set:** As stated, this option removes an item from a version set.
- ✓ **Set as Top Item:** When viewing an expanded version set, click one of the images and choose this item to move it to the top.

## Sticking Digital Notes on Your Photos

A way to identify your files beyond the tagging capabilities, which we discuss in the section “Organizing Groups of Images with Keyword Tags,” earlier in this chapter, is to add captions and notes. When you add a caption or note, you can search captions or notes by choosing the Find⇨By Caption or Note menu command. Captions and notes are also helpful when you create different keyword tags — such as slide presentations and photo albums — by using the Create panel, as we explain in Chapter 16.

Text captions are easy to create. Although you can select a thumbnail image in the Organizer window and choose Edit⇨Add Caption, a better way is to use the Properties panel. Just follow these steps:

1. **To open the Properties panel, select a thumbnail image in the Organizer, right-click it (Control-click on the Mac), and choose Show Properties from the context menu that appears.**

Alternatively, you can choose Window⇨Properties or press Alt+Enter (Option+Return on the Mac). In either case, the Properties panel opens, as shown in Figure 6-12.

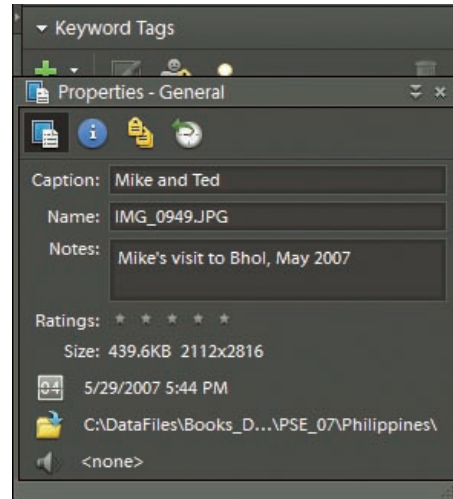


Figure 6-12: The Properties panel.

2. **Type a caption by adding text to the Caption text box.**
3. **Type text in the Notes area on the panel to add a note.**

That's all there is to it. You can also record audio notes about an image.

## Automating Your Organization

If you have a number of common edits you want to make on a collection of photos, Elements lets you perform common changes to multiple files.

With a single menu command, you can change file formats, change file attributes, and add common file base names. File renaming can be part of the Export command, or you can use a menu option for renaming files in the Organizer.

### Automating common tasks when you export

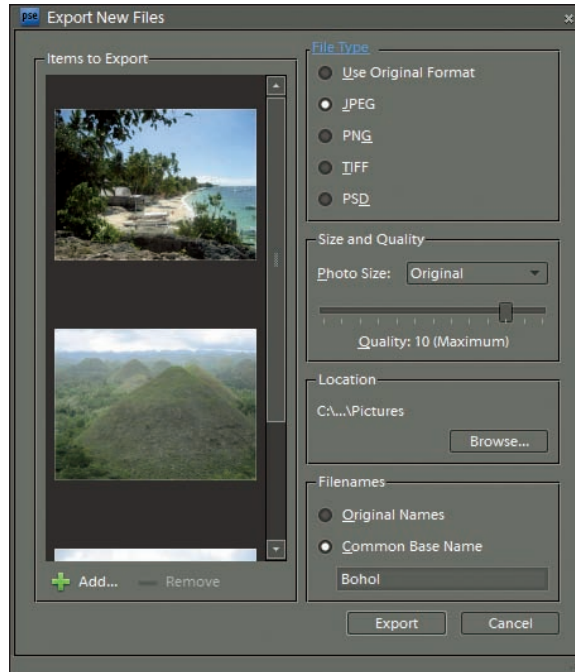
You might use the Export Selected Items dialog box frequently when you're acquiring images from digital cameras. What you may not know is that this dialog box can automate other common tasks, too:

- ✓ **Add common base names for the filenames.** (For example, change names, such as DSC000001, DSC000002, and so on, to more descriptive filenames, such as Dallas 001 and Dallas 002.)
- ✓ **Change the file format.**
- ✓ **Change the file size and quality.**

Follow these steps to use options in the Export dialog box:

1. **Select files and open the Export New Items dialog box by choosing File→Export→As New File(s) or pressing Ctrl+E (Control+E on the Mac).**

The Export New Files dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 6-13.



**Figure 6-13:** The Export New Files dialog box permits you to rename and change formats for batches of files.

You don't have to select files beforehand. You can identify files in another dialog box that's accessible from within the Export New Files dialog box. If you know ahead of time which files you want to export, go ahead and select them in the Organizer window.

2. **Select a file type.**

From the File Type options, select the format you want to use for the exported images. For more information on file formats, see Chapter 3.

3. **Select a size and quality.**

If you select Use Original Format in Step 2, resizing options are grayed out. You use this setting when you want to retain the original sizes while you rename files. If you select JPEG, you can move the quality slider, as we explain in Chapter 3, to set the image quality of JPEG images. None of the other format options provides a quality option.

For sizing images, select commands from the Photo Size drop-down list, where you find several fixed dimensions and an option for using a custom size.

**4. Select a target location for the new files by clicking the Browse button and selecting a folder.**

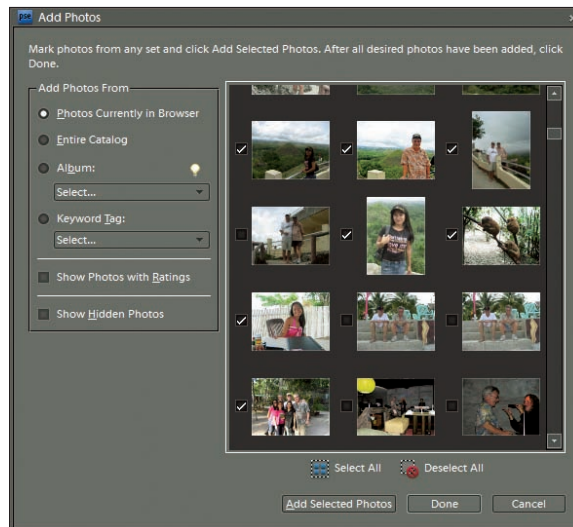
If you want to create a new folder, you can click the Make New Folder button in the Browse for Folder dialog box, which opens after you click the Browse button.

**5. If you want to keep the original filenames, click the Original Names radio button. If you want to rename files with a common base name, select Common Base Name and type a name in the text box.**

The resultant files are *<base name>001.extension*, *<base name>002.extension*, *<base name>003.extension*, and so on.

**6. If you want to add files to the list for exporting, click the plus sign (+) symbol in the lower-left corner.**

This step opens the Add Photos dialog box, as shown in Figure 6-14, which offers a number of different options for selecting files to export.



**Figure 6-14:** The Add Photos dialog box offers a number of options for exporting photos.

Among your choices in this dialog box are

- *Photos Currently in Browser*: Click this radio button when you want to export all files shown in the Organizer window.
- *Entire Catalog*: Click this radio button if you're viewing a catalog, tagged files, or a sorted group in which some files are temporarily hidden. When you select this option, all hidden files are included in the export.
- *Album*: Click the Album radio button and select an album from the drop-down list.



You can search albums and save the results as a Smart Album. To create a Smart Album, just perform any kind of search and click New Smart Album below the plus sign (+) icon in the Albums panel.

- *Keyword Tag*: Click this radio button to select files marked with keyword tags. All files with the same tag are exported.
- *Show Photos with Ratings*: All photos with star ratings are shown on the window.
- *Show Hidden Photos*: Any file that might be hidden in the Organizer can be made visible in the file list and included in the export.
- *Select All*: When you add files to the list window, you can choose to export all files from the selected category. Click the Select All button to mark all the files for export.
- *Deselect All*: If you want some files from the list window exported while others remain behind, click the Deselect All button and then individually click the check boxes for all files you want to export.
- *Add Selected Photos*: When you add photos by using the options found in the Add Photos From area in the dialog box, the thumbnails for the images appear in a scrollable window inside the dialog box. You can select individual photos to be included in the export by checking the boxes adjacent to each photo. After checking the photos you want to include, click this button. The button action doesn't dismiss the dialog box; it merely marks the files for inclusion.
- *Done*: Click this button to return to the Export Selected Items dialog box.

**7. Select any images you don't want included in the export by clicking the check box to remove a check mark.**

**8. Click Export.**

Click Done in the Add Photos dialog box and then click Done in the Export Selected dialog box. Elements automatically exports the images to the selected folder.

## Renaming files

If you load an Organizer window and want to rename files, you don't need to use the Export command and wade through the options in the Export Selected Files dialog box. Just select the files you want to rename and then choose File⇧Rename. In the Rename dialog box that opens, type a base name for the files and click OK. The selected files are renamed using a common base name. You'll find this a quick and easy way to rename those digital camera images.

## Protecting Your Photos

Computer users often learn the hard way about the importance of backing up a hard drive and the precious data you spent time creating and editing. We can save you some aggravation right now, before you spend any more time editing your photos in Elements.

We authors are so paranoid when we're writing a book that we back up our chapters on multiple drives, CDs, and DVDs when we finish them. The standard rule is that if you spend sufficient time working on a project and it gets to the point at which redoing your work would be a major aggravation, it's time to back up files.

## Backing up your catalog

When organizing your files, adding keyword tags and albums, and creating stacks and version sets, you want to back up the catalog file in case your catalog becomes corrupted.

Here's how you can use Elements to create a backup of your data log:

- 1. Choose File⇧Backup Catalog to CD/DVD or Hard Drive to open the Backup Catalog to CD/DVD or Hard Drive Wizard.**

This wizard has three panes that Elements walks you through to painlessly create a backup of your files.

- 2. Select the source to back up.**

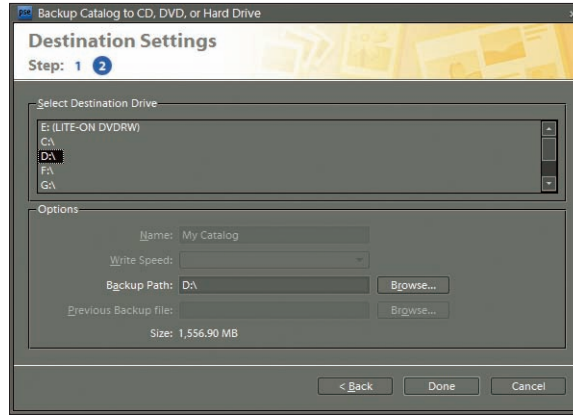
The first pane in the Burn/Backup Wizard offers two options:

- *Full Backup*: Click this radio button to perform your first backup or when you're writing files to a new media source.
- *Incremental Backup*: Use this option if you've already performed at least one backup and you want to update the backed-up files.

- 3. Click Next and select a target location for your backed-up files.**



Active drives, including CD/DVD drives attached to your computer, appear in the Select Destination Drive list, as shown in Figure 6-15. Select a drive, and Elements automatically assesses the write speed and identifies a previous backup file if one was created. The total size of the files to copy is reported in the wizard. This information is helpful so that you know whether more than one CD or DVD is needed to complete the backup.



**Figure 6-15:** The wizard provides options for selecting the destination media for the backup.

- 4. If you intend to copy files to your hard drive or to another hard drive attached to your computer, click the Browse button and identify the path.**

If you use a media source, such as a CD or DVD, Elements prompts you to insert a disc and readies the media for writing.

- 5. Click Done, and the backup commences.**

Be certain to not interrupt the backup. It might take some time, so just let Elements work away until you're notified that the backup is complete.

## *Backing up photos and files*

With files stored all over your hard drive, manually copying files to a second hard drive, CD-ROM, or DVD would take quite a bit of time. Fortunately, Elements makes finding files to back up a breeze.

Choose File→Make a CD/DVD, and then in the dialog box that opens, click Yes to confirm the action. The Make a CD/DVD dialog box then opens. Select a hard drive or a CD/DVD drive, type a name for the backup folder, and click OK. Elements goes about copying all files shown in the Organizer window to your backup source.

# Part III

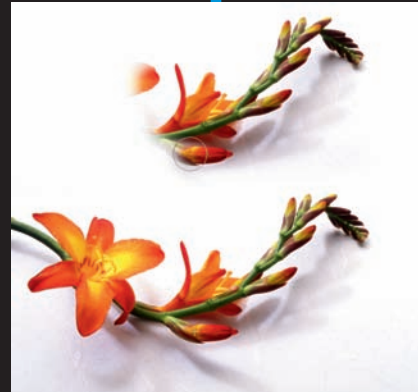
## Selecting and Correcting Photos



## *In this part . . .*

**T**he wide array of editing features in Elements permit you to change, optimize, perfect, and combine images into composite designs. In this part, you can discover how to select image content and then alter that content for a variety of purposes, such as correcting the color, changing the appearance, and extracting the content so that you can introduce it in other photos. Because photos are composed of many thousands of tiny pixels, you need to develop some skill in selecting just the pixels you want to use for any given editing task.

In addition to describing how to create image selections, this part covers photo correction for image contrast and brightness, color correction, and color conversions from one color mode to another. Rarely do you encounter digital images that don't require some kind of correction. In the chapters ahead, you can find out how to quickly master some powerful correction techniques.



# Making and Modifying Selections

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Creating selections with the Lasso tools, Magic Wand, and more
- ▶ Using the Cookie Cutter tool
- ▶ Eliminating with the Eraser tools
- ▶ Working with the Magic Extractor command
- ▶ Saving and loading your selections

**I**f all you want to do is use your photos in all their unedited glory, feel free to skip this chapter and move on to other topics. But if you want to occasionally pluck an element out of its environment and stick it in another, or apply an adjustment to just a portion of your image, this chapter's for you.

Finding out how to make accurate selections is one of those skills that's well worth the time you invest. In this chapter, we cover all the various selection tools and techniques. We give you tips on which tools are better for which kinds of selections. But remember that you usually have several ways to achieve the same result. Which road you choose is ultimately up to you.

## *Defining Selections*

Before you dig in and get serious about selecting, let us clarify for the record what we mean by defining a selection. When you *define* a selection, you specify which part of an image you want to work with. Everything within a selection is considered selected. Everything outside the selection is unselected. After you have a selection, you can then adjust only that portion, and the unselected portion remains unchanged. Or, you can copy the selected area into another image altogether. Want to transport yourself out of your background and onto a white sandy



beach? Select yourself out of that backyard BBQ photo, get a stock photo of the tropical paradise of your choice, and drag and drop yourself onto your tropics photo with the Move tool. It's that easy.

When you make a selection, a dotted outline — variously called a *selection border*, an *outline*, or a *marquee* — appears around the selected area. Elements, the sophisticated imaging program that it is, also allows you to partially select pixels, which allows for soft-edged selections. You create soft-edged selections by feathering or anti-aliasing the selection or by using a mask. Don't worry: We cover these techniques in the section "Applying marquee options," later in this chapter.



For all the selection techniques described in this chapter, be sure that your image is in Full Edit mode in the Editor, and not in Quick Fix or Guided modes or in the Organizer.

## Creating Rectangular and Elliptical Selections

If you can drag a mouse, you can master the Rectangular and Elliptical Marquee tools. These two tools are the easiest selection tools to use, so if your desired element is rectangular or elliptical, by all means, grab one of these tools.

The Rectangular Marquee tool, as its moniker states, is designed to define rectangular or square selections. This tool is great to use if you want to home in on the pertinent portion of your photo and eliminate unnecessary background.

Here's how to make a selection with this tool:

- 1. Select the Rectangular Marquee tool from the Tools panel.**

It looks like a dotted square. You can also press M to access the tool.

- 2. Drag from one corner of the area you want to select to the opposite corner.**

While you drag, the selection border appears. The marquee follows the movement of your mouse cursor.

- 3. Release your mouse button.**

You now have a completed rectangular selection, as shown in Figure 7-1.

The Elliptical Marquee tool, which shares the same flyout menu as the Rectangular Marquee tool, is designed for elliptical or circular selections. This tool is perfect for selecting balloons, clocks, and other rotund elements.



Here's how to use the Elliptical Marquee:

1. **Select the Elliptical Marquee tool from the Marquee flyout menu on the Tools panel.**

It looks like a dotted square. You can also press M to access this tool, if it's visible. If it isn't, press Shift+M.

2. **Position the crosshair near the area you want to select and then drag around your desired element.**

With this tool, you drag from a given point on the ellipse. While you drag, the selection border appears.

3. **When you're satisfied with your selection, release the mouse button.**

Your elliptical selection is done, as shown in Figure 7-2. If your selection isn't quite centered around your element, simply move the selection border by dragging inside the border.



You can move a selection while you're making it with either of the Marquee tools by holding down the spacebar while you're dragging.

### *Perfecting squares and circles with Shift and Alt/Option*

Sometimes, you need to create a perfectly square or circular selection. To do so, simply press the Shift key after you begin dragging. After you make your selection, release the mouse button first and then release the Shift key.

When you're making an elliptical selection, making the selection from the center outward is often easier. To draw from the center, first click the mouse button where you want to position the center, press Alt (Option on the Mac), and then drag. When you make your



**Figure 7-1:** Use the Rectangular Marquee tool to create rectangular selections.



*Flat Earth*

**Figure 7-2:** The Elliptical Marquee is perfect for selecting round objects.

selection, release the mouse button first and then release the Alt (Option on the Mac) key.

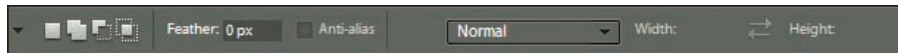
If you want to draw from the center outward *and* create a perfect circle or square, press the Shift key, as well. After you make your selection, release the mouse button and then release the Shift+Alt (Shift+Option on the Mac) keys.

### Applying marquee options

The Marquee tools offer additional options when you need to make precise selections at specific measurements. You also find options for making your selections soft around the edges.



The only thing to remember is that you must select the options on the Options bar, as shown in Figure 7-3, before you make your selection with the Marquee tools. Options can't be applied after the selection has already been made. The exception is that you can feather a selection after the fact by choosing Select⇨Feather.



**Figure 7-3:** Apply marquee settings in the Options bar.

Here are the various marquee options available to you:

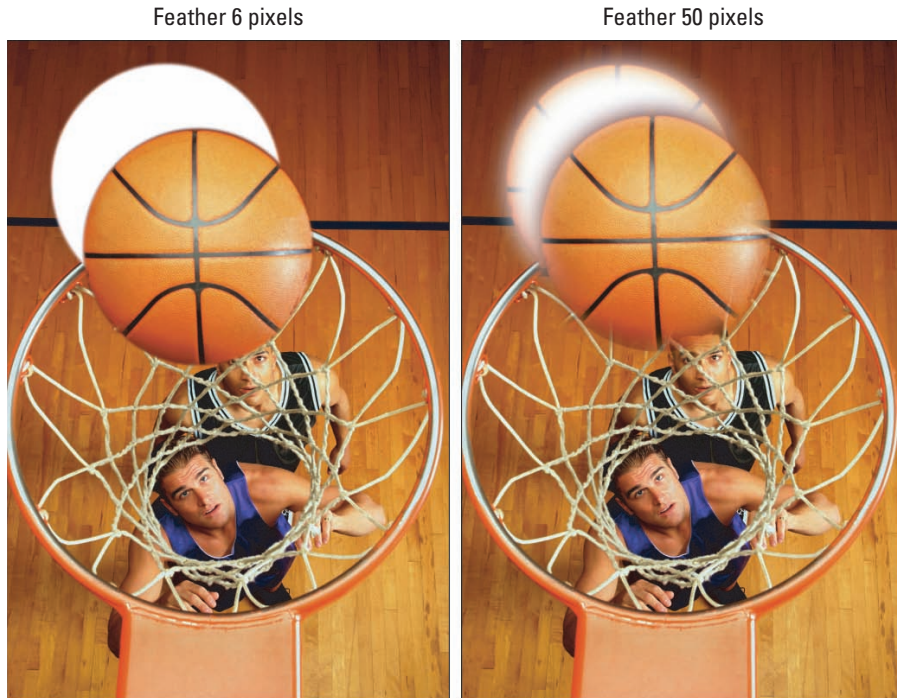
- ✓ **Feather:** Feathering creates soft edges around your selection. The amount of softness depends on the value, from 0 to 250 pixels, you enter. The higher the value, the softer the edges, as shown in Figure 7-4. Very small amounts of feathering can be used to create subtle transitions between selected elements in a collage or for blending an element into an existing background. Larger amounts are often used when you're combining multiple layers so that one image gradually fades into another. If you want a selected element to have just a soft edge without the background, simply choose Select⇨Inverse and delete the background. See more on inverting selections in the “Modifying Your Selections” section, later in this chapter. For more on layers, see Chapter 8.

Don't forget that those soft edges represent partially selected pixels.

- ✓ **Anti-Alias:** Anti-aliasing barely softens the edge of an elliptical or irregularly shaped selection so that the jagged edges aren't quite so obvious. An anti-aliased edge is always only 1 pixel wide. We recommend leaving this option checked for your selections. It can help to create natural transitions between multiple selections when you're creating collages.







Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 7-4:** Feathering creates soft-edged selections.

- ✓ **Mode:** The Mode drop-down list contains three settings:
  - *Normal:* The default setting, which allows you to freely drag a selection of any size.
  - *Fixed Aspect Ratio:* Lets you specify a fixed ratio of width to height. For example, if you enter **3** for width and **1** for height, you get a selection that's three times as wide as it is high, no matter what the size.
  - *Fixed Size:* Lets you specify desired values for the width and height. This setting can be useful when you need to make several selections that must be the same size.
- ✓ **Width and Height:** When you select Fixed Aspect Ratio or Fixed Size from the Mode drop-down list, you must also enter your desired values in the Width and Height text boxes. To swap the Width and Height values, click the double-headed arrow button between the two measurements.



The default unit of measurement in the Width and Height text boxes is pixels (px), but that doesn't mean that you're stuck with it. You can enter any unit of measurement that Elements recognizes — pixels, inches (in), centimeters (cm), millimeters (mm), points (pt), picas (pica), or percentages (%). Type your value and then type the word or abbreviation of your unit of measurement.

## Making Freeform Selections with the Lasso Tools

As we all know, you can't select everything with a rectangle or an ellipse. Life is just way too freeform for that. Most animate, and many inanimate, objects have undulations of varying sorts. Luckily, Elements anticipated the need to capture these and provided the Lasso tools.

The Lasso tools enable you to make any freehand selection you can think of. Elements generously provides three types of lasso tools:

- ✓ Lasso
- ✓ Polygonal
- ✓ Magnetic

Although all three tools are designed to make freeform selections, they differ slightly in their methodology, as we explain in the sections that follow.

To use these tools, all that's really required is a steady hand. You'll find that the more you use the Lasso tools, the better you become at your tracing technique. Don't worry if your initial lasso selection isn't super accurate. You can always go back and make corrections by adding and deleting from your selection. To find out how, see the section "Modifying Your Selections," later in this chapter.



If you find that you really love the Lasso tools, you may want to invest in a digital drawing tablet and stylus. This device makes tracing, and also drawing and painting, on the computer more comfortable. It better mimics pen and paper, and many users swear that they'll never go back to a mouse after trying it out.

### Selecting with the Lasso tool

Using the Lasso tool is the digital version of tracing an outline around an object on a piece of paper. It's that easy. And you have only three choices on the Options bar — Feather, Anti-Alias, and Refine Edge. To find out more about Feather and Anti-Alias, see the section "Applying marquee options," earlier in this chapter. For the scoop on Refine Edge, see the section "Wielding the wand to select," later in this chapter.

Here's how to make a selection with the Lasso tool:

**1. Select the Lasso tool from the Tools panel.**

It's the tool that looks like a rope. You can also just press the L key. If the Lasso tool isn't visible, press Shift+L to cycle through the various Lasso flavors.

**2. Position the cursor anywhere along the edge of the object you want to select.**

The leading point of the cursor is the protruding end of the rope, as shown in Figure 7-5. Don't be afraid to zoom in to your object if you need to see the edge more distinctly. In this figure, we started at the upper-left corner of the butterfly's wing.

**3. Hold down the mouse button and trace around your desired object.**

Try to include only what you want to select.

While you trace around your object, an outline follows the mouse cursor.



**Figure 7-5:** The Lasso tool makes freeform selections.



Try not to release the mouse button until you return to your starting point. When you release the mouse button, Elements assumes that you're done and closes the selection from wherever you released the mouse button to your starting point, creating a straight line across your image.

- 4. Continue tracing around the object and return to your starting point; release the mouse button to close the selection.**

You see a selection border that matches your lasso line. Look for a small circle that appears next to your lasso cursor when you return to your starting point. This icon indicates that you are closing the selection at the proper spot.

### *Getting straight with the Polygonal Lasso tool*

The Polygonal Lasso tool has a specific mission in life: to select any element whose sides are straight. Think pyramids, stairways, skyscrapers, barns — you get the idea. It also works a tad differently from the Lasso tool. You don't drag around the element with the Polygonal Lasso. Instead, you click and release the mouse button at the corners of the element you're selecting. The Polygonal Lasso tool acts like a stretchy rubber band.

Follow these steps to select with the Polygonal Lasso tool:

- 1. Select the Polygonal Lasso tool from the Tools panel.**

You can also press the L key and then press Shift+L until you get the Polygonal Lasso tool.

- 2. Click and release at any point to start the Polygonal Lasso selection line.**

We usually start at a corner.

- 3. Move (don't drag) the mouse and click at the next corner of the object. Continue clicking and moving to each corner of your element.**

Notice how the line stretches out from each point you click.

- 4. Return to your starting point and click to close the selection.**

Be on the lookout for a small circle that appears next to your lasso cursor when you return to your starting point. This circle is an indication that you're indeed closing the selection at the right spot.

Note that you can also double-click at any point, and Elements closes the selection from that point to the starting point.

After you close the polygonal lasso line, a selection border should appear, as shown in Figure 7-6.



## Snapping with the Magnetic Lasso tool

The third member of the Lasso team is the Magnetic Lasso. We aren't huge fans of this Lasso tool, which sometimes can be hard to work with. But we show you how it works so that you can decide whether to use it. The Magnetic Lasso tool works by defining the areas of the most contrast in an image and then snapping to the edge between those areas, as though the edge has a magnetic pull.



You have the most success using the Magnetic Lasso tool on an image that has a well-defined foreground object and high contrast between that element and the background — for example, a dark mountain range against a light sky.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 7-6:** After closing the polygonal lasso line, Elements creates a selection border.

The Magnetic Lasso tool also has some unique settings, which you can adjust on the Options bar before you start selecting:

- ✓ **Width:** Determines how close to the edge (between 1 and 256 pixels) you have to move your mouse before the Magnetic Lasso tool snaps to that edge. Use a lower value if the edge has a lot of detail or if the contrast in the image is low. Use a higher value for high-contrast images or smoother edges.
- ✓ **Edge Contrast:** Specifies the percentage of contrast (from 1 percent to 100 percent) that's required before the Magnetic Lasso snaps to an edge. Use a higher percentage if your image has good contrast between your desired element and the background.
- ✓ **Frequency:** Specifies how many fastening points (from 1 to 100) to place on the selection line. The higher the value, the greater number of points. As a general rule, if the element you want to select has a smooth edge, keep the value low. If the edge has a lot of detail, try a higher value.
- ✓ **Tablet Pressure (pen icon):** If you're the proud owner of a pressure-sensitive drawing tablet, select this option to make an increase in stylus pressure cause the edge width to decrease.



Follow these steps to use the Magnetic Lasso tool:

**1. Select the Magnetic Lasso tool from the Tools panel.**

You can also press the L key and then press Shift+L until you select the Magnetic Lasso tool. The tool looks like a straight-sided lasso with a little magnet on it.

**2. Click the edge of the object you want to select to place the first fastening point.**

Fastening points anchor the selection line, as shown in Figure 7-7. You can start anywhere; just be sure to click the edge between the element you want and the background you don't want.



*Corbis Digital Stock*

**Figure 7-7:** The Magnetic Lasso tool snaps to the edge of your element and places fastening points to anchor the selection.

**3. Continue to move your cursor around the object, without clicking.**

While the selection line gets pinned down with fastening points, only the newest portion of the selection line remains active.

If the Magnetic Lasso tool starts veering off the desired edge of your object, back up your mouse and click to force down a fastening point. Conversely, if the Magnetic Lasso tool adds a fastening point where you don't want one, press your Backspace (Delete on the Mac) key to delete it.



If the Magnetic Lasso isn't cooperating, you can temporarily switch to the other Lasso tools. To select the Lasso tool, hold down Alt (Option on the Mac) and then click the mouse button and drag. To select the Polygonal Lasso tool, hold down Alt (Option on the Mac) and click.

**4. Return to your starting point and click the mouse button to close the selection.**

You see a small circle next to your cursor, indicating that you're at the right spot to close the selection. You can also double-click, whereby Elements closes the selection from where you double-clicked to your starting point. The selection border appears when the selection is closed.

## *Working Wizardry with the Magic Wand*

The Magic Wand tool is one of the oldest tools in the world of digital imaging. This beloved tool has been around since both Photoshop and Elements were in their infancies. It's extremely easy to use, but a little harder to predict what selection results it will present.

Here's how it works: You click inside the image, and the Magic Wand tool makes a selection. This selection is based on the color of the pixel you clicked. If other pixels are similar in color to your target pixel, Elements includes them in the selection. What's sometimes hard to predict, however, is how to determine *how* similar the color has to be to get the Magic Wand tool to select it. Fortunately, that's where the Tolerance setting comes in. In the sections that follow, we first introduce you to this setting and then explain how to put the Magic Wand to work.

### *Talking about tolerance*

The Tolerance setting determines the range of color that the Magic Wand tool selects. It's based on brightness levels that range from 0 to 255:

- ✓ Setting the Tolerance to 0 selects one color only.
- ✓ Setting the Tolerance to 255 selects all colors or the whole image.

The default setting is 32, so whenever you click a pixel, Elements analyzes the value of that base color and then selects all pixels whose brightness levels are between 16 levels lighter and 16 levels darker.

What if an image contains a few shades of the same color? It's not a huge problem. You can make multiple clicks of the Magic Wand to pick up additional pixels that you want to include in the selection. You can find out how in the section "Modifying Your Selections," later in this chapter. Or, you can



try a higher Tolerance setting. Conversely, if your wand selects too much, you can also lower your Tolerance setting.



So, you can see by our talk on tolerance that the Magic Wand tool works best when you have high-contrast images or images with a limited number of colors. For example, the optimum image for the Wand would be a solid black object on a white background. Skip the wand if the image has a ton of colors and no real definitive contrast between your desired element and the background.

## Wielding the wand to select

To use the Magic Wand tool to adjust Tolerance settings, follow these steps:

### 1. Select the Magic Wand tool from the Tools panel.

You can't miss it. It looks like a wand with a starburst on the end. You can also just press W.

### 2. Click anywhere on your desired element, using the default Tolerance setting of 32.

Remember that the pixel you click determines the base color.

If the pixel gods are with you and you selected everything you want on the first click, you're done. If your selection needs further tweaking, like the top image shown in Figure 7-8, continue to Step 3.

### 3. Specify a new Tolerance setting on the Options bar.

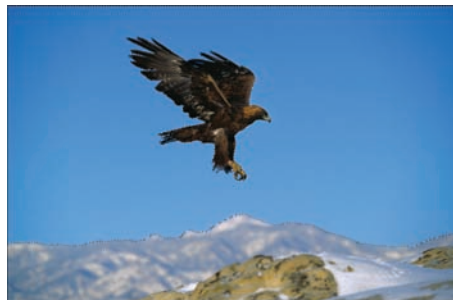
If the Magic Wand selects more than you want, lower the Tolerance setting. If the wand didn't select enough, increase the value. While you're poking around the Options bar, here are a couple more options to get familiar with:

- *Anti-Alias*: Softens the edge of the selection by one row of pixels. See the section "Applying marquee options," earlier in this chapter, for details.

Tolerance 32



Tolerance 80



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 7-8:** The Magic Wand selects pixels based on a specified Tolerance setting.

- *Contiguous*: Forces the Magic Wand to select only pixels that are adjacent to each other. Without this option, the tool selects all pixels within the range of tolerance, whether or not they're adjacent to each other.
- *All Layers*: If you have multiple layers and enable this option, the Magic Wand selects pixels from all visible layers. Without this option, the tool selects pixels from the active layer only. For more on layers, see Chapter 8.
- *Refine Edge*: Clean up your selection by moving the Smooth slider to reduce the amount of jaggedness in your edges. Feather works like the feather option discussed in the “Applying marquee options” section, earlier in the chapter. Move the Contract/Expand slider to the left or right to decrease or increase the selected area, respectively. Click the custom overlay color button to preview your selection with your edges hidden and an overlay of screen-only color in your unselected area. For more details, see the section “Refining the edges of a selection,” later in this chapter.

#### 4. Click your desired element again.

Unfortunately, the Magic Wand tool isn't magical enough to modify your first selection automatically. Instead, it deselects the current selection and makes a new selection based on your new Tolerance setting. If it still isn't right, you can adjust the Tolerance setting again. Try, try again.

## Modifying Your Selections

It's time for a seventh-inning stretch in this chapter on selection tools. In this section, you can find out how to refine that Marquee, Lasso, or Magic Wand selection to perfection. Although these tools do an okay job of capturing the bulk of your selection, if you take the time to add or subtract a bit from your selection border, you can ensure that you get only what you really want.



You're not limited to the manual methods described in the following sections, or even to keyboard shortcuts. You can also use the four selection option buttons on the left side of the Options bar to create a new selection (the default), add to a selection, subtract from a selection, or intersect one selection with another. Just choose your desired selection tool, click the selection option button you want, and drag (or click if you're using the Magic Wand or Polygonal Lasso tool). The Add to Selection and Subtract from Selection buttons are also available when you're using the Selection Brush. When you're adding to a selection, a small plus sign (+) appears next to your cursor. When you're subtracting from a selection, a small minus sign (-) appears. When you're intersecting two selections, a small multiplication sign (×) appears.

## Adding to a selection

If your selection doesn't quite contain all the elements you want to capture, you need to add those portions to your current selection border. To add to a current selection, simply press the Shift key and drag around the area you want to include. If you're using the Polygonal Lasso, click around the area. And, if you're wielding the Magic Wand, just press the Shift key and click the area you want.



You don't have to use the same tool to add to your selection that you used to create the original selection. Feel free to use whatever selection tool you think can get the job done. For example, it's very common to start off with the Magic Wand and fine-tune with the Lasso tool.

## Subtracting from a selection

Got too much? To subtract from a current selection, press the Alt (Option on the Mac) key and drag around the pixels you want to subtract. With the Alt (Option on the Mac) key, use the same method for the Magic Wand and Polygonal Lasso as you do for adding to a selection.

## Intersecting two selections

Get your fingers in shape. To intersect your existing selection with a second selection, press Shift+Alt (Shift+Option on the Mac) and drag with the Lasso tool. Or, if you're using the Magic Wand or Polygonal Lasso, press those keys and click rather than drag.

## Avoiding key collisions

If you read the beginning of this chapter, you found out that by pressing the Shift key, you get a perfectly square or circular selection. We told you in the section "Adding to a selection," earlier in this chapter, that if you want to add to a selection, you press the Shift key. What if you want to create a perfect square while adding to the selection? Or, what if you want to delete part of a selection while also drawing from the center outward? Both require the use of the Alt (Option on the Mac) key. How in the heck does Elements know what you want? Here are a few tips to avoid keyboard collisions — grab your desired Marquee tool:

- ✓ **To add a square or circular selection, press Shift and drag.** While you drag, keep the mouse button pressed, release the Shift key for just a second, and then press it again. Your added selection area suddenly snaps into a square or circle. You must then release the mouse button first and then release the Shift key.

- ✓ **To delete from an existing selection while drawing from the center outward, press Alt (Option on the Mac) and drag.** While you drag, keep the mouse button pressed, release the Alt (Option on the Mac) key for just a second, and then press it down again. You're now drawing from the center outward. Again, release the mouse button first and then release the Alt (Option on the Mac) key.

## Painting with the Selection Brush

If you like the organic feel of painting on a canvas, you'll appreciate the Selection Brush. Using two different modes, you can either paint over areas of an image that you want to select or paint over areas you don't want to select. This great tool also lets you make a basic, rudimentary selection with another tool, such as the Lasso, and then fine-tune the selection by brushing additional pixels into or out of the selection.

Here's the step-by-step process of selecting with the Selection Brush:

### 1. Select the Selection Brush from the Tools panel.

Or, simply press the A key. Press Shift+A if the Quick Selection tool is visible.

This tool works in either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode.

### 2. Specify your Selection Brush options on the Options bar.

Here's the rundown on each option:

- **Brush Presets:** Choose a brush from the presets drop-down panel. To load additional brushes, click the downward-pointing arrow to the left of Default Brushes and choose the preset library of your choice. You can select the Load Brushes command from the panel pop-up menu.
- **Brush Size:** Specify a brush size, from 1 to 2500 pixels. Enter the value or drag the slider.
- **Mode:** Choose between Selection and Mask. Choose Selection to add to your selection and choose Mask to subtract from your selection. If you choose Mask mode, you must choose some additional overlay options. An *overlay* is a layer of color (that shows onscreen only) that hovers over your image, indicating protected or unselected areas. You must also choose an overlay opacity between 1 and 100 percent (which we describe in a Tip paragraph at the end of this section). You can also change the overlay color from the default red to another color. This option can be helpful if your image contains a lot of red.
- **Hardness:** Set the hardness of the brush tip, from 1 to 100 percent.

**3. If your mode is set to Selection, paint over the areas you want to select.**

You see a selection border. Each stroke adds to the selection. If you inadvertently add something you don't want, simply press the Alt (Option on the Mac) key and paint over the undesired area. After you finish painting what you want, your selection is ready to go.

**4. If your mode is set to Mask, paint over the areas that you *don't* want to select.**

This mode does the opposite of Selection mode. When you're done painting your mask, choose Selection from the Mode drop-down list, or simply choose another tool from the Tools panel, in order to convert your mask into a selection border.

While you paint, you see the color of your overlay. Each stroke adds more to the overlay area, as shown in Figure 7-9. When working in Mask mode, you're essentially covering up, or *masking*, the areas you want to protect from manipulation. That manipulation can be selecting, adjusting color, or performing any other Elements command. Again, if you want to remove parts of the masked area, press Alt (Option on the Mac) and paint.



**Figure 7-9:** The Selection Brush allows you to make a selection (right) by creating a mask (left).



If you painted your selection in Mask mode, your selection border is around what you *don't* want. To switch to what you do want, choose Select⇨Inverse.



Which mode should you choose? Well, it's up to you. But one advantage to working in Mask mode is that you can partially select areas. By painting with soft brushes, you create soft-edged selections. These soft edges result in partially selected pixels. If you set the overlay opacity to a lower percentage, your pixels are even less opaque, or “less selected.” If this partially selected business sounds vaguely familiar, it's because this is also what happens when you feather selections, as we discuss in the section “Applying marquee options,” earlier in this chapter.

## Painting with the Quick Selection Brush

Think of the Quick Selection Brush as a combination Brush, Magic Wand, and Lasso tool. Good news — it lives up to its “quick” moniker. Better news — it's also easy to use. The best news? It gives decent results, so give it a whirl.

Here's how to make short work of selecting with this tool:

### 1. Select the Quick Selection tool from the Tools panel.

The tool looks like a wand with a marquee around the end. It shares the same flyout menu with the Selection Brush tool. You can also press the A key. Press Shift+A if the Selection Brush is visible.

This tool works in either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode.



### 2. Specify the options on the Options bar.

Here's a description of the options:

- *New Selection*: The default option enables you to create a new selection. There are also options to add to and subtract from your selection.
- *Brush Picker*: Choose your desired brush settings. Specify the diameter, from 1 to 2500 pixels. You can also specify hardness, spacing, angle, and roundness settings. For details on these settings, see Chapter 12.
- *All Layers*: If your image has layers and you want to make a selection from all the layers, select this option. If you leave it unselected, you will select only from the current layer.
- *Auto-Enhance*: Check this option to have Elements automatically refine your selection by implementing an algorithm.

### 3. Drag, or paint, the desired areas of your image.



Your selection grows as you drag, as shown in Figure 7-10. If you stop dragging and click in another portion of your image, your selection includes that clicked area.

**4. Add to or delete from your selection, as desired:**

- *To add to your selection:* Press the Shift key while dragging across your desired image areas.
- *To delete from your selection:* Press the Alt (Option on the Mac) key while dragging across your unwanted image areas.

You can also select the Add to Selection and Subtract from Selection options in the Options bar.

**5. If you need to fine-tune your selection, click the Refine Edge option in the Options bar and then change the settings, as desired.**

The settings are explained in detail in the “Refining the edges of a selection” section, later in this chapter.

Note that if your object is fairly detailed, you may even need to break out the Lasso or another selection tool to make some final cleanups. Eventually, you should arrive at a selection you’re happy with.



[www.istockphoto.com](http://www.istockphoto.com)

**Figure 7-10:** Paint a selection with the Quick Selection tool.

## Working with the Cookie Cutter Tool

The Cookie Cutter tool is a cute name for a pretty powerful tool. You can think of it as a Custom Shape tool for images. But, although the Custom Shape tool creates a mask and just hides everything outside the shape, the Cookie Cutter cuts away everything outside the shape. The preset libraries offer you a large variety of interesting shapes, from talk bubbles to Swiss cheese. (We’re not being funny here — check out the food library.)



Here's the lowdown on using the Cookie Cutter:

**1. Choose the Cookie Cutter tool from the Tools panel.**

There's no missing it; it looks like a star. You can also press the Q key.

**2. Specify your options on the Options bar.**

Here's the list:

- *Shape*: Choose a shape from the preset library. To load other libraries, click the panel pop-up menu and choose one from the submenu.
- *Shape Options*: These options let you draw your shape with certain parameters:

**Unconstrained**: Enables you to draw freely.

**Defined Proportions**: Enables you to keep the height and width proportional.

**Defined Size**: Crops the image to the original, fixed size of the shape you choose. You can't make it bigger or smaller.

**Fixed Size**: Allows you to enter your desired width and height.

**From Center**: Allows you to draw the shape from the center outward.

- *Feather*: This option creates a soft-edged selection. See the section "Applying marquee options," earlier in this chapter, for more details.
- *Crop*: Click this option to crop the image into the shape. The shape will fill the image window.

**3. Drag your mouse on the image to create your desired shape, size the shape by dragging one of the handles of the bounding box, and position the shape by placing the mouse cursor inside the box and dragging.**

You can also perform other types of transformations, such as rotating and skewing. For more on transformations, see Chapter 9.

**4. Click the Commit button on the Options bar or press Enter to finish the cutout.**

See Figure 7-11 to see my image cut into an elephant shape. If you want to bail out of the bounding box and not cut out, you can always press the Cancel button on the Options bar or press Esc.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 7-11:** Crop your photo into interesting shapes with the Cookie Cutter.

## *Eliminating with the Eraser Tools*

The Eraser tools let you erase areas of your image. Elements has three eraser tools: the regular Eraser, the Magic Eraser, and the Background Eraser. The Eraser tools look like those pink erasers you used in grade school, so you can't miss them. If you can't locate them, you can always press E and then Shift+E to toggle through the three tools.



When you erase pixels, those pixels are history — they're gone. So, before using the Eraser tools, you should probably have a backup of your image stored somewhere. Think of it as a cheap insurance policy in case things go awry.

### *The Eraser tool*

The Eraser tool enables you to erase areas on your image to either your background color or, if you're working on a layer, a transparent background, as shown in Figure 7-12. For more on layers, check out Chapter 8.

To use this tool, simply select it and drag through the desired area on your image, and you're done. Because it isn't the most accurate tool on the planet, remember to zoom way in and use smaller brush tips to do some accurate erasing.

You have several Eraser options to specify on the Options bar:



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 7-12:** Erase either to your background color (left) or to transparency (right).

- ✓ **Brush Presets:** Click the drop-down panel to access the Brush presets. Choose the brush of your choice. Again, additional brush libraries are available in the Brushes pop-up menu.
- ✓ **Size:** Click the down-pointing arrow to access the Size slider. Choose a brush size between 1 and 2500 pixels.
- ✓ **Mode:** Select from Brush, Pencil, and Block. When you select Block, you're stuck with one size (a 16-x-16-pixel tip) and can't select other preset brushes.
- ✓ **Opacity:** Specify a percentage of transparency for your erased areas. The lower the Opacity setting, the less it erases. Opacity isn't available in Block mode.

## The Background Eraser tool

The Background Eraser tool, which is more savvy than the Eraser tool, erases the background from an image while being mindful of leaving the foreground untouched. The Background Eraser tool erases to transparency on a layer. If you drag an image with only a background, Elements converts the background into a layer.



The key to using the Background Eraser is to carefully keep the *hot spot*, the crosshair at the center of the brush, on the background pixels while you drag. The hot spot samples the color of the pixels and deletes that color whenever it falls inside the brush circumference. But, if you accidentally touch a foreground pixel with the hot spot, it's erased as well. And the tool isn't even sorry about it! This tool works better with images that have good contrast in color between the background and foreground objects, as shown in Figure 7-13. Also, if your image has very detailed or wispy edges (such as hair or fur), you're better off using the Magic Extractor command, which we describe in the section "Using the Magic Extractor Command," later in this chapter.

Here's the rundown on the Background Eraser options:

✔ **Brush Preset Picker:** This option provides settings to customize the size and appearance of your brush tip. The Size and Tolerance settings at the bottom are for pressure-sensitive drawing tablets.

✔ **Limits:** *Discontiguous* erases all similarly colored pixels wherever they appear in the image. *Contiguous* erases all similarly colored pixels that are adjacent to those under the hot spot.

✔ **Tolerance:** Like the Magic Wand and the Magic Eraser, the Background Eraser uses a Tolerance setting. The percentage determines how similar the colors have to be to that of the color under the hot spot before Elements erases them. A higher value picks up more colors, whereas a lower value picks up fewer colors. See the section “Talking about tolerance,” earlier in this chapter, for more details.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 7-13:** The Background Eraser erases similarly colored pixels sampled by the hot spot of your brush cursor.

## The Magic Eraser tool

You can think of the Magic Eraser tool as a combination Eraser and Magic Wand tool. It selects *and* erases similarly colored pixels simultaneously. Unless you're working on a layer with the transparency locked (see Chapter 8 for more on locking), the pixels are erased to transparency. If you're working on an image with just a background, Elements converts the background into a layer.

The Magic Eraser shares most of the same options with the other erasers. Here are the unique options:

- ✔ **Anti-Alias:** Creates a slightly soft edge around the transparent area.
- ✔ **All Layers:** Samples colors using data from all visible layers but erases pixels on the active layer only.

## Using the Magic Extractor Command

The last selection tool in the Elements repertoire is the Magic Extractor command. This command enables you to make selections based on your identification of the foreground and background portions of your image. The way this tool works is you specify your foreground and background by simply

clicking these areas with the brush tool and “marking” them. Click the magic OK button, and your object or objects are neatly and painlessly extracted.



Although it isn't mandatory, you can make a rough selection first before selecting the Magic Extractor command. This technique obviously restricts what's extracted and can result in a more accurate selection.

Follow these steps to magically extract your element:

- 1. Choose Image → Magic Extractor.**

The huge Magic Extractor dialog box appears.

- 2. Grab the Foreground Brush tool, and click or drag to mark your *foreground* areas — or the areas you want to select.**

The default color of the Foreground Brush is red, as shown in Figure 7-14.

Like with the Selection brush, the more accurate the data you provide to the command's algorithm, the more accurate your extraction. Be sure to use the Zoom and Hand tools to help magnify and move around your image, as needed. For more on these tools, see Chapter 5.

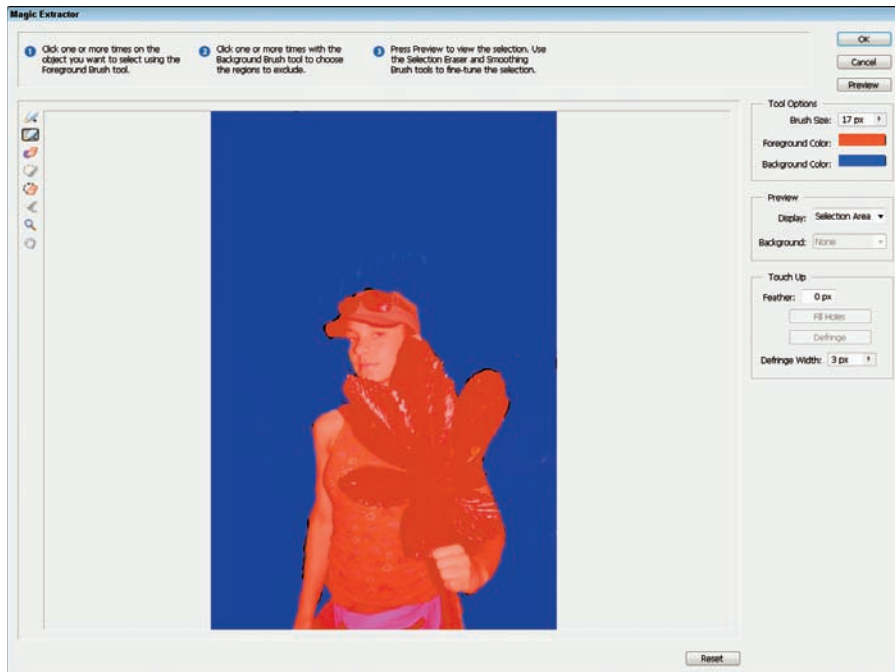


Photo Credit: [www.dreamstime.com](http://www.dreamstime.com)

**Figure 7-14:** The Magic Extractor allows you to identify foreground and background areas.

You can also change the size of your brush tip (from 1 to 100 pixels) in the Tool Options area on the right side of the dialog box. If necessary, change the color of your foreground and background colors by clicking the swatch and choosing a new color from the Color Picker.

**3. Select the Background Brush tool, and click or drag to mark the background area or the portions you don't want to select.**

The default color of the Background Brush is blue.

**4. Click Preview to view your extraction.**

Elements churns for a few seconds before presenting you with a look at your extraction. You can change the preview by choosing either Selection Area or Original Photo from the Display pop-up list.

If you want to see your selection against a different background, choose one, such as black matte for a black background, from the Background pop-up list.

**5. If you aren't happy with the preview of your selection, you can refine the selection:**

- *To erase any markings:* Select the Point Eraser tool, and click or drag over the offending areas.
- *To add areas to the selection:* Click or drag over your desired areas with the Add to Selection tool.
- *To delete areas from the selection:* Drag with the Remove from Selection tool.
- *To smooth the edges of your foreground selection:* Drag over the edges with the Smoothing Brush tool.
- *To soften the edges of your selection:* Enter a value in the Feather box. **Remember:** The higher the value, the softer the edge.
- *To fill a hole:* Click the aptly named Fill Holes button.
- *To remove the halo of pixels between the foreground and background areas:* Click Defringe. Enter a value in the Defringe Width box.

If things start to get messy, you can always start over by clicking Reset at the bottom of the dialog box.

**6. When you're pleased with the results, click OK to finish the selection process and close the Magic Extractor dialog box.**

Your newly extracted image appears as a new file, as shown in Figure 7-15.



## Using the Select Menu

In the following sections, we breeze through the Select menu. Along with the methods we describe in the “Modifying Your Selections” section, earlier in this chapter, you can use this menu to further modify selections by expanding, contracting, smoothing, softening, inverting, growing, and grabbing similarly colored pixels. If that doesn’t satisfy your selection needs, nothing will.

### Selecting all or nothing

The Select All and Deselect commands are no-brainers. To select everything in your image, choose Select⇧All or press Ctrl+A (⌘+A on the Mac). To deselect everything, choose Select⇧Deselect or press Ctrl+D (⌘+D on the Mac). Remember that you usually don’t have to Select All. If you don’t have a selection border in your image, Elements assumes that the whole image is fair game for any manipulation.

### Reselecting a selection

If you sacrifice that second cup of coffee to steady your hand and take the time to carefully lasso around your desired object, you don’t want to lose your selection before you have a chance to perform your next move. But all it takes is a mere inadvertent click of your mouse while you have an active selection border to obliterate your selection. Fortunately, Elements anticipated such a circumstance and offers a solution. If you choose Select⇧Reselect, Elements retrieves your last selection.

One caveat: The Reselect command works only for the last selection you made, so don’t plan to reselect a selection you made last Tuesday or even just five minutes ago, if you selected something else after that selection. If you want to reuse a selection for the long term, you need to save it, as we explain in the section “Saving and loading selections,” later in this chapter.

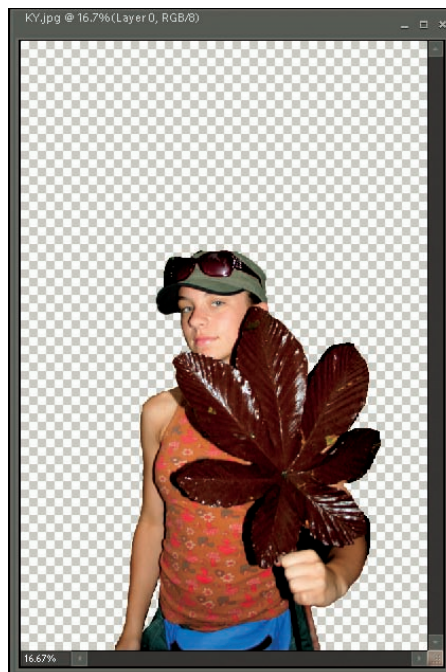


Photo Credit: [www.dreamstime.com](http://www.dreamstime.com)

**Figure 7-15:** A girl selected with the Magic Extractor.





## Inversing a selection

You know the old song lyric: “If you can’t be with the one you love, love the one you’re with.” Well, Elements is kind of like that. Sometimes, it’s just easier to select what you don’t want rather than what you do want. For example, if you’re trying to select your beloved in his or her senior photo, it’s probably easier to just click the studio backdrop with the Magic Wand and then inverse the selection by choosing **Select**⇨**Inverse**.

## Feathering a selection

In the “Applying marquee options” section, earlier in this chapter, we describe how to feather a selection when using the Lasso and Marquee tools by entering a value in the Feather box on the Options bar. Remember that this method of feathering requires that you set the Feather value *before* you create your selection. What we didn’t tell you is that there’s a way to apply a feather *after* you make a selection.

Choose **Select**⇨**Feather** and enter your desired amount from .2 to 250 pixels. Your selection is subsequently softened around the edges.



This method is actually a better way to go. Make your selection and fine-tune it by using the methods we describe earlier in this chapter. Then, apply your feather. The problem with applying the feather before you make a selection happens when you want to modify your initial selection. When you make a selection with a feather, the marquee outline of the selection adjusts to take into account the amount of the feather. So, the resulting marquee outline doesn’t resemble your precise mouse movement, making it harder to modify that selection.

## Refining the edges of a selection

This Refine Edge option enables you to fine-tune the edges of your selection. It doesn’t matter how you got the selection, just that you have one. You can find the command in the Options bar of the Magic Wand, Lasso, and Quick Selection tools. And, of course, you can find it in the **Select** menu. Here’s the scoop on each of the settings in this option:

- ✓ **Smooth:** Reduces the amount of jaggedness along your selection edges.
- ✓ **Feather:** Moves the slider to create an increasingly softer, more blurred edge.
- ✓ **Contract/Expand:** Decreases or increases the selected area. The contract and expand features are discussed in more detail in the later section “Using the Modify commands.”
- ✓ **Background icons:** Enables you to preview your selection in Standard or Overlay mode. Click the custom overlay color button to preview your

selection with your edges hidden and a semi-opaque layer of color (that shows onscreen only) in your unselected area. Double-click this icon to change the color and opacity of the overlay. Press F to cycle between standard and overlay views. And press X to hide your selection edges.

- ✓ **Zoom tool:** Allows you to zoom in to your image to see the effects of your settings.
- ✓ **Hand tool:** Enables you to pan around your image window to see the effects of your settings.

## Using the Modify commands

Although the commands on the Modify submenu definitely won't win any popularity contests, they may occasionally come in handy. Here's the scoop on each command:

- ✓ **Border:** Selects the area, from 1 to 200 pixels, around the edge of the selection border. By choosing **Edit** ⇨ **Fill Selection**, you can fill the border with color, as shown in Figure 7-16.
- ✓ **Smooth:** Rounds off any jagged, raggedy edges. Enter a value from 1 to 100 pixels, and Elements looks at each selected pixel and then includes or deselects the pixels in your selection based on your chosen value. Start with a low number, like 1, 2, or 3 pixels. Otherwise, it may make your selection worse.
- ✓ **Expand:** Enables you to increase the size of your selection by a given number of pixels, from 1 to 100. This command is especially useful if you just barely missed getting the edge of an elliptical selection and need it to be a little larger.
- ✓ **Contract:** Decreases your selection border by 1 to 100 pixels. When you're compositing multiple images, you often benefit by slightly contracting your selection if you plan on applying a feather. That way, you avoid picking up a fringe of background pixels around your selection.



*Corbis Digital Stock*

**Figure 7-16:** Fill a border with color to create a stroke around your object.

## Applying the Grow and Similar commands

The Grow and Similar commands are often used in tandem with the Magic Wand tool. If you made an initial selection with the Magic Wand but didn't quite get everything you want, try choosing **Select** ⇨ **Grow**. The Grow command increases

the size of the selection by including adjacent pixels that fall within the range of tolerance. The Similar command is like Grow except that the pixels don't have to be adjacent to be selected. The command searches throughout the image and picks up pixels within the tolerance range.

These commands don't have their own tolerance options. They use whatever Tolerance value is displayed on the Options bar when the Magic Wand tool is selected. You can adjust that Tolerance setting to include more or fewer colors.

## *Saving and loading selections*

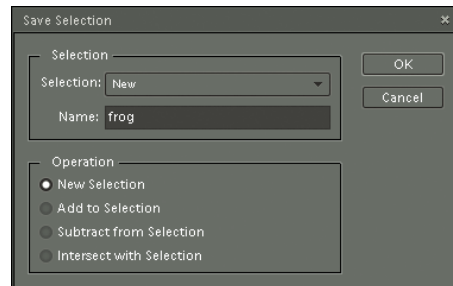
There may be times when you toil so long over a complex selection that you really want to save it for future use. Saving it isn't only possible, but also highly recommended. It's also a piece a cake. Here's how:

- 1. After you perfect your selection, choose **Select**⇨**Save Selection**.**
- 2. In the Save Selection dialog box, leave the Selection option set to New and enter a name for your selection, as shown in Figure 7-17.**

The operation is automatically set to New Selection.

- 3. Click OK.**
- 4. When you want to access the selection again, choose **Select**⇨**Load Selection** and choose a selection from the Selection drop-down list.**

To inverse your selection, click the Invert box. Notice that you now have available options to add to, subtract from, or intersect with your selection. These options can come in handy if you want to modify your existing selection. For example, you may select the center and petals of a flower, but not the stem and leaves. You later decide that you really need the whole flower. Rather than make a whole new selection, you can select just the stem and leaves and then choose Add to Selection, and you have your whole flower. If you want, you can then save the flower as a new selection for later use.



**Figure 7-17:** Save your selection for later use to save time and effort.

# Working with Layers

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Getting to know layers and the Layers panel
- ▶ Working with the Layer and Select menus
- ▶ Using different layer types
- ▶ Creating new layers
- ▶ Moving and transforming layers
- ▶ Merging and flattening layers

Using Elements without ever using layers would be like typing a book on an old IBM Selectric typewriter: Sure, you could do it, but it wouldn't be fun. An even bigger issue would occur when it came time to edit that book and make changes. Correction tape, Wite-Out, and erasers would make that task downright tedious, not to mention messy. The benefit of using layers is that you have tremendous flexibility. You can quickly make as many edits as you want for as long as you want, as long as you keep your composite image in layers. Layers make working in Elements a lot more productive. Don't give a darn about productivity? Well, let's just say that layers also make it a breeze for you to dabble in your more artsy side. This chapter gives you everything you need to know about layers. After you try them out, you'll wonder how you ever lived without them.



## *Getting to Know Layers*

Think of layers as sheets of acetate or clear transparency film. You have drawings or photographs on individual sheets. What you place on each sheet doesn't affect any of the other sheets. Any area on the sheet that doesn't have an image on it is transparent. You can stack these sheets on top of the others to create a combined image, or *composite* (or *collage*, if you prefer). You can reshuffle the order of the sheets, add new sheets, and delete old sheets.

In Elements, *layers* are essentially a digital version of these clear acetate sheets. You can place elements, such as images, type, or shapes on separate layers and create a composite, as shown in Figure 8-1. You can hide, add, delete, or rearrange layers. Because layers are digital, of course, they have some added functionality. You can adjust how opaque or transparent the element on the layer is. You can also add special effects and change how the colors interact between layers.



To work with layers, you must be in the Editor in Full Edit mode.



Corbis, PhotoDisc/Getty Images

**Figure 8-1:** Layers enable you to easily create composite images.

When you create a new file with background contents of white or a background color, scan an image into Elements, or open a file from a CD or your digital camera, you basically have a file with just a *background*. There are no layers yet.

An image contains only one background, and you can't do much to it besides paint on it and make basic adjustments. You can't move the background or change its transparency or blend mode. How do you get around all these limitations? Convert your background into a layer by following these easy steps:

**1. Choose Window⇨Layers to display the Layers panel.**

The Layers panel is explained in detail in the next section.

**2. Double-click Background on the Layers panel.**

Or, choose Layer⇨New⇨Layer from Background.

**3. Name the layer or leave it at the default name of Layer 0.**

You can also adjust the blend mode and opacity of the layer in the New Layer dialog box. You can also do it via the Layers panel commands later.

**4. Click OK.**

Elements converts your background into a layer, known also as an *image layer*.

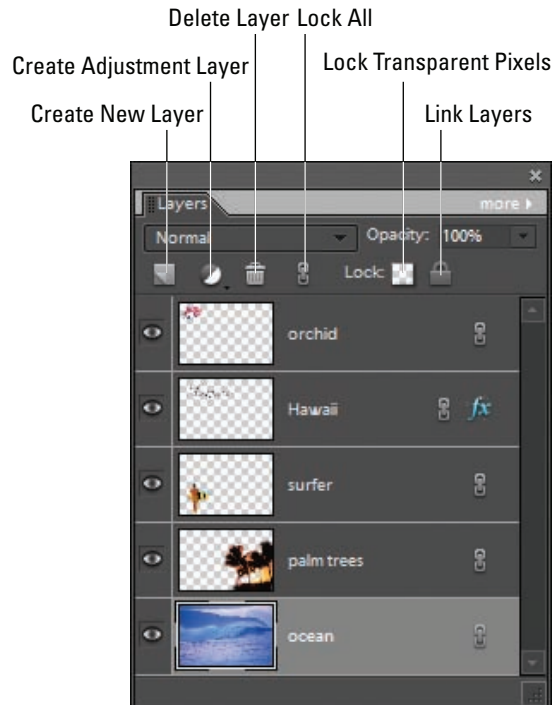
When you create a new image with transparent background contents, the image doesn't contain a background but instead is created with a single layer.



## Anatomy of a Layers panel

Elements keeps layers controlled on their own panel named, not surprisingly, the *Layers panel*. To display the Layers panel, as shown in Figure 8-2, choose Window⇨Layers in the Editor in Full Edit mode.

The order of the layers on the Layers panel represents the order in the image. We refer to this concept in the computer graphics world as the *stacking order*. The top layer on the panel is the top layer in your image, and so on. Depending on what you're doing, you can work either on a single layer or on multiple layers at one time. Here are some tips for working with the Layers panel:



**Figure 8-2:** The Layers panel controls layers in your image.



- ✓ **Select a layer.** Click a layer name or its thumbnail. Elements highlights the *active layer* on the panel.
- ✓ **Select multiple contiguous layers.** Click your first layer and then Shift-click your last layer.
- ✓ **Select multiple noncontiguous layers.** Ctrl-click (⌘-click on the Mac) your desired layers.
- ✓ **View and hide layers.** To hide a layer, click the eye icon for that layer so that the eye disappears. To redisplay the layer, click the blank space in the eye column. You can also hide all the layers except one by selecting your desired layer and Alt-clicking (Option-clicking on the Mac) the eye icon for that layer. Redisplay all layers by Alt-clicking (Option-clicking on the Mac) the eye icon again. Hiding all the layers except the one you want to edit can be helpful in allowing you to focus without the distraction of all the other imagery.



Only layers that are visible are printed. This can be useful if you want to have several versions of an image (each on a separate layer) for a project within the same file.

- ✓ **Select the actual element (the nontransparent pixels) on the layer.** Ctrl-click (⌘-click on the Mac) the layer's thumbnail (not the name) on the panel.
- ✓ **Create a new blank layer.** Click the Create New Layer icon at the top of the panel.
- ✓ **Create an adjustment layer.** Click the Create Adjustment Layer icon at the top of the panel. Adjustment layers are special layers that modify contrast and color in your image. You can also add *fill layers* — layers containing color, gradients, or patterns — by using this command. We give you more details on adjustment and fill layers in the section “Working with Different Layer Types,” later in this chapter.
- ✓ **Duplicate an existing layer.** Drag the layer to the Create New Layer icon at the top of the panel.
- ✓ **Rearrange layers.** To move a layer to another position in the stacking order, drag the layer up or down on the Layers panel. While you drag, you see a fist icon. Release the mouse button when a highlighted line appears where you want to insert the layer.



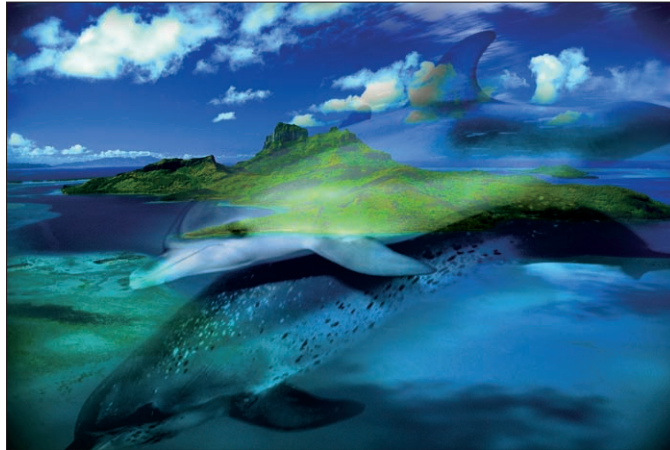
If your image has a background, it always remains the bottommost layer. If you need to move the background, convert it to a layer by double-clicking the name on the Layers panel. Enter a name for the layer and click OK.

- ✓ **Rename a layer.** When you create a new layer, Elements provides default layer names (Layer 1, Layer 2, and so on). If you want to rename



a layer, double-click the layer name on the Layers panel and enter the name directly on the Layers panel.

- ✔ **Adjust the interaction between colors on layers and adjust the transparency of layers.** You can use the blend modes and the opacity options at the top of the panel to mix the colors between layers and adjust the transparency of the layers, as shown in Figure 8-3.



*Corbis Digital Stock*

**Figure 8-3:** We created this effect by using blend modes and opacity options.

- ✔ **Link layers.** Sometimes, you want your layers to stay grouped as a unit to make your editing tasks easier. If so, link your layers by selecting the layers on the panel and then clicking the Link Layers icon at the top of the panel. A link icon appears to the right of the layer name. To remove the link, click the Link Layers icon again.
- ✔ **Lock layers.** Select your desired layer and then click one of the two lock icons at the top of the panel. The checkerboard square icon locks all transparent areas of your layers. This lock prevents you from painting or editing any transparent areas on the layers. The lock icon locks your entire layer and prevents it from being changed in any way, including moving or transforming the elements on the layer. You can, however, still make selections on the layer. To unlock the layer, simply click the icon again to toggle off the lock.

By default, the background is locked and can't be unlocked until you convert the background into a layer by choosing Layer ⇨ New ⇨ Layer from Background.

- ✔ **Delete a layer.** Drag it to the trash can icon.



## Using the Layer and Select menus

As with many features in Elements, you usually have more than one way to do something. This is especially true when it comes to working with layers. Besides the commands on the Layers panel, you have two layer menus — the Layers menu and the Select menu, both of which you can find on the main menu bar at the top of the application window.

### The Layers menu

Much of what you can do with the Layers panel icons you can also do by using the Layer menu on the menu bar and the Layers panel pop-up menu connected to the Layers panel (click the More button in the upper-right corner). Commands, such as New, Duplicate, Delete, and Rename, are omnipresent throughout. But you find commands that are exclusive to the Layers panel, the main Layer menu, and the Layers pop-up menu, respectively. So, if you can't find what you're looking for in one area, just go to another. Some commands require an expanded explanation and are described in sections that follow. Here's a quick description of most of the commands:

- ✔ **Delete Linked Layers and Delete Hidden Layers:** These commands delete only those layers that have been linked or hidden from display on the Layers panel.
- ✔ **Layer Style:** These commands manage the styles, or special effects, you apply to your layers.
- ✔ **Change Layer Content:** Depending on the type of layer you've selected, this command enables you to change or adjust the contents of your layer. For example, you can change the contents of a shape layer from a solid color into a pattern.
- ✔ **Arrange:** Enables you to shuffle your layer stacking order with commands, such as Bring to Front and Send to Back. Reverse switches the order of your layers if you have two or more layers selected.
- ✔ **Group with Previous and Ungroup:** The Group command creates a *clipping group*, in which a group of layers is constrained to the boundaries of a base layer. Find more details in the section "Adjustment layers," later in this chapter.
- ✔ **Type:** The commands in the Type submenu control the display of type layers. For more on type, see Chapter 13.
- ✔ **Rename Layer:** Enables you to give a layer a new name. You can also simply double-click the name on the Layers panel.
- ✔ **Simplify:** This command converts a type layer, shape layer, or fill layer into a regular image layer. Briefly, a *shape layer* contains a vector object, and a *fill layer* contains a solid color, a gradient, or a pattern.

- ✓ **Merge and Flatten:** The various merge and flatten commands combine multiple layers into a single layer or, in the case of flattening, combine all your layers into a single background.
- ✓ **Panel Options:** You can select display options and choose to use a layer mask on your adjustment layers. Leave this option selected.

### The Select menu

Although the Select menu's main duties are to assist you in making and refining your selections, it offers a few handy layer commands, all of which are new additions to the menu. Here's a quick introduction to each command:

- ✓ **Select All Layers:** Want to quickly get everything in your file? Choose Select⇨All Layers.
- ✓ **Select Layers of Similar Type:** This command is helpful if you have different types of layers in your document, such as regular layers, type layers, shape layers, and adjustment layers, and you want to select just one type. Select one of your layers and then choose Select⇨Similar Layers. For details on different types of layers, see the following section.
- ✓ **Deselect All Layers:** Choose Select⇨Deselect Layers.

## Working with Different Layer Types

Layer life exists beyond just converting an existing background into a layer, which we describe in the section “Getting to Know Layers,” earlier in this chapter. In fact, Elements offers five kinds of layers. You'll probably spend most of your time creating image layers, but just so that you're familiar with all types, the following sections describe each one.

### Image layers

The *image layer*, usually just referred to as a layer, is the type of layer we're referring to when we give the analogy of acetate sheets in the section “Getting to Know Layers,” earlier in this chapter. You can create blank layers and add images to them, or you can create layers from images themselves. You can have as many image layers as your computer's memory allows. Just keep in mind that the more layers you have, the larger your file size and the slower your computer responds.

Each layer in an image can be edited without affecting the other layers. You can move, paint, size, or apply a filter, for example, without disturbing a single pixel on any other layer or on the background, for that matter. And, when an element is on a layer, you no longer have to make a selection to select it (see Chapter 7 for selection info). Just drag the element with the Move tool.

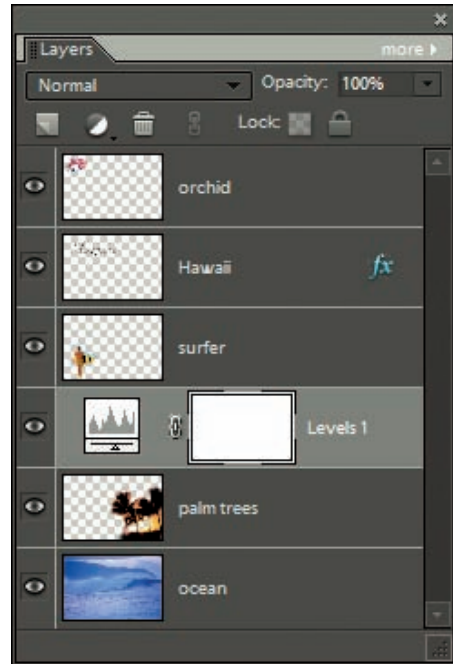
We tell you more about how to work with image layers in the section “Tackling Layer Basics,” later in this chapter.

## Adjustment layers

An *adjustment layer* is a special kind of layer used for modifying color and contrast. The advantage of using adjustment layers for your corrections, rather than applying them directly on the image layer, is that you can apply the corrections without permanently affecting the pixels. They’re totally nondestructive. And, because the correction is on a layer, you can edit, or even delete, the adjustment at any time. Adjustment layers, as shown in Figure 8-4, apply the correction only to all the layers below them, without affecting any of the layers above them.



Another unique feature of adjustment layers is that when you create one, you also create a layer mask on that layer at the same time. A *layer mask* is like a second sheet of acetate that hovers over the underlying layers. The layer mask allows you to selectively apply the adjustment to the layers below it by applying shades of gray — from white to black — on the mask. For example, by default, the mask is completely white. This allows the adjustment to be fully applied to the layers. If you paint on a layer mask with black, the areas under those black areas don’t show the adjustment. If you paint with a shade of gray, those areas partially show the adjustment. The darker the shade of gray, the less it shows the adjustment, as shown in Figure 8-5. Note that if you have an active selection border in your image before you add an adjustment layer, the adjustment is applied only to that area within the selection border. The resulting layer mask also reflects that selection: The selected areas are white, and the unselected areas are black.



Corbis, PhotoDisc/Getty Images

**Figure 8-4:** Adjustment layers correct color and contrast in your image.



You can also use just the layer mask to creatively blend two layers. Create an adjustment layer and just don't make any adjustment settings. Then, use the layer mask to blend two layers. Be sure to sandwich the layer mask between the two layers. Then, select the topmost layer and choose **Layer**⇨**Group with Previous**. Paint on your layer mask, as we describe earlier in this section, to selectively hide and show portions of your topmost layer.

Elements has eight kinds of adjustment layers, and you can use as many as you want. These adjustments are the same adjustments you find on the **Enhance**⇨**Adjust Lighting** and **Adjust Color** and the **Filter**⇨**Adjustments** submenus. For specifics on each adjustment, see Chapters 9 and 10. Here's how to create an adjustment layer:

- 1. Open an image that needs a little contrast or color adjustment.**

Note that you don't need to convert your background into a layer to apply an adjustment layer.

- 2. Click the Create Adjustment Layer icon on the Layers panel and from the drop-down list, choose your desired adjustment.**

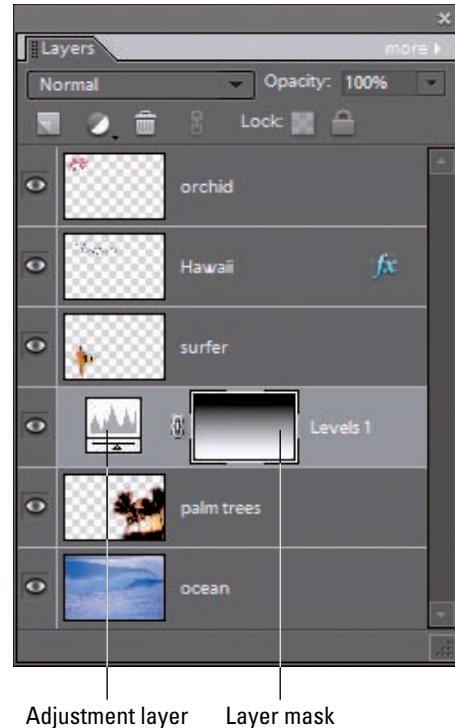
The dialog box specific to your adjustment appears.

- 3. Make the necessary adjustments and click OK.**

After you close the dialog box, the adjustment layer appears on the Layers panel. The Adjustment Layer icon and a thumbnail appear on the adjustment layer. The thumbnail represents the layer mask.



You can paint on the layer mask to selectively allow only portions of your image to receive the adjustment. Use the Brush or Pencil tool to paint. Or, you can also make a selection and fill that selection with any shade of gray, from white to black. Finally, you can use the Gradient tool on the mask to create a gradual application of the adjustment.



*Corbis, PhotoDisc/Getty Images*  
**Figure 8-5:** Layer masks control the amount of adjustment applied to your layers.



As with image layers, you can adjust the opacity and blend modes of an adjustment layer. Reducing the opacity of an adjustment layer reduces the effect of the adjustment on the underlying layers.

Here are a few more tips on using adjustment layers:

- ✓ **To view your image without the adjustment:** Click the eye icon in the left column of the Layers panel to hide the adjustment layer.
- ✓ **To delete the adjustment layer:** Drag it to the trash can icon on the Layers panel.
- ✓ **To edit an adjustment layer:** Simply double-click the adjustment layer on the Layers panel. You can also choose Layer⇨Layer Content Options. In the dialog box that appears, make any edits and then click OK. The only adjustment layer that you can't edit is the Invert adjustment. It's either on or off.
- ✓ **To switch to a different adjustment layer:** Choose Layer⇨Change Layer Content and choose a different adjustment layer from the submenu.

## Fill layers

A *fill layer* lets you add a layer of solid color, a gradient, or a pattern. Like adjustment layers, fill layers also include layer masks. You can edit, rearrange, duplicate, delete, and merge fill layers similarly to adjustment layers. You can blend fill layers with other layers by using the opacity and blend mode options on the Layers panel. Finally, you can restrict the fill layer to just a portion of your image by either making a selection first or painting on the mask later.

Follow these steps to create a fill layer:

### 1. Open an image.

Use an image that will look good with a frame or border of some kind. Remember that if you don't have a selection, the fill layer covers your whole image.

### 2. Click the Create Adjustment Layer icon on the Layers panel. From the drop-down list, choose a fill of a solid color, gradient, or pattern.

The dialog box specific to your type of fill appears.

### 3. Specify your options, depending on the fill type you choose in Step 2:

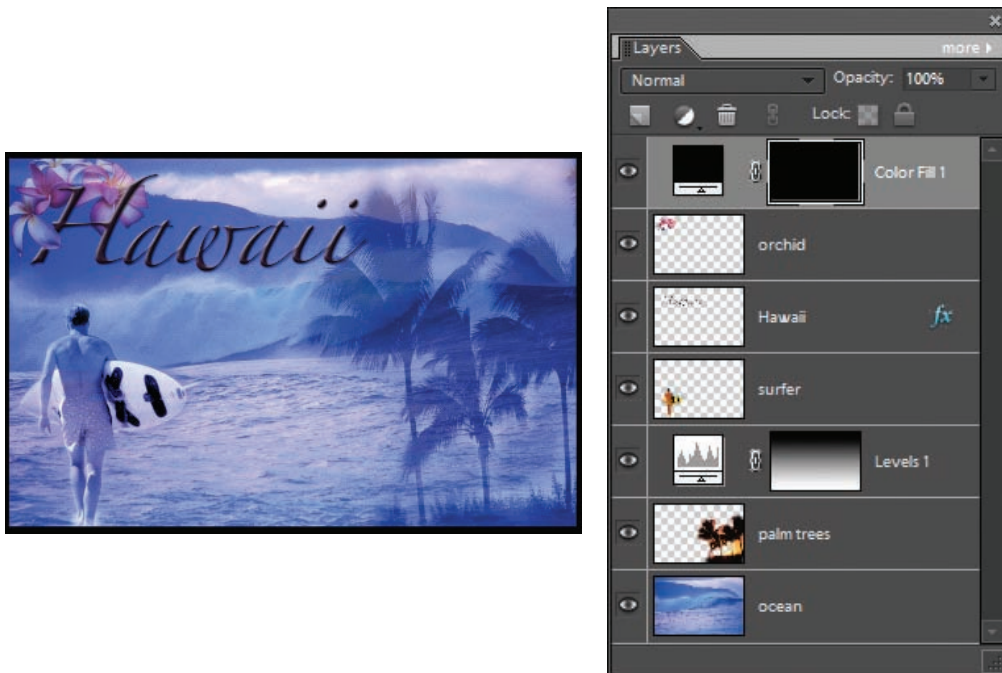
- *Solid Color:* Choose your desired color from the Color Picker. See Chapter 12 for details on choosing colors and also gradients and patterns.
- *Gradient:* Click the down-pointing arrow to choose a preset gradient from the drop-down panel or click the gradient preview to display the Gradient Editor and create your own gradient.



- **Pattern:** Select a pattern from the drop-down panel. Enter a value to scale your pattern, if you want. Click Snap to Origin to make the origin of the pattern the same as the origin of the document. Select the Link with Layer option to specify that the pattern moves with the fill layer if you move that layer.

#### 4. Click OK.

The fill layer appears on the Layers panel, as shown in Figure 8-6. Notice the layer mask that was created on the fill layer.



**Figure 8-6:** Add a frame or border with a fill layer.

Corbis, PhotoDisc/Getty Images

## Shape layers

If you haven't made your way to Chapter 12 yet, you may be surprised to discover that Elements also lets you draw shapes with six different drawing tools. These shapes also have the bonus of being *vector*-based. This term means that the shapes are defined by mathematical equations, which create points and paths, rather than by pixels. The advantage of vector-based objects is that you can freely size these objects without causing degradation. In addition, they're always printed with smooth edges, not with the jaggies you're familiar with seeing in pixel-based elements.



To create a shape layer, grab a shape tool from the Tools panel and drag it on your canvas. When you create a shape, it resides on its own, unique shape layer, as shown in Figure 8-7. As with other types of layers, you can adjust the blend modes and opacity of a shape layer. You can edit, move, and transform the actual shapes. However, to apply filters, you must first *simplify* the shape layer. This process converts the vector paths to pixels.



Corbis, PhotoDisc/Getty Images

**Figure 8-7:** Shape layers are vector-based, allowing for smooth edges and optimum print quality.

### Type layers

To add words to your images, as shown in Figure 8-7, click your canvas with the Type tool and just type. It's really as easy as that. Well, you can specify options, such as a font family and size, on the Options bar, but when you click the Commit button on the Options bar, you create a type layer. On the Layers panel, you see a layer with a T icon. For details on working with type, check out Chapter 13.

## Tackling Layer Basics

Image layers are the heart and soul of the layering world. You can create multiple image layers within a single image. Even more fun is creating a composite from several different images. Add people you like; take out people you don't. Pluck people out of boring photo studios and put them in exotic locales. The creative possibilities are endless. In the following sections, we cover all the various ways to create image layers. We cover how to convert a background into a layer in the section "Getting to Know Layers," earlier in this chapter. The following sections describe how to create an image layer by using various other methods.

### Creating a new layer from scratch

If you're creating a new, blank file, you can select the Transparent option for your background contents. Your new file is created with a transparent layer and is ready to go. If you have an existing file and want to create a new, blank layer, here are the ways to do so:

- ✓ Click the Create a New Layer icon at the top of the Layers panel.
- ✓ Choose New Layer from the Layers panel pop-up menu.
- ✓ Choose Layer⇨New⇨Layer.

Note that if you create a layer by using either of the menu commands, you're presented with a dialog box with options. In that dialog box, you can name your layer and specify options for grouping, blending, and adjusting opacity. Provide a name for your layer and click OK. You can always adjust the other options directly on the Layers panel later.



You can also use the Copy and Paste commands without even creating a blank layer first. When you copy and paste a selection without a blank layer, Elements automatically creates a new layer from the pasted selection. A better method of copying and pasting between multiple images, however, is to use the drag-and-drop method, which we describe in the section "Dragging and dropping layers," later in this chapter.



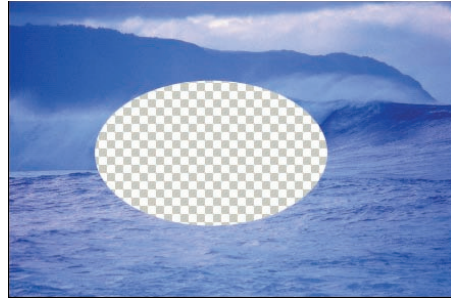
The Copy Merged command on the Edit menu creates a merged copy of all visible layers within the selection.

After you create your layer, you can put selections or other elements on that layer by doing one or more of the following:

- ✓ Grab a painting tool, such as the Brush or Pencil, and paint on the layer.
- ✓ Make a selection on another layer or on the background within the same document, or from another image entirely, and then choose

Edit⇨Copy. Select your new, blank layer on the Layers panel and then choose Edit⇨Paste. You can also choose Select⇨All and then copy and paste to transfer an entire image to the new layer.

- ✓ Make a selection on another layer or on the background within the same document, or from another image, and then choose Edit⇨Cut. Select your new, blank layer and then choose Edit⇨Paste. Be aware that this action removes that selection from its original location and leaves a transparent hole, as shown in Figure 8-8.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 8-8:** When you cut a selection from a layer, take note of the resulting hole in the original location.

## Using Layer via Copy and Layer via Cut

Another way to create a layer is to use the Layer via Copy and Layer via Cut commands on the Layer menu. Make a selection on a layer or background, and choose Layer⇨New⇨Layer via Copy or Layer via Cut. Elements automatically creates a new layer and puts the copied or cut selection on the layer. Remember that if you use the Layer via Cut command, your selection is deleted from its original location layer, and you're left with a transparent hole. If you use the background for the source, your background color fills the space. A reminder: You can use these two commands only within the same image. You can't use them between multiple images.

## Duplicating layers

Duplicating layers can be helpful if you want to protect your original image while experimenting with a technique. If you don't like the results, you can always delete the duplicate layer. No harm, no foul.

To duplicate an existing layer, select it on the Layers panel and do one of three things:

- ✓ Drag the layer to the Create a New Layer icon at the top of the panel. Elements creates a duplicate layer with *Copy* appended to the name of the layer.
- ✓ Choose Duplicate Layer from the Layers panel pop-up menu.
- ✓ Choose Layer⇨Duplicate Layer.

If you use the menu methods, a dialog box appears, asking you to name your layer and specify other options. Provide a name for your layer and click OK. You can specify the other options later, if you want.

## *Dragging and dropping layers*

The most efficient way to copy and paste layers between multiple images is to use the drag-and-drop method. Why? Because it bypasses your Clipboard, which is the temporary storage area on your computer for copied data. Storing data, especially large files, can bog down your system. By keeping your Clipboard clear of data, your system operates more efficiently. If you already copied data and it's lounging on your Clipboard, choose Edit⇨Clear⇨Clipboard Contents to empty your Clipboard.

Here's how to drag and drop layers from one file to another:

- 1. Select your desired layer in the Layers panel.**
- 2. Grab the Move tool (the four-headed arrow) from the Tools panel.**
- 3. Drag and drop the layer onto your destination file.**

The dropped layer pops in as a new layer above the active layer in the image. You don't need to have a selection border to copy the entire layer. But, if you want to copy just a portion of the layer, make your selection before you drag and drop with the Move tool. If you want the selected element to be centered on the destination file, press the Shift key while you drag and drop.



Here's a handy tip. If you have several elements (that aren't touching each other) on one layer and you want to select only one of the elements to drag and drop, use the Lasso tool to make a crude selection around the object without touching any of the other elements. Then press the Ctrl (⌘ on the Mac) key and press the up-arrow key once. The element then becomes perfectly selected. Drag and drop with the Move tool.

## *Using the Paste into Selection command*

The Paste into Selection command lets you put an image on a separate layer while also inserting that image into a selection border. For example, in Figure 8-9, we used this command to make it appear as though our surfer is in the water.

You can do the same by following these steps:

- 1. Make your desired selection on the layer in your destination image.**

In our figure, we selected the area in the water where the surfer would be positioned.



**Figure 8-9:** Use the Paste into Selection command to make one element appear as though it's coming out of another element.

**2. Select the image that will fill that selection.**

The image can be within the same file or from another file. Our surfer was in another file.

**3. Choose Edit⇨Copy.**

**4. Return to the destination image layer and choose Edit⇨Paste into Selection.**

Elements converts the selection border on the layer into a layer mask. The pasted selection is visible only inside the selection border. In our example, the surfer only shows inside the selected area. His ankles and feet are outside the border and therefore are hidden.

## Moving a Layer's Content

Moving the content of a layer is a piece of cake: Grab the Move tool from the Tools panel, select your layer on the Layers panel, and drag the element on the canvas to your desired location. You can also move the layer in 1-pixel increments by using the keyboard arrow keys. Press Shift with the arrows to move in 10-pixel increments.



The Auto-Select Layer option on the Options bar enables you to switch to a layer when you click any part of that layer with the Move tool. But be careful if you have a lot of overlapping layers because this technique can sometimes be more trouble than it's worth.

The Move tool has a couple of additional options. Here's the lowdown:

- ✓ **Show Bounding Box:** This option surrounds the contents of your layer with a dotted box that has handles, enabling you to easily transform your layer. Find details in the following section.
- ✓ **Show Highlight on Rollover:** Hover your mouse anywhere over the canvas to make an outline appear around the element on your layer. Click the highlighted layer to select it and then move it.
- ✓ **Arrange menu:** This menu enables you to change your selected layer's position in the stacking order.
- ✓ **Link Layers:** This option, which resides not on the Options bar, but in the Layers panel, connects the layers to allow ease in moving (or transforming) multiple layers simultaneously. Select a layer and then Ctrl-click (⌘-click on the Mac) to select more layers. Click the Link Layers option.
- ✓ **Align menu:** Align your selected layers on the left, center, right, top, middle, and bottom. As with linking, select your first layer and then Shift-click to select more layers. Choose an alignment option.
- ✓ **Distribute menu:** Use this menu to evenly space your selected layers on the left, center, right, top, middle, and bottom. Like with aligning, select your first layer and then Shift-click to select more layers. Choose your desired distribution option.

## Transforming Layers

When working with layers, you may find the need to scale or rotate some of your images. You can do so easily by applying the Transform and Free Transform commands. The methods to transform layers and transform selections are identical.

Here's how to transform a layer:

### 1. Select your desired layer.

You can also apply a transformation to multiple layers simultaneously by linking the layers first.

### 2. Choose Image ⇨ Transform ⇨ Free Transform.

A bounding box surrounds the contents of your layer. Drag a corner handle to size the contents. Press Shift while dragging to constrain the proportions. To rotate the contents, move the mouse cursor just outside a corner handle until it turns into a curved arrow and then drag. To distort, skew, or apply perspective to the contents, right-click and choose the desired command from the context menu. You can also click the

rotate, scale, and skew icons in the Options bar, as well as enter your transform values numerically in the fields.

If you want to apply just a single transformation, you can also choose the individual Distort, Skew, and Perspective commands from the Image⇨Transform menu. Or, to rotate or flip, you can choose Image⇨Rotate.

**3. When your layer is transformed to your liking, double-click inside the bounding.**



Try to perform all your transformations in one execution. Each time you transform pixels, you put your image through the interpolation process (see Chapter 3 for more on interpolation). Done to the extreme, this process can degrade the quality of your image. This is why it's prudent to use the Free Transform command, rather than individual commands — so that all transformations can be executed in one fell swoop.



When the Move tool is active, you can transform a layer without choosing a command. Select the Show Bounding Box option on the Options bar. This option surrounds the layer, or selection, with a box that has handles. Drag the handles to transform the layer or selection.

## Flattening and Merging Layers

Layers are fun and fantastic, but they can quickly chew up your computer's RAM and bloat your file size. And sometimes, to be honest, having too many layers can start to make your file tedious to manage, thereby making you less productive. Whenever possible, you can merge your layers to save memory and space. *Merging* combines visible, linked, or adjacent layers into a single layer (not a background). The intersection of all transparent areas is retained.

In addition, if you need to import your file into another program, certain programs don't support files with layers. Therefore, you may need to flatten your file before importing it. *Flattening* an image combines all visible layers into a background, including type, shape, fill, and adjustment layers. You're prompted as to whether you want to discard hidden layers, and any transparent areas are filled with white. We recommend, however, that before you flatten your image, you make a copy of the file with all its layers intact and save it as a native Photoshop file. That way, if you ever need to make any edits, you have the added flexibility of having your layers.



By the way, the only file formats that support layers are native Photoshop (.psd); Tagged Image File Format, or TIFF (.tif); and Portable Document Format, or PDF (.pdf). If you save your file in any other format, Elements automatically flattens your layers into a background.



## Flattening layers

To flatten an image, follow these steps:

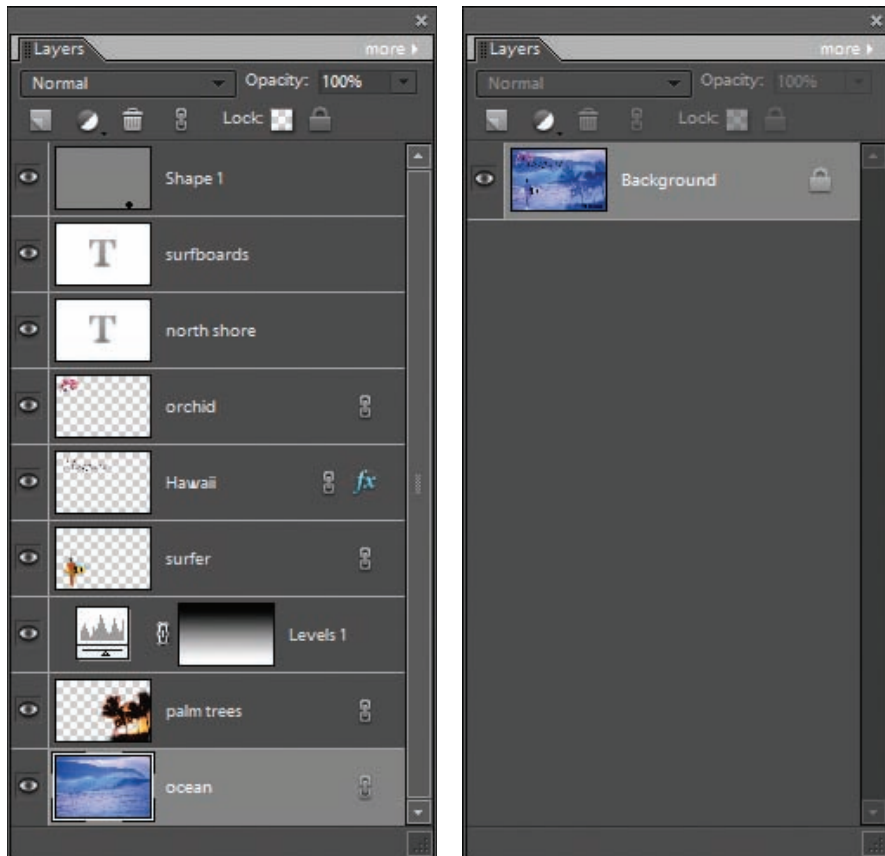
- 1. Make certain that all layers you want to retain are visible.**

If you have any hidden layers, Elements asks you if you want to discard those hidden layers.

- 2. Choose Flatten Image from the Layers panel pop-up menu or the Layer menu.**

All your layers are combined into a single background, as shown in Figure 8-10.

If you mistakenly flatten your image, choose Edit→Undo or use your Undo History panel. (If you're not familiar with the History panel, see Chapter 1 for details.)



Corbis, PhotoDisc/Getty Images

**Figure 8-10:** Flattening combines all your layers into a single background.

## *Merging layers*

You can merge your layers in a couple of ways. Here's how:

- ✔ **Display only those layers you want to merge.** Click the eye icon on the Layers panel to hide those layers you don't want to merge. Choose Merge Visible from the Layers panel pop-up menu or the Layer menu.
- ✔ **Arrange the layers you want to merge so that they're adjacent to each other on the Layers panel.** Select the topmost layer of that group and choose Merge Down from the Layers panel pop-up menu or the Layer menu. Note that Merge Down merges your active layer with the layer directly below it.

# Simple Image Makeovers

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Cropping and straightening your images
- ▶ Using one-step auto fixes
- ▶ Editing in Quick Fix mode
- ▶ Fixing small imperfections

**F**ixing images quickly without pain or hassle is probably one of the most desirable features you'll find in Elements and one that we're sure you'll embrace frequently. Whether you're an experienced photographer or an amateur shutterbug, cropping away unwanted background, tweaking the lighting or color of an image, and erasing away the minor blemishes of a loved one's face are all editing tasks you'll most likely tackle. With these simple image-makeover tools in Elements, these tasks are as easy as clicking a single button or making a few swipes with a brush.

## *Cropping and Straightening Images*

Cropping a photo is probably one of the easiest things you can do to improve the composition of your photo. Getting rid of the unnecessary background around your subject creates a better focal point. Another dead giveaway of amateurish photography is crooked horizon lines. Not a problem. Elements gives you several ways to straighten those images after the fact. So, after your next photo shoot, launch the Elements editor and then crop and straighten your images before you show them off.



## *Cutting away with the Crop tool*

The most common way to crop a photo is by using the Crop tool. Simple, quick, and easy, this tool gets the job done. Here's how to use it:

- 1. Select the Crop tool from the Tools panel in either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode.**

You can also press the C key. For details on the different workspaces, see Chapter 1. For full details on Quick Fix mode, see the section “Editing with Quick Fix,” later in this chapter.

- 2. Specify your aspect ratio options on the Options bar.**

Here are your choices:

- *No Restriction*: Allows you to freely crop the image at any size.
- *Use Photo Ratio*: Retains the original aspect ratio of the image when you crop.
- *Preset Sizes*: Offers a variety of common photographic sizes. When you crop, your image then becomes that specific dimension.

When you crop an image, Elements retains the original resolution of the file. Therefore, to keep your image at the same resolution while simultaneously eliminating portions of your image, Elements must resample the file. Consequently, your image must have sufficient resolution so that the effects of the resampling aren't too noticeable. This is especially true if you're choosing a larger preset size. If all this talk about resolution and resampling is fuzzy, be sure to check out Chapter 3.

- *Width and Height*: Enables you to specify a desired width and height to crop your image.

- 3. Drag around the portion of the image you want to retain and release the mouse button.**

When you drag, a crop marquee bounding box appears. Don't worry if your cropping marquee isn't exactly correct. You can adjust it in Step 4.

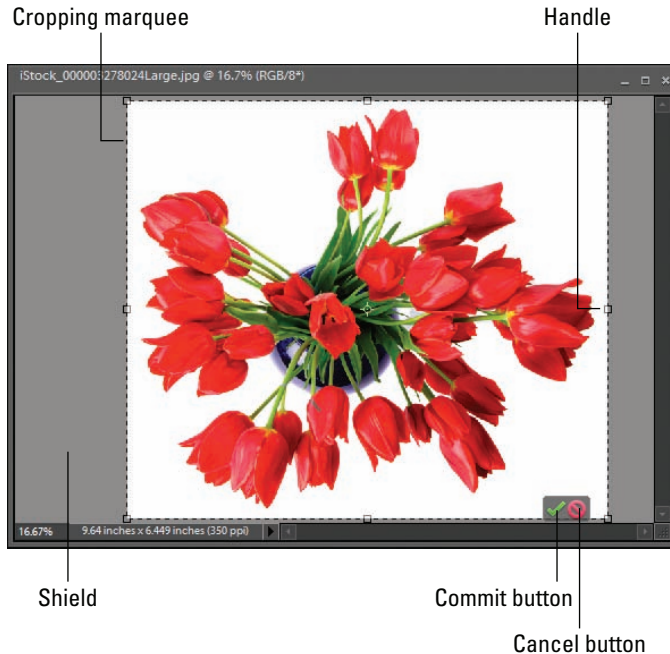
The area outside the cropping marquee (called a *shield*) appears darker than the inside in order to better frame your image, as shown in Figure 9-1. If you want to change the color and opacity of the shield, or if you don't want it at all, change your Crop preferences (choose Edit⇨Preferences⇨Display & Cursors [Elements⇨Preferences⇨Display & Cursors on the Mac]).

- 4. Adjust the cropping marquee by dragging the handles of the crop marquee bounding box.**

To move the entire marquee, position your mouse inside the marquee until you see a black arrowhead cursor and then drag.

If you move your mouse outside the marquee, your cursor changes to a curved arrow. Drag with this cursor to rotate the marquee. This action allows you to both rotate and crop your image simultaneously — handy for straightening a crooked image. Just be aware that rotation, unless it's in 90-degree increments, also resamples your image.





Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 9-1:** The area outside the crop marquee appears darker to allow for easy framing of your image.

##### 5. Double-click inside the cropping marquee.

You can also just press Enter or click the green Commit button next to the marquee. Elements then discards the area outside the marquee. To cancel your crop, click the red Cancel button.

### *Cropping with a selection border*

You can also crop an image by choosing Image⇧>Crop in either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode. First, make a selection with any of the selection tools and then choose the command. You can use this technique with any selection border shape. That is, your selection doesn't have to be rectangular. It can be round or even freeform. Your cropped image doesn't take on that shape, but Elements crops as close to the boundaries of the selection border as it can. For details about making selections, see Chapter 7.

### *Straightening images*

There may be times when you just didn't quite get that horizon straight when you took a photo of the beach. Or, maybe you scanned a photo and it wasn't

quite centered in the middle of the scanning bed. It's not a big deal. Elements gives you several ways to straighten an image.

### *Using the Straighten tool*

This tool enables you to specify a new straight edge, and it then rotates the image accordingly. Here's how to use the Straighten tool:

- 1. Select the Straighten tool from the Tools panel (or press the P key) only in Full Edit mode.**
- 2. Specify your desired setting from the Canvas Options on the Options bar.**

Here are your choices:

- *Grow or Shrink Canvas to Fit:* Rotates the image and increases or decreases the size of the canvas to fit the image area.
- *Crop to Remove Background:* Trims off background canvas outside the image area. This choice is helpful if you scan an image and white areas appear around your photo that you want removed.
- *Crop to Original Size:* Rotates your image without trimming off any background canvas.

- 3. (Optional) Select Rotate All Layers.**

If you have an image with layers and you want all of them rotated, select this option.

- 4. Draw a line in your image to represent the new straight edge.**

Your image is then straightened and, if you chose either of the crop options in Step 2, also cropped.

### *Using the Straighten menu commands*

In addition to using the Straighten tool, you can straighten your images by using two commands on the Image menu, in either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode:

- ✓ **To automatically straighten an image without cropping:** Choose Image⇨Rotate⇨Straighten Image. This straightening technique leaves the canvas around the image.
- ✓ **To automatically straighten and crop the image simultaneously:** Choose Image⇨Rotate⇨Straighten and Crop Image.

### *Using the Divide Scanned Photos command*

The Divide Scanned Photos command is helpful if you want to save time by scanning multiple photos into one document. Cram all the photos you can on your scanning bed and get one initial scan. Just make sure that a clear

separation exists between all the images. Then, choose Image⇨Divide Scanned Photos in either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode. Elements divides the images and places each one in a separate file. Note that if you have images with a lot of white in them, such as snow, you should cover the scanner with a piece of dark paper to better delineate the boundaries of each image.

## Employing One-Step Auto Fixes

Elements has five automatic lighting-, contrast-, and color-correction tools that can improve the appearance of your images with just one menu command. These commands are available in either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode, and they're all on the Enhance menu. For more on Quick Fix mode, see the section "Editing with Quick Fix," later in this chapter.

The advantage of these one-step correctors is that they're extremely easy to use. You don't need to have one iota of knowledge about color or contrast to use them. The downside to using them is that sometimes the result isn't as good as you could get via a manual color-correction method. And sometimes these correctors may even make your image look worse than before by giving you weird color shifts. But because these correctors are quick and easy, give them a try on an image that needs some help. Usually, you don't want to use more than one of the auto fixes. If one doesn't work on your image, undo the fix and try another. If you still don't like the result, move on to one of the manual methods we describe in Chapter 10.

### Auto Smart Fix

This all-in-one command is touted to adjust it all. It's designed to improve lighting, improve the details in shadow and highlight areas, and correct the color balance, as shown in Figure 9-2. The overexposed image on the left was improved quite nicely with the Auto Smart Fix command.



**Figure 9-2:** In a hurry? Apply the Auto Smart Fix command to quickly improve an image.



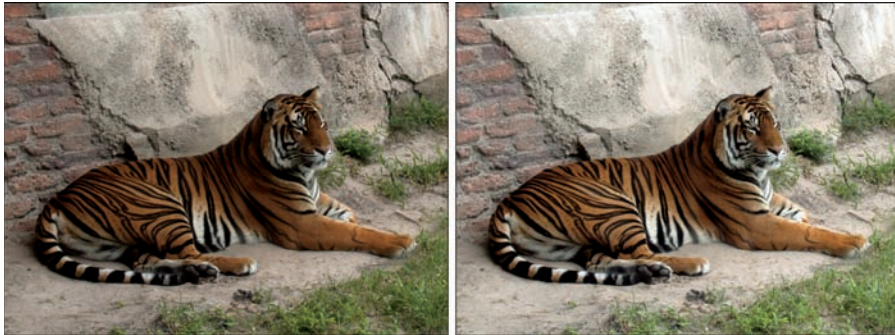


The Auto Smart Fix command, as well as the Auto Color, Auto Levels, Auto Contrast, Auto Sharpen, and Auto Red Eye Fix, are available in the Organizer (under the Fix pane), where you can apply the commands to several selected images simultaneously.

If the Auto Smart Fix was just too “auto” for you, you can crank it up a notch and try Adjust Smart Fix. This command is similar to Auto Smart Fix, but gives you a slider that allows you, not Elements, to control the amount of correction applied to the image.

### Auto Levels

The Auto Levels command adjusts the overall contrast of an image. This command works best on images that have pretty good contrast (even range of tones and detail in the shadow, highlight, and midtone areas) to begin with and need just a minor amount of adjustment. Auto Levels works by *mapping*, or converting, the lightest and darkest pixels in your image to black and white, thereby making highlights appear lighter and shadows appear darker, as shown in Figure 9-3.



**Figure 9-3:** Auto Levels adjusts the overall contrast of an image.



Although Auto Levels can improve your contrast, it may also produce an unwanted *colorcast* (a slight trace of color). If this happens, undo the command and try the Auto Contrast command instead. If that still doesn't improve the contrast, it's time to bring out the big guns. Try the Levels command we describe in Chapter 10.

### Auto Contrast

The Auto Contrast command is designed to adjust the overall contrast in an image without adjusting its color. This command may not do as good a job of improving contrast as the Auto Levels command, but it does a better job of retaining the color balance of an image. Auto Contrast usually doesn't cause

the funky colorcasts that can occur when you're using Auto Levels. This command works great on images with a haze, as shown in Figure 9-4.



*PhotoDisc/Getty Images*

**Figure 9-4:** The Auto Contrast command works wonders on hazy images.

## *Auto Color Correction*

The Auto Color Correction command adjusts both the color and contrast of an image, based on the shadows, midtones, and highlights it finds in the image and a default set of values. These values adjust the amount of black and white pixels that Elements removes from the darkest and lightest areas of the image. You usually use this command to remove a colorcast or to balance the color in your image, as shown in Figure 9-5. Occasionally, this command can also be useful in correcting oversaturated or undersaturated colors.



**Figure 9-5:** Use Auto Color Correction to remove a colorcast.

## Auto Sharpen

Photos taken with a digital camera or scanned on a flatbed scanner often suffer from a case of overly soft focus. Sharpening gives the illusion of increased focus by increasing the contrast between pixels. Auto Sharpen attempts to improve the focus, as shown in Figure 9-6, without overdoing it. What happens when you oversharpen? Your images go from soft to grainy and noisy. Always make sharpening your last fix after you make all your other fixes and enhancements. For more precise sharpening, check out the Unsharp Mask and Adjust Sharpness features we cover in Chapter 10.



Figure 9-6: Use Auto Sharpen to improve focus.

## Auto Red Eye Fix

This command is self-explanatory. The Auto Red Eye Fix command automatically detects and eliminates red-eye in an image. Red-eye happens when a person or animal (where red-eye can also be yellow-, green-, or even blue-eye) looks directly into the flash. Many cameras have a red-eye prevention mode, which is a pre-flash that causes the subjects' irises to contract, making their pupils smaller when the real flash goes off. Other cameras mount the flash high or to side of the lens, which also reduces the chance of red-eye. But if you have neither of these camera options, or if it just happened, it isn't difficult to rectify demonic red-eye after the fact.



If for some reason the Auto Red Eye Fix doesn't quite do the trick, you can always reach for the Red Eye Removal tool on the Tools panel. Here's how to remove red-eye manually:

**1. Select the Red Eye Removal tool from the Tools panel.**

Using the default settings, click the red portion of the eye in your image. This one-click tool darkens the pupil while retaining the tonality and texture of the rest of the eye, as shown in Figure 9-7.



**Figure 9-7:** The Auto Red Eye Fix and the Red Eye Removal tool detect and destroy dreaded red-eye.

**2. If you're unhappy with the fix, adjust one or both of these options:**

- *Pupil Size:* Use the slider to increase or decrease the size of the pupil.
- *Darken Pupil:* Use the slider to darken or lighten the color of the pupil.



If you're trying to fix green-eye in animals, your best bet is to use the Color Replacement Tool. See the section "Replacing One Color with Another," at the end of this chapter.

## Editing with Quick Fix

If you use the auto fixes that we cover in the preceding sections while working in Quick Fix mode, you may find all you need to repair and enhance your images, so you rarely have to visit Full Edit mode. And so, in this section, we offer a closer look at Quick Fix mode.

Quick Fix mode is a pared-down version of Full Edit mode that conveniently provides basic fixing tools and tosses in a few unique features, such as a before-and-after preview of your image.

Here's a step-by-step workflow that you can follow in Quick Fix mode to repair your photos:

1. **Select one or more photos in the Organizer, click Fix in the upper-right of the application window, and then click the Quick Fix button in the panel below.**

Or, if you're in Full Edit mode, select your desired image(s) from the Photo Bin and then click the Quick button in the upper-right area of the application window.

Note that you can also open images by simply choosing File→Open.

2. **Specify your preview preference from the View pop-up menu at the bottom of the application window.**

You can choose to view just your original image (Before Only), your fixed image (After Only), or both images side by side (Before & After) in either portrait (Vertical) or landscape (Horizontal) orientation, as shown in Figure 9-8.

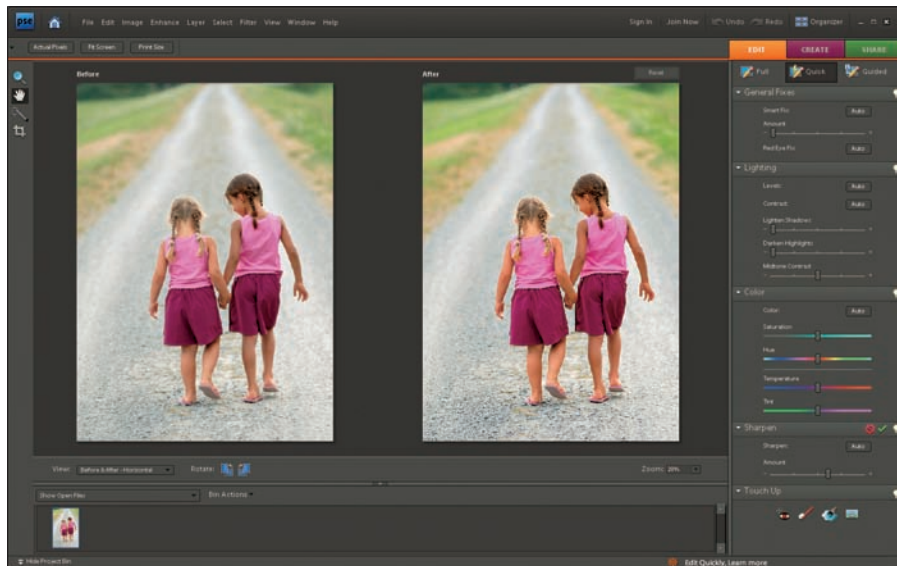


Photo credit: istockphoto.com

**Figure 9-8:** Quick Fix mode enables you to view before-and-after previews of your image.



**3. Use the Zoom and Hand tools to magnify and navigate around your image (see Chapter 5 for more on these tools).**

You can also specify the Zoom percentage by using the Zoom slider at the bottom of the application window.

**4. Crop your image by using the Crop tool on the Tools panel.**

You can also use any of the methods we describe in the “Cropping and Straightening Images” section, earlier in this chapter, except for the Straighten tool, which is exclusive to Full Edit mode.

**5. To rotate the image in 90-degree increments, click the Rotate Left or Rotate Right button at the bottom of the application window.**

**6. Use the Auto Red Eye fix to remove the red from your subjects’ eyes.**

Automatically fix red-eye by clicking the Auto button under Red Eye Fix on the General Fixes panel on the right side of the application window. If that doesn’t work, try the Red Eye Removal tool in the new Touch Up pane.

**7. Apply any necessary auto fixes, such as Auto Smart Fix, Auto Levels, Auto Contrast, and Auto Color Correction.**

All these commands are on the Enhance menu or in the General Fixes, Lighting, and Color panels on the right side of the application window.

Each of these fixes is described in detail in the section “Employing One-Step Auto Fixes,” earlier in this chapter. Remember that usually one of the fixes is enough. Don’t stack them on top of each other. If one doesn’t work, click the Reset button in the top-right of the image preview and try another. If you’re not happy, go to Step 8. If you are happy, skip to Step 9.

**8. If the auto fixes don’t quite cut it, get more control by using the sliders available for Smart Fix, Levels, Contrast, and Color, located on the panels on the right of the application window.**

Here’s a brief description of each available adjustment:

- *Lighten Shadows*: When you drag the slider to the right, lightens the darker areas of your image without adjusting the highlights.
- *Darken Highlights*: When you drag the slider to the right, darkens the lighter areas of your image without adjusting the shadows.
- *Midtone Contrast*: Adjusts the contrast of the middle (gray) values and leaves the highlights and shadows as they are.
- *Saturation*: Adjusts the intensity of the colors.
- *Hue*: Changes all colors in an image. Make a selection first to change the color of just one or more elements. Otherwise, use restraint with this adjustment.
- *Temperature*: Adjusts the colors to make them warmer (red) or cooler (blue). This adjustment can be used to correct skin tones

or to correct overly cool images (such as snowy winter photos) or overly warm images (such as photos shot at sunset or sunrise).

- *Tint*: Adjusts the tint after you adjust temperature to make the color more green or magenta.

If you still don't get the results you need, move on to one of the more manual adjustments that we describe in Chapter 10.

Note that you can also apply fixes to just selected portions of your image. Quick Fix mode offers the Quick Selection tool for your selection tasks. For details on using this tool, see Chapter 7.

### 9. Add finishing fixes by using the new Touch Up pane.

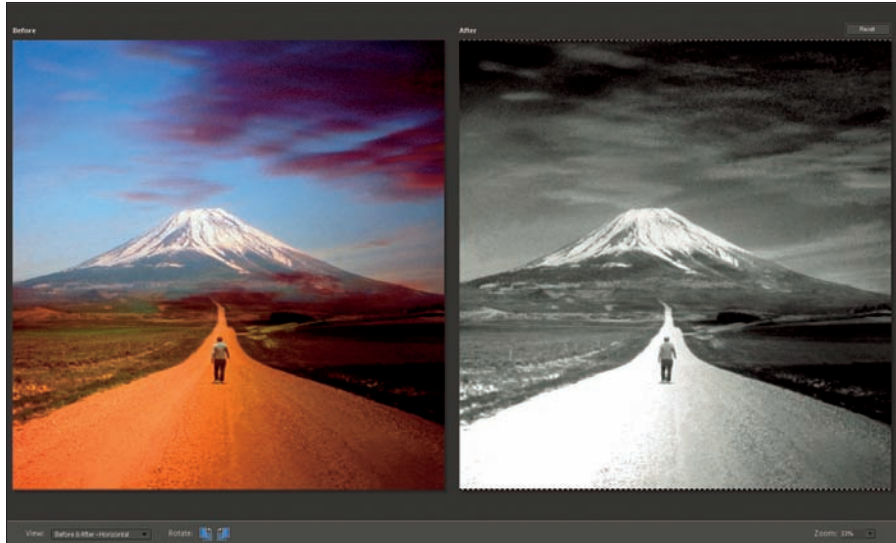
Here are the Touch Up pane options:

- *Red Eye Removal Tool*: If the Auto Red Eye Fix didn't work, try using this tool. This method is described in the section "Auto Red Eye Fix," earlier in this chapter.
- *Whiten Teeth*: This new fix does what it says — it whitens teeth. Be sure to choose an appropriate brush size from the Brushes drop-down panel before whitening (for more on brush options, see Chapter 12). Using a brush diameter that's larger than the area of the teeth also whitens/brightens whatever else it touches — lips, chin, and so on. Click the teeth. Note that this tool makes a selection and whitens simultaneously. After your initial click, your selection option converts from New Selection to Add to Selection in the Options bar. If you pick up too much in your dental selection, click the Subtract from Selection option and click the area you want to eliminate. When you're happy with the results of your whitening session, choose Select⇧Deselect or press Ctrl+D (⌘+D on the Mac).
- *Make Dull Skies Blue*: Click or drag over areas of your sky that need brightening. Choosing a brush size and selection option is similar to using the Whiten Teeth fix, described in the preceding bullet. When you click your sky, it is selected and brightened at the same time. When you're done, choose Select⇧Deselect or press Ctrl+D (⌘+D on the Mac).
- *High Contrast Black and White Image*: This tool converts your image into a high-contrast grayscale image. The method and options are similar to those for the Whiten Teeth and Make Dull Skies Blue options, described in the preceding bullets. Figure 9-9 shows a color image converted into a grayscale image that looks like a vintage newspaper photo.

Note that you can find these same fixes (and many more) in Full Edit mode, under the new Smart Brush and Detailed Smart Brush tools. Check out Chapter 10 for the lowdown on these tools.







Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 9-9:** The High Contrast Black and White fix converts a color image into a grayscale one.



10. Finally, sharpen your image either automatically (by clicking the Auto button) or manually (by dragging the slider on the Sharpen panel).

This fix should always be the last adjustment you make on your image.

## Cloning with the Clone Stamp Tool

Elements enables you to clone elements without the hassle of genetically engineering DNA. In fact, the Clone Stamp tool works by just taking sampled pixels from one area and copying, or *cloning*, them onto another area. The advantage of cloning, rather than making a selection and then copying and pasting, is that it's easier to realistically retain soft-edged elements, such as shadows, as shown in Figure 9-10.

The Clone Stamp doesn't stop there. You can also use this tool for fixing flaws, such as scratches, bruises, and



PhotoSpin

**Figure 9-10:** The Clone Stamp tool enables you to realistically duplicate soft-edged elements, such as shadows.

other minor imperfections. Although the birth of the healing tools (discussed in the following sections) has somewhat pushed the Clone Stamp tool out of the retouching arena, it can still do a good repair job in many instances.

Here's how to use the Clone Stamp tool:

- 1. Choose the Clone Stamp tool from the Tools panel in Full Edit mode.**
- 2. On the Options bar, choose a brush from the Brush Preset drop-down list, and then use the brush as is or adjust its size with the Size slider.**

Keep in mind that the size of the brush you specify should be appropriate for what you're trying to clone or retouch. If you're cloning a large object, use a large brush. For repairing small flaws, use a small brush. Cloning with a soft-edged brush usually produces more natural results. For details on brushes, see Chapter 12.

- 3. Choose your desired Blend Mode and Opacity percentage.**

For more on blend modes, see Chapter 11. To make your cloned image appear ghosted, use an opacity percentage of less than 100 percent.

- 4. Select or deselect the Aligned option.**

With Aligned selected, the clone source moves when you move your cursor to a different location. If you want to clone multiple times from the same location, leave the Aligned option deselected.

- 5. Select or deselect the All Layers option.**

This option enables you to sample pixels from all visible layers for the clone. If this option is deselected, the Clone Stamp tool clones from only the active layer. Check out Chapter 8 for details about working with layers.

- 6. Alt-click (Option-click) the area of your image that you want to clone to define the source of the clone.**
- 7. Click or drag along the area where you want the clone to appear, as shown in Figure 9-11.**

While you drag, Elements displays a crosshair icon along with your Clone Stamp cursor. The crosshair is the source you're cloning from, and the Clone Stamp cursor is where the clone is being applied. While you move the mouse, the crosshair moves, as well, so you have a continuous reference to the area of your image that you're cloning. Watch the crosshair, or else you may clone something you don't want.



**Figure 9-11:** The crosshair and Clone Stamp cursor in action.



If you're cloning an element, try to clone it without lifting your mouse. Also, when you're retouching a flaw, try not to overdo it. One or two clicks on each flaw is usually plenty. If you're heavy-handed with the Clone Stamp, you get a blotchy effect that's a telltale sign something has been retouched.

## Retouching with the Healing Brush

The Healing Brush tool is similar to the Clone Stamp tool in that you clone pixels from one area onto another area. But the Healing Brush is superior in that it takes into account the tonality (highlights, midtones, and shadows) of the flawed area. The Healing Brush clones by using the *texture* from the sampled area (the *source*) and then using the *colors* around the brush stroke while you paint over the flawed area (the *destination*). The highlights, mid-tones, and shadow areas remain intact, giving you a realistic and natural repair that isn't as blotchy or miscolored as the repair you get with the Clone Stamp tool.

Here are the steps to heal a photo:

- 1. Open an image in need of a makeover and select the Healing Brush tool from the Tools panel in Full Edit mode.**

You can also heal between two images, but be sure that they have the same color mode: for example, both RGB (red, green, blue). We chose a guy who looks like he might like to lose a few years, as shown in Figure 9-12.



**Figure 9-12:** Wipe out ten years in two minutes with the Healing Brush tool.

*PhotoSpin*

**2. Specify a diameter and hardness for your brush tip from the Brush Picker drop-down panel on the Options bar.**

You can also adjust the spacing, angle, and roundness. For details on these options, see Chapter 12. Don't be shy. Be sure to adjust the size of your brush, as needed. Using the appropriate brush size for the flaw you're retouching is critical to creating a realistic effect.

**3. Choose your desired blend mode.**

For most retouching jobs, you probably should leave the mode as Normal. Replace mode preserves textures, such as noise or film grain, around the edges of your strokes.

**4. Choose one of these Source options:**

- *Sampled*: Uses the pixels from the image. You use this option for the majority of your repairs.
- *Pattern*: Uses pixels from a pattern chosen from the Pattern Picker drop-down panel.

**5. Select or deselect the Aligned option on the Options bar.**

For most retouching tasks, you probably should leave Aligned selected. Here are the details on each option:

- *With Aligned selected*: When you click or drag with the Healing Brush, Elements displays a crosshair along with the Healing Brush cursor. The crosshair represents the sampling point, also known as the *source*. When you move the Healing Brush tool, the crosshair also moves, providing a constant reference to the area you're sampling.
- *With Aligned deselected*: Elements applies the source pixels from your initial sampling point, no matter how many times you stop and start dragging.

**6. Select the All Layers option to heal an image by using all visible layers.**

If this option is deselected, you heal from only the active layer.



To ensure maximum editing flexibility later, select the All Layers option and add a new, blank layer above the image you want to heal. When you heal the image, the pixels appear on the new layer and not on the image itself; so, you can adjust opacity and blend modes and make other adjustments to the healed layer.

**7. Establish the sampling point by Alt-clicking (Option-clicking on the Mac).**

Make sure to click the area of your image that you want to clone from. In our example, we clicked a smooth area of the forehead.

**8. Release the Alt (Option on the Mac) key and click or drag over a flawed area of your image.**

Keep an eye on the crosshair because that's the area you're healing from. We brushed over the wrinkles under and around the eyes and on the forehead (refer to Figure 9-12). This guy never looked so good, and he experienced absolutely no recovery time.

## Zeroing In with the Spot Healing Brush

Whereas the Healing Brush is designed to fix larger flawed areas, the Spot Healing Brush is great for smaller imperfections. The Spot Healing Brush doesn't require you to specify a sampling source. It automatically takes a sample from around the area to be retouched. It's quick, easy, and often effective. But it doesn't give you control over the sampling source, so keep an eye out for less-than-desirable fixes.

Here's how to quickly fix small flaws with the Spot Healing Brush tool:

1. **Open your image and grab the Spot Healing Brush tool in Full Edit mode.**

The moles on this guy's face, as shown in Figure 9-13, are no match for the Spot Healing Brush.



**Figure 9-13:** Now you see it (left), and now you don't (right).

*PhotoSpin*



2. On the Options bar, click the Brush Preset Picker and select a diameter and hardness for your brush tip from the drop-down panel.

Select a brush that's a little larger than the flawed area you're fixing.

3. Choose a blend mode from the Options bar.

As with the Healing Brush, the most likely mode is Normal.

4. Choose a Type from the Options bar:

- *Proximity Match*: Samples the pixels around the edge of the selection to fix the flawed area.
- *Create Texture*: Uses all the pixels in the selection to create a texture to fix the flaw.



Try Proximity Match first, and if it doesn't work, undo it and try Create Texture.

5. Choose All Layers to heal an image by using all visible layers.

If you leave this check box deselected, you heal from only the active layer.

6. Click or drag the area you want to fix.

We clicked the moles with the Spot Healing Brush. For the wrinkles around the eyes, we broke out the Healing Brush. We needed more control of the sampling source to achieve realistic results.

## Lightening and Darkening with Dodge and Burn Tools

The techniques of dodging and burning originated in the darkroom, where photographers fixed negatives that had overly dark or light areas by adding or subtracting exposure, using holes and paddles as an enlarger made prints. The Dodge and Burn tools are even better than their analog ancestors because they're more flexible and much more precise. You can specify the size and softness of your tool by simply selecting from one of the many brush tips. You can also limit the correction to various tonal ranges in your image — shadows, midtones, or highlights. Finally, you can adjust the amount of correction that's applied by specifying an exposure percentage.



Use these tools only on small areas, such as the girl's face shown in Figure 9-14, and in moderation. Also, keep in mind that you can't add detail that isn't there to begin with. If you try to lighten extremely dark shadows that contain little detail, you get gray areas. If you try to darken overly light highlights, you just end up with white blobs.



**Figure 9-14:** Use the Dodge and Burn tools to lighten and darken small areas.

Follow these steps to dodge or burn an image:

- 1. Choose either the Dodge (to lighten) or Burn (to darken) tool from the Tools panel in Full Edit mode.**
- 2. Select a brush from the Brush Preset Picker drop-down panel and also adjust the brush size, if necessary.**

Larger, softer brushes spread the dodging or burning effect over a larger area, making blending with the surrounding area easier.

- 3. From the Range pop-up list, select Shadows, Midtones, or Highlights.**

Select Shadows to darken or lighten the darker areas of your image. Select Midtones to adjust the tones of average darkness. Select Highlights to make the light areas lighter or darker.

In Figure 9-14, the original image had mostly dark areas, so we dodged the shadows.

- 4. Choose the amount of correction you want to apply with each stroke by adjusting the Exposure setting on the Options bar.**

Start with a lower percentage to better control the amount of darkening or lightening. Exposure is similar to the opacity setting that you use with the regular Brush tool. We used a setting of 10 percent.

- 5. Paint over the areas you want to lighten or darken.**

If you don't like the results, press Ctrl+Z (⌘+Z on the Mac) to undo.



## Smudging Away Rough Spots

The Smudge tool, one of the focus tools, pushes your pixels around using the color that's under the cursor when you start to drag. Think of it as dragging a brush through wet paint. You can use this tool to create a variety of effects. When it's used to the extreme, you can create a warped effect. When it's used more subtly, you can soften the edges of objects in a more natural fashion than you can with the Blur tool. Or you can create images that take on a painterly effect, as shown in Figure 9-15. Keep an eye on your image while you paint, however, because you can start to eliminate detail and wreak havoc if you're not careful with the Smudge tool.



*PhotoSpin*

**Figure 9-15:** The Smudge tool can make your images appear to be painted.

To use the Smudge tool, follow these steps:

1. Choose the Smudge tool from the Tools panel in Full Edit mode.
2. Select a brush from the Brushes Preset Picker drop-down panel.

Use a small brush for smudging tiny areas, such as edges. Larger brushes produce more extreme effects.

- 3. Select a blending mode from the Mode pop-up list.**
- 4. Choose the strength of the smudging effect with the Strength slider or text box.**

The lower the value, the lighter the effect.

- 5. If your image has multiple layers, select All Layers to make Elements use pixels from all the visible layers when it produces the effect.**

The smudge still appears on only the active layer, but the look is a bit different, depending on the colors of the underlying layers.

- 6. Use the Finger Painting option to begin the smudge by using the foreground color.**

Rather than use the color under your cursor, this option smears your foreground color at the start of each stroke. If you want the best of both worlds, you can quickly switch into Finger Painting mode by pressing the Alt key while you drag. Release Alt to go back to Normal mode.

- 7. Paint over the areas you want to smudge.**

Pay attention to your strokes because this tool can radically change your image. If you don't like the results, press Ctrl+Z (⌘+Z on the Mac) to undo the changes and then lower the Strength percentage (discussed in Step 4) even more.

## *Softening with the Blur Tool*

The Blur tool can be used for both repair and more artistic endeavors. You can use the Blur tool to soften a small flaw or part of a rough edge. You can add a little blur to an element to make it appear as though it was moving when photographed. You can also blur portions of your image to emphasize the focal point, as shown in Figure 9-16, where we blurred everything except the girl's face. The Blur tool works by decreasing the contrast among adjacent pixels in the blurred area.

The mechanics of using the Blur tool and its options are similar to those of the Smudge tool, as we describe in the preceding section. When you use the Blur tool, be sure to use a small brush for smaller areas of blur.

*PhotoSpin*

**Figure 9-16:** The Blur tool can be used to emphasize a focal point.

## *Focusing with the Sharpen Tool*

If the Blur tool is yin, the Sharpen tool is yang. The Sharpen tool increases the contrast among adjacent pixels to give the illusion that things are sharper. This tool needs to be used with restraint, however. Sharpen can quickly give way to overly grainy and noisy images if you're not cautious.

Use a light hand and keep the areas you sharpen small. Sometimes, the eyes in a soft portrait can benefit from a little sharpening, as shown in Figure 9-17. You can also slightly sharpen an area to emphasize it against a less-than-sharp background.



To use the Sharpen tool, grab the tool from the Tools panel and follow the steps provided for the Smudge tool in the section “Smudging Away Rough Spots,” earlier in this chapter. In addition, here are some tips for using the Sharpen tool:

- ✓ Use a low value, around 25 percent or less.
- ✓ Remember that you want to gradually sharpen your element to avoid the nasty, noisy grain that can occur from oversharpening.
- ✓ Because sharpening increases contrast, if you use other contrast adjustments, such as Levels, you boost the contrast of the sharpened area even more.



If you need to sharpen your overall image, try choosing either Enhance⇨Unsharp Mask or Enhance⇨Adjust Sharpness instead. These features offer more options and better control.



*PhotoSpin*

**Figure 9-17:** Reserve the Sharpen tool for small areas, such as eyes.

## Sponging Color On and Off

The Sponge tool soaks up color or squeezes it out. In more technical terms, this tool reduces or increases the intensity, or *saturation*, of color in both color and grayscale images. Yes, the Sponge tool also works in Grayscale mode by darkening or lightening the brightness value of those pixels.

Like with the Blur and Sharpen tools, you can use the Sponge tool to reduce or increase the saturation in selected areas in order to draw attention to or away from those areas.

Follow these steps to sponge color on or off your image:

- 1. Choose the Sponge tool from the Tools panel in Full Edit mode.**  
Press Shift+O to cycle through the Sponge, Dodge, and Burn tools.
- 2. Select a brush from the Brushes Preset Picker drop-down panel.**  
Use large, soft brushes to saturate or desaturate a larger area.
- 3. Choose either Desaturate or Saturate from the Mode pop-up list to decrease or increase color intensity, respectively.**

**4. Choose a flow rate with the Flow slider or text box.**

The *flow rate* is the speed with which the saturation or desaturation effect builds while you paint.

**5. Paint carefully over the areas you want to saturate or desaturate with color.**

In the example shown in Figure 9-18, we saturated one of the women to make her more of a focal point and desaturated the others.



PhotoSpin

**Figure 9-18:** The Sponge tool increases or decreases the intensity of the color in your image.

## Replacing One Color with Another

The Color Replacement tool allows you to replace the original color of an image with the foreground color. You can use this tool in a multitude of ways:

- ✓ Colorize a grayscale image to create the look of a hand-painted photo.
- ✓ Completely change the color of an element, or elements, in your image, as shown in Figure 9-19.
- ✓ Eliminate red-eye (or yellow-eye in animals) if other, more automated methods don't work to your satisfaction.

What we particularly like about the Color Replacement tool is that it preserves all the tones in the image. The color that's applied isn't like the opaque paint that's applied when you paint with the Brush tool. When you're replacing color, the midtones, shadows, and highlights are retained. The Color Replacement tool works by first sampling the original colors in the image and then replacing those colors with the foreground color. By specifying different sampling methods, limits, and tolerance settings, you can control the range of colors that Elements replaces.



PhotoSpin

**Figure 9-19:** The Color Replacement tool replaces the color in your image with the foreground color.

Follow these steps to replace existing color with your foreground color:

- 1. Select the Color Replacement tool from the Tools panel in Full Edit mode.**

This tool shares a flyout menu with the Brush and Pencil tools.

- 2. Specify your desired brush tip diameter and hardness from the Brush Preset Picker drop-down panel.**

- 3. Choose your desired blend mode.**

Here's a brief rundown of each one:

- *Color:* The default, this mode works well for most jobs. This mode works great for eliminating red-eye.
- *Hue:* Similar to color, this mode is less intense and provides a subtler effect.
- *Saturation:* This mode is the one to use to convert the color in your image to grayscale. Set your foreground color to Black on the Tools panel.
- *Luminosity:* This mode, the opposite of Color, doesn't provide much of an effect.



**4. Choose your Sampling method (represented by the icons):**

- *Continuous*: Samples and replaces color continuously while you drag your mouse.
- *Once*: Replaces colors only in areas that contain the color you first sampled when you initially clicked.
- *Background Swatch*: Replaces colors only in areas containing your current background color.

**5. Select your Limits mode.**

You have these options:

- *Contiguous*: Replaces the color of adjacent pixels containing the sampled color.
- *Discontiguous*: Replaces the color of the pixels containing the sampled color, whether or not they're adjacent.

**6. Set your Tolerance percentage.**

*Tolerance* refers to a range of color. The higher the value, the broader the range of color that's sampled, and vice versa.

**7. Select the Anti-Alias option.**

Anti-aliasing slightly softens the edges of the sampled areas.

**8. Click or drag your image.**

The foreground color replaces the original colors of the sampled areas. In our example (refer to Figure 9-19), we used a black foreground color.



If you want to be very precise, make a selection before you replace your color. We did this with the girl in our figure so we could avoid “coloring outside the lines.”



# Correcting Contrast, Color, and Clarity

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Correcting shadows, highlights, and contrast
- ▶ Removing colorcasts
- ▶ Adjusting hue and saturation
- ▶ Removing and replacing color
- ▶ Adjusting skin tones
- ▶ Working with color variations
- ▶ Removing noise and artifacts
- ▶ Eliminating dust, scratches, and tears
- ▶ Sharpening and blurring your image
- ▶ Working intelligently with the Smart Brush tools

**I**f you've tried the quick and easy automatic fixes on your images and they didn't quite do the job, you've come to the right place. The great thing about Elements is that it offers multiple ways and multiple levels of repairing and enhancing your images. If an auto fix doesn't cut it, move on to a manual fix. If you're still not happy, you can consider shooting in Camera Raw format, as long as your camera can do so. Elements has wonderful Camera Raw support, enabling you to process your images to your exact specifications. Chances are that if you can't find the tools to correct and repair your images in Elements, those images are probably beyond salvaging.





With information in Chapter 9 and this chapter at your fingertips, try to employ some kind of logical workflow when you tackle the correction and repair of your images, such as in these steps:

1. **Crop, straighten, and resize your images, if necessary.**
2. **After you have the images in their proper physical state, correct the lighting and establish good tonal range for your shadows, highlights, and midtones in order to display the greatest detail possible.**

Often, just correcting the lighting solves minor color problems. If not, move on to adjusting the color balance.
3. **Eliminate any colorcasts and adjust the saturation, if necessary.**
4. **Grab the retouching tools, such as the healing tools and filters, to retouch any flaws.**
5. **Sharpen your image if you feel that it could use a boost in clarity and sharpness.**
6. **Apply any enhancements or special effects, if so desired.**

By following these steps and allocating a few minutes of your time, you should be able to get all your images in shape to print, post, and share with family and friends.

## *Adjusting Lighting*

Elements has several simple, manual tools you can use to fix lighting if the Auto tools that we describe in Chapter 9 didn't work or were just too, well, automatic for you. You'll find that the manual tools offer more control over adjusting overall contrast, as well as bringing out details in shadow, mid-tones, and highlight areas of your images. Note that all lighting adjustments can be found in both Full Edit and Quick Fix modes.

### *Fixing lighting with Shadows/Highlights*

The Shadows/Highlights command offers a quick and easy method of correcting over- and underexposed areas. This feature works especially well with images shot in bright, overhead light or in light coming from the back (backlit). These images usually suffer from having the subject partially or completely surrounded in shadows, such as the original image (left) in Figure 10-1.



**Figure 10-1:** Correct the lighting in your images with the Shadows/Highlights adjustment.

To use the Shadows/Highlights adjustment, follow these steps:

- 1. In Full Edit or Quick Fix mode, choose Enhance⇨Adjust Lighting⇨Shadows/Highlights and make sure the Preview check box is selected.**

When the dialog box appears, the default correction is automatically applied in your preview.

- 2. If the default adjustment doesn't quite do the job, move the sliders (or enter a value) to adjust the amount of correction for your shadows (dark areas), highlights (light areas), and midtones (middle-toned areas).**

Remember that you want to try to reveal more detail in the dark and light areas of your image. If, after you do so, your image still looks like it needs more correction, add or delete contrast in your midtone areas.

- 3. Click OK to apply the adjustment and close the dialog box.**

If you want to start over, press Alt (Option on the Mac) and click the Reset button (previously the Cancel button).

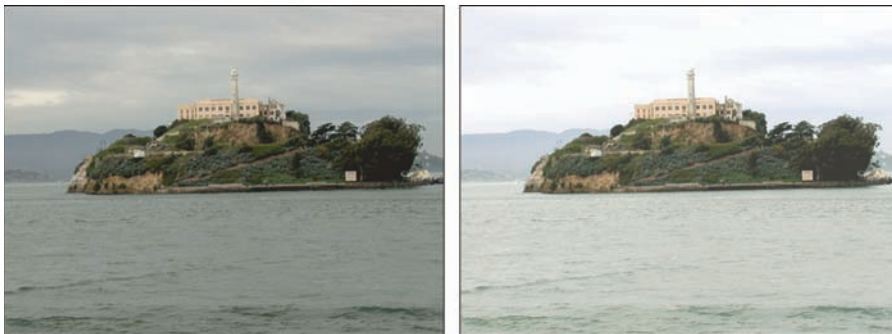
## Using Brightness/Contrast

Despite its aptly descriptive moniker, the Brightness/Contrast command doesn't do a great job of brightening (making an image darker or lighter) or adding or deleting contrast. Initially, users tend to be drawn to this command because of its appropriate name and ease of use. But, after users realize its limitations, they move on to better tools with more controls, such as Shadows/Highlights and Levels.

The problem with the Brightness/Contrast command is that it applies the adjustment equally to all areas of your image. For example, you may have a photo that has some highlights that need darkening but all the midtones and shadows are perfect. The Brightness slider isn't smart enough to recognize that, so when you start to darken the highlights in your image, the midtones and shadows also become darker. To compensate for the unwanted darkening, you try to adjust the Contrast, which doesn't fix the problem.

The moral is, if you want to use the Brightness/Contrast command, select only the areas that need the correction, as shown in Figure 10-2. (For more on selections, see Chapter 7.) After you make your selection, choose Enhance ⇨ Adjust Lighting ⇨ Brightness/Contrast.

You can also find the Brightness and Contrast command in Guided mode.



**Figure 10-2:** The Brightness/Contrast adjustment is best reserved for correcting selected areas (left) rather than the entire image (right).

## Pinpointing proper contrast with Levels

If you want real horsepower when it comes to correcting the brightness and contrast (and even the color) in your image, look no further than the Levels command. Granted, the dialog box is a tad more complex than what you find with the other lighting and color adjustment commands, but when you understand how it works, it can be downright user-friendly.

You can get a taste of what Levels can do by using Auto Levels, detailed in Chapter 9. The Levels command, its manual cousin, offers much more control. And, unlike the primitive Brightness/Contrast control, Levels enables you to darken or lighten 256 different tones. Keep in mind that Levels can be used on your entire image, a single layer, or a selected area. You can also apply the Levels command by using an adjustment layer, as we describe in Chapter 8.

If you're serious about image editing, the Levels command is one tool you want to figure out how to use. Here's how it works:

**1. In Full Edit or Quick Fix mode, choose Enhance ⇨ Adjust Lighting ⇨ Levels.**

We recommend using Full Edit mode for this command, where you'll have access to the Info panel in Step 2.

The Levels dialog box appears, displaying a *histogram*. This graph displays how the pixels of the image are distributed at each of the 256 available brightness levels. Shadows are shown on the left side of the histogram, midtones are in the middle, and highlights are on the right. Note that, in addition to viewing the histogram of the composite RGB channel (the entire image), you can view the histogram of just the Red, Green, or Blue channel by selecting one of them from the Channel drop-down list.



Although you generally make changes to the entire document by using the RGB channel, you can apply changes to any one of an image's component color channels by selecting the specific channel in the Channel pop-up menu. You can also make adjustments to just selected areas, which can be helpful when one area of your image needs adjusting and others don't.

- 2. In Full Edit mode, choose Window ⇨ Info to open the Info panel.**
- 3. Set the black and white points manually by using the eyedroppers in the dialog box; first select the White Eyedropper tool and then move the cursor over the image.**
- 4. Look at the Info panel, try to find the lightest white in the image, and then select that point by clicking it.**

The lightest white has the highest RGB values.

- 5. Repeat Steps 3 and 4, using the Black Eyedropper tool and trying to find the darkest black in the image.**

The darkest black has the lowest RGB values.

When you set the pure black and pure white points, the remaining pixels are redistributed between those two points.

You can also reset the white and black points by moving the position of the white and black triangles on the input sliders (just below the histogram). Or, you can enter values in the Input Levels boxes. The three boxes represent the black, gray, and white triangles, respectively. Use the numbers 0 to 255 in the white and black boxes.

6. Use the Gray Eyedropper tool to remove any colorcasts by selecting a neutral gray portion of your image, one in which the Info panel shows equal values of red, green, and blue.



If your image is grayscale, you can't use the Gray Eyedropper tool.

If you're not sure where there's a neutral gray, you can also remove a colorcast by choosing a color channel from the Channel pop-up menu and doing one of the following:

- Choose the Red channel and drag the midtone slider to the right to add cyan or to the left to add red.
- Choose the Green channel and drag the midtone slider to the right to add magenta or to the left to add green.
- Choose the Blue channel and drag the midtone slider to the right to add yellow or to the left to add blue.

7. If your image requires it, adjust the output sliders at the bottom of the Levels dialog box.

Moving the black triangle to the right reduces the contrast in the shadows and lightens the image. Moving the white triangle to the left reduces the contrast in the highlights and darkens the image.

8. Adjust the midtones (or *gamma values*) with the gray triangle input slider.

The default value for gamma is 1.0. Drag the triangle to the left to lighten midtones and drag to the right to darken them. You can also enter a value.

9. Click OK to apply your settings and close the dialog box.

Your image should be greatly improved, as shown in Figure 10-3.



**Figure 10-3:** Improve the contrast of an image with the intelligent Levels command.





When you click the Auto button, Elements applies the same adjustments as the Auto Levels command, as we explain in Chapter 9. Note the changes and subsequent pixel redistribution made to the histogram after you click this button.

## Adjusting Color

Getting the color you want sometimes seems about as attainable as winning the state lottery. Sometimes, an unexpected *colorcast* (a shift in color) can be avoided at the shooting stage, for example, by using (or not using, in some cases) a flash or lens filter. After the fact, you can usually do a pretty good job of correcting the color with one of the many Elements adjustments. Occasionally, you may want to change the color of your image to create a certain special effect. Conversely, you also may want to strip out the color from your image altogether to create a vintage feel. Remember that all these color adjustments can be applied to your entire image, a single layer, or just a selection. Whatever your color needs, they'll no doubt be met in Elements.

All color adjustments can be found in either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode, except for Defringe Layers, which is reserved for Full Edit mode only.



If you shoot your photos in the Camera Raw file format, you can open and fix your files in the Camera Raw dialog box. Remember that Camera Raw files haven't been processed by your camera. You're in total control of the color and the exposure. For more on Camera Raw, see Chapter 4.

## Removing colorcasts automatically

If you ever took a photo in an office or classroom, and got a funky green tinge in your image, it was probably the result of the overhead fluorescent lighting. To eliminate this green colorcast, you can apply the Remove Color Cast command. This feature is designed to adjust the image's overall color and remove the cast.

Follow these short steps to correct your image:

1. Choose **Enhance** ⇨ **Adjust Color** ⇨ **Remove Color Cast** in either **Full Edit** or **Quick Fix** mode.

The Remove Color Cast dialog box appears. Move the dialog box to better view your image. Note that this command is also available in Guided mode.

2. Click an area in your photo that should be white, black, or neutral gray, as shown in Figure 10-4.





**Figure 10-4:** Get rid of nasty color shifts with the Remove Color Cast command.

In our example, we clicked the sky in the image on the left.

The colors in the image are adjusted according to the color you choose. Which color should you choose? The answer depends on the subject matter of your image. Feel free to experiment. Your adjustment is merely a preview at this point and isn't applied until you click OK. If you goof up, click the Reset button, and your image reverts to its unadjusted state.

- 3. If you're satisfied with the adjustment, click OK to accept it and close the dialog box.**



If the Remove Color Cast command doesn't cut it, try applying a photo filter (as we describe in the section "Adjusting color temperature with photo filters," later in this chapter). For example, if your photo has too much green, try applying a magenta filter.

## Adjusting with Hue/Saturation

The Hue/Saturation command enables you to adjust the colors in your image based on their hue, saturation, and lightness. *Hue* is the color in your image. *Saturation* is the intensity, or richness, of that color. And *lightness* controls the brightness value.

Follow these steps to adjust color by using the Hue/Saturation command:

- 1. In either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode, choose Enhance ⇨ Adjust Color ⇨ Adjust Hue/Saturation.**

The Hue/Saturation dialog box appears. Be sure to select the Preview check box so that you can view your adjustments. Note that this command is also available in Guided mode.

- 2. Select all the colors (Master) from the Edit drop-down list or choose one color to adjust.**

**3. Drag the slider for one or more of the following attributes to adjust the colors as described:**

- *Hue*: Shifts all the colors clockwise (drag right) or counterclockwise (drag left) around the color wheel.
- *Saturation*: Increases (drag right) or decreases (drag left) the richness of the colors. Note that dragging all the way to the left gives you the appearance of a grayscale image.
- *Lightness*: Increases the brightness values by adding white (drag right) or decreases the brightness values by adding black (drag left).

The top color bar at the bottom of the dialog box represents the colors in their order on the color wheel before you make any changes. The lower color bar displays the colors after you make your adjustments.

When you select an individual color to adjust, sliders appear between the color bars so that you can define the range of color to be adjusted. You can select, add, or subtract colors from the range by choosing one of the Eyedropper tools and clicking in the image.

The Hue/Saturation dialog box also lets you colorize images, a useful option for creating sepia-colored images.

**4. (Optional) Check the Colorize option to change the colors in your image to a new, single color. Drag the Hue slider to change the color to your desired hue.**

The pure white and black pixels remain unchanged, and the intermediate gray pixels are colorized.



Use the Hue/Saturation command, with the Colorize option, to create tinted photos, such as the one shown in Figure 10-5. You can also make selections in a grayscale image and apply a different tint to each selection. This can be especially fun with portraits. Tinted images can create vintage or moody feels, and can transform even mediocre photos into something special.



*PhotoDisc/Getty Images*

**Figure 10-5:** Adjust the color, intensity, or brightness of your image with the Hue/Saturation command.

## Eliminating color with Remove Color

Despite all the talk in this chapter about color, we realize that there may be times when you don't want *any* color. With the Remove Color command, you can easily eliminate all the color from an image, layer, or selection. In Figure 10-6, we made a selection on the right side of the image and applied the Remove Color command. To use this one-step command, simply choose Enhance⇨Adjust Color⇨Remove Color.



Sometimes, stripping away color with this command can leave your image *flat*, or low in contrast. If this is the case, adjust the contrast by using one of Element's many lighting fixes, such as Auto Levels, Auto Contrast, or Levels.



*PhotoDisc/Getty Images*

**Figure 10-6:** Wash away color with the Remove Color command.

The Convert to Black and White command enables you to convert a selection, a layer, or an entire image to grayscale. But, rather than just arbitrarily strip color like the Remove Color command does, the Convert to Black and White command enables you to select a conversion method by first choosing an image style. To further tweak the results, you can add or subtract colors (Red, Green, or Blue) or contrast by moving the Intensity sliders until your grayscale image looks the way you want. Note that you aren't really adding color; you're simply altering the amount of data in the color channels. For more information on channels, see Chapter 2.

## Switching colors with Replace Color

The Replace Color command enables you to replace designated colors in your image with other colors. You first select the colors you want to replace by creating a *mask*, which is a selection made by designating white (selected), black (unselected), and gray (partially selected) areas. See Chapter 8 for more details on masks. You can then adjust the hue and/or saturation of those selected colors.

Follow these steps to get on your way to replacing color:

1. In Quick Fix or Full Edit mode, choose Enhance⇨Adjust Color⇨Replace Color.

The Replace Color dialog box appears. Make sure to select the Preview check box.

**2. Choose either Selection or Image:**

- *Selection*: Shows the mask in the Preview area. The deselected areas are black, partially selected areas are gray, and selected areas are white.
- *Image*: Shows the actual image in the Preview area.

**3. Click the colors you want to select in either the image or the Preview area.**

**4. Shift-click or use the plus sign (+) Eyedropper tool to add more colors.**

**5. Press the Alt (Option on the Mac) key or use the minus sign (-) Eyedropper tool to delete colors.**

**6. To add colors similar to the ones you select, use the Fuzziness slider to fine-tune your selection, adding or deleting from the selection based on the Fuzziness value.**

**7. Move the Hue and/or Saturation sliders to change the color or color richness, respectively. Move the Lightness slider to lighten or darken the image.**

Be careful to use a light hand (no pun intended) with the Lightness slider. You can reduce the tonal range too much and end up with a mess.

**8. View the result in the Image window.**

**9. If you're satisfied, click OK to apply the settings and close the dialog box.**

Figure 10-7 shows how we substituted the color of our tulips to change them from orange to yellow.



*Corbis Digital Stock*

**Figure 10-7:** The Replace Color command enables you to replace one color with another.

## *Correcting with Color Curves*

Elements borrowed a much-used feature from Photoshop named Curves. However, it added the word *Color* and took away some of its sophistication. Nevertheless, the Color Curves adjustment attempts to improve the tonal range in color images by making adjustments to highlights, shadows, and midtones in each color channel (for more on channels, see Chapter 2). Try using this command on images in which the foreground elements appear overly dark due to backlighting. Conversely, the adjustment is also designed to correct images that appear overexposed and washed out.

Here's how to use this great adjustment on a selection, a layer, or an entire image:

- 1. In Quick Fix or Full Edit mode, choose Enhance↔Adjust Color↔Adjust Color Curves.**

The Adjust Color Curves dialog box appears. Make sure to select the Preview check box. Move the dialog box to the side so that you can view the Image window while making adjustments.

- 2. Various curve adjustments appear in the Select a Style area. Select a style to make adjustments while viewing your image in the After window.**

- 3. If you need greater precision, use the highlight, brightness, contrast, and shadow adjustment sliders, as shown in Figure 10-8, and then adjust the sliders as desired.**

The graph on the left represents the distribution of tones in your image. When you first access the Color Curves dialog box, the tonal range of your image is represented by a straight line. While you drag the sliders, the straight line is altered, and the tonal range is adjusted accordingly.

- 4. Click OK when you've adjusted the image satisfactorily.**
- 5. To start over, click the Reset button.**

Check out Figure 10-9 for before-and-after images.

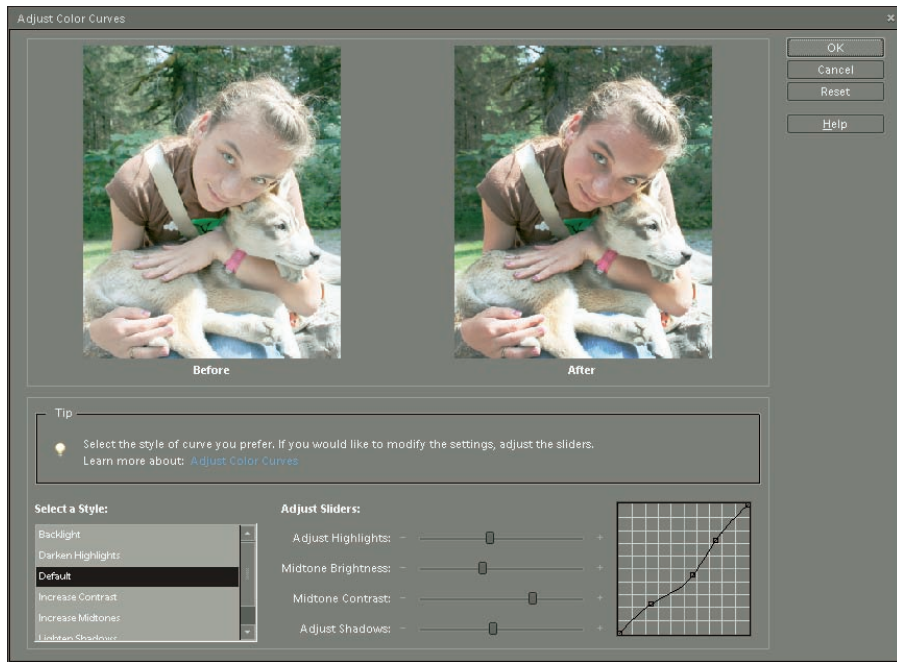
## *Adjusting skin tones*

Occasionally, you may find that the loved ones in your photos have taken on a rather sickly shade of green, red, or some other non-flesh-colored tone. To rectify that problem, Elements has a command specifically designed to adjust the overall color in the image and get skin tones back to a natural shade.

Here's how to use this feature:

- 1. Open your image in Quick Fix or Full Edit mode, select the Preview check box, and do one or both of the following:**





**Figure 10-8:** The Color Curves adjustment provides both basic and advanced adjustment controls.



**Figure 10-9:** Color Curves improves tonal range in color images.

- *Select the layer that needs to be adjusted.* If you don't have any layers, your entire image is adjusted.
- *Select the areas of skin that need to be adjusted.* Only the selected areas are adjusted. This is a good way to go if you're happy with the color of your other elements and just want to tweak the skin tones. For more on selection techniques, see Chapter 7.

**2. Choose Enhance → Adjust Color → Adjust Color for Skin Tone.**

The Adjust Color for Skin Tone dialog box appears. This command is also found in Guided mode.

**3. In the Image window, click the portion of skin that needs to be corrected.**

The command adjusts the color of the skin tone, as well as the color in the overall image, layer, or selection, depending on what you selected in Step 1.

**4. If you're not satisfied with the results, click another area or fiddle with the Skin and Ambient Light sliders:**

- *Tan:* Adds or removes the amount of brown in the skin.
- *Blush:* Adds or removes the amount of red in the skin.
- *Temperature:* Adjusts the overall color of the skin, making it warmer (right toward red) or cooler (left toward blue).

**5. When you're happy with the correction, click OK to apply the adjustment and close the dialog box.**

The newly toned skin appears, as shown in Figure 10-10.

To start anew, click the Reset button. And, of course, to bail out completely, click Cancel.



PhotoSpin

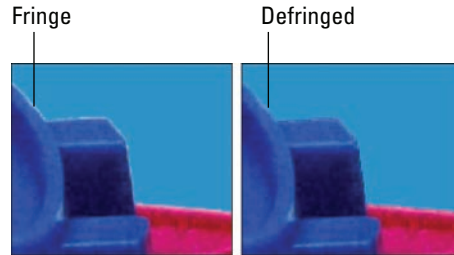
**Figure 10-10:** Give your friends and family a complexion makeover with the Adjust Color for Skin Tone command.



## Defringing layers

A telltale sign of haphazardly composited images is selections with fringe. We don't mean the cute kind hanging from your leather jacket or upholstery; we mean the unattractive kind that consists of those background pixels that surround the edges of your selections, as shown in Figure 10-11. Inevitably, when you move or paste a selection, some of the background pixels are bound to go along for the ride. These pixels are referred to as a *fringe* or *halo*.

Luckily, the Defringe command replaces the color of the fringe pixels with the colors of neighboring pixels that don't contain the background color. In our example, we plucked the toy boat out of a white studio background and placed it on an image of water. Some of the background pixels were included in our selection and appear as a white fringe. When we apply the Defringe command, those white fringe pixels are changed to colors of nearby pixels, such as blue or red, as shown in Figure 10-11.



*PhotoSpin*

**Figure 10-11:** Remove the colored halo around your selections with the Defringe command.

Follow these steps to defringe your selection:

- 1. In Quick Fix or Full Edit mode only, copy and paste a selection onto a new or existing layer, or drag and drop a selection onto a new document.**

For more on selections, see Chapter 7.

- 2. Choose Enhance → Adjust Color → Defringe Layer.**

The Defringe dialog box appears.

- 3. Enter a value for the number of pixels that needs to be converted.**

Try entering 1 or 2 first to see whether that does the trick. If not, you may need to enter a slightly higher value.

- 4. Click OK to accept the value and close the dialog box.**

## Correcting with Color Variations

Although we give you several ways in this chapter to eliminate colorcasts in an image, here's one more. The Variations command is a digital color-correction feature that's been around for years and is largely unchanged. That's probably because it's one of those great features that's easy to use and easy to understand, and it works. The command works by enabling you to make corrections by visually comparing thumbnails of color variations of

your image. You may use this command when you're not quite sure what's wrong with the color or what kind of colorcast your image has.

Here's how to use the Color Variations command:

**1. Choose Enhance⇨Adjust Color⇨Color Variations in Quick Fix or Full Edit mode.**

The Color Variations dialog box appears, displaying a preview of your original image (before) and the corrected image (after), as shown in Figure 10-12.

**2. Select a tonal range or color richness (if you're unsure which range to select, start with the Midtones):**

- *Shadows, Midtones, Highlights:* Adjusts the dark, middle, or light areas in the image, respectively.
- *Saturation:* Adjusts the color intensity or richness, making colors more intense (*saturated*) or less intense (*desaturated*). If your image is faded from time, be sure to increase the saturation after you correct any colorcast issues.

Usually, just correcting the midtones is enough to get your image's color in order, but if it's not, you can always adjust the shadows and highlights, as well.

**3. Specify how much adjustment you want with the Adjust Color Intensity slider.**

Drag left to decrease the amount of adjustment and drag right to increase the amount.

**4. If you selected Midtones, Shadows, or Highlights in Step 2, adjust the color by clicking the various Increase or Decrease *Color* buttons.**

Click more than once if your initial application wasn't sufficient to correct the problem.

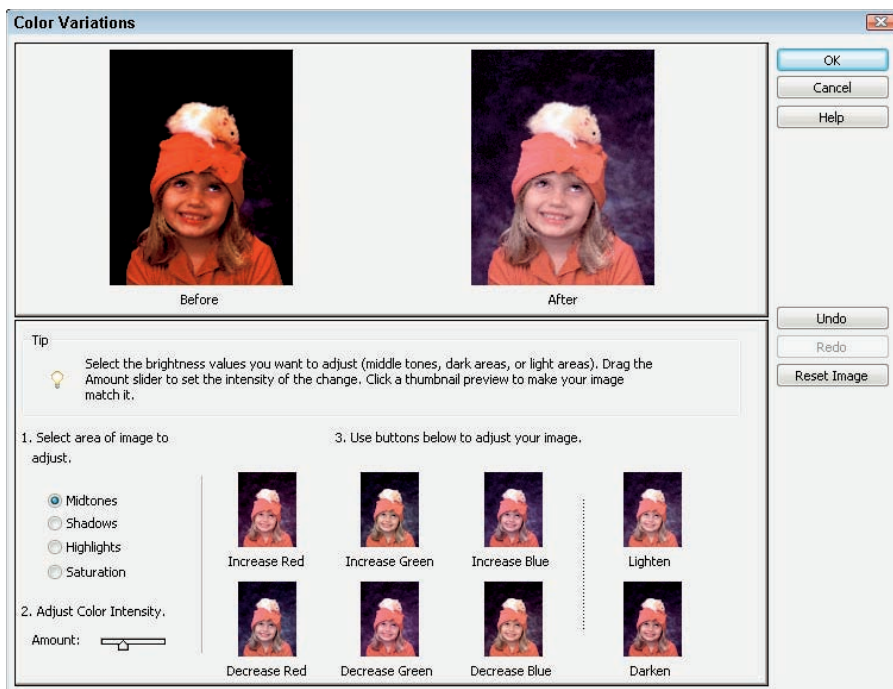
Be sure to keep an eye on the After thumbnail, which reflects your corrections while you make them.

**5. Click the Darken or Lighten buttons to make the colors a little darker or lighter, respectively.**

**6. If you selected Saturation in Step 2, click the Less Saturation or More Saturation buttons.**

**7. If you make a mistake — or several mistakes, for that matter — click the Undo button.**

The Color Variations dialog box supports multiple levels of undo. If you botch something, you can always click the Reset Image button to start again. Keep in mind that you can't undo the Reset Image command after you click it. Click Cancel to bail entirely.



PhotoSpin

**Figure 10-12:** Color Variations enables you to visually correct your images by comparing thumbnails.

**8. To apply your color adjustments and close the dialog box, click OK.**



The Color Variations command is a great tool to correct those old, faded, green- (or some other unwanted color) tinted circa yesteryear photos. Color Variations allows you to easily correct the color and saturation of these precious, but damaged, images. Remember to either decrease the offending color or add the color that's the opposite of the cast in the image. If it's too red, add cyan and vice versa.

### *Adjusting color temperature with photo filters*

Light has its own color temperature. A photo shot in a higher color temperature of light makes an image blue. Conversely, an image shot in a lower-color temperature makes a photo yellow. In the old days, photographers used to place colored glass filters in front of their camera lenses to adjust the color temperature of the light. They did this to either warm up or cool down photos, or to just add a hint of color for subtle special effects. Elements gives you the digital version of these filters with the Photo Filter command.

To apply the Photo Filter adjustment, follow these steps:

**1. In Full Edit mode, choose Filter⇨Adjustments⇨Photo Filter.**

The Photo Filter dialog box appears.

Note that you can also apply the photo filter to an individual layer by creating a photo-filter adjustment layer. For details, see Chapter 8.

**2. In the dialog box, select Filter to choose a preset filter from the drop-down list, or select Color to select your own filter color from the Color Picker.**

Here's a brief description of each of the preset filters:

- *Warming Filter (85), (81), and (LBA)*: Adjust the white balance in an image to make the colors warmer, or more yellow. Filter (81) is like (85) and (LBA), but it's best used for minor adjustments.
- *Cooling Filter (80), (82), and (LBB)*: Also adjust the white balance that's shown, but instead of making the colors warmer, they make the colors cooler, or bluer. Filter (82) is like (80) and (LBB), but it's designed for slight adjustments.
- *Red, Orange, Yellow, and so on*: The various color filters adjust the hue, or color, of a photo. Choose a color filter to try to eliminate a colorcast or to apply a special effect.

**3. Adjust the Density option to specify the amount of color applied to your image.**

**4. Check Preserve Luminosity to prevent the photo filter from darkening your image.**

**5. Click OK to apply your filter and close the dialog box.**



## Mapping your colors

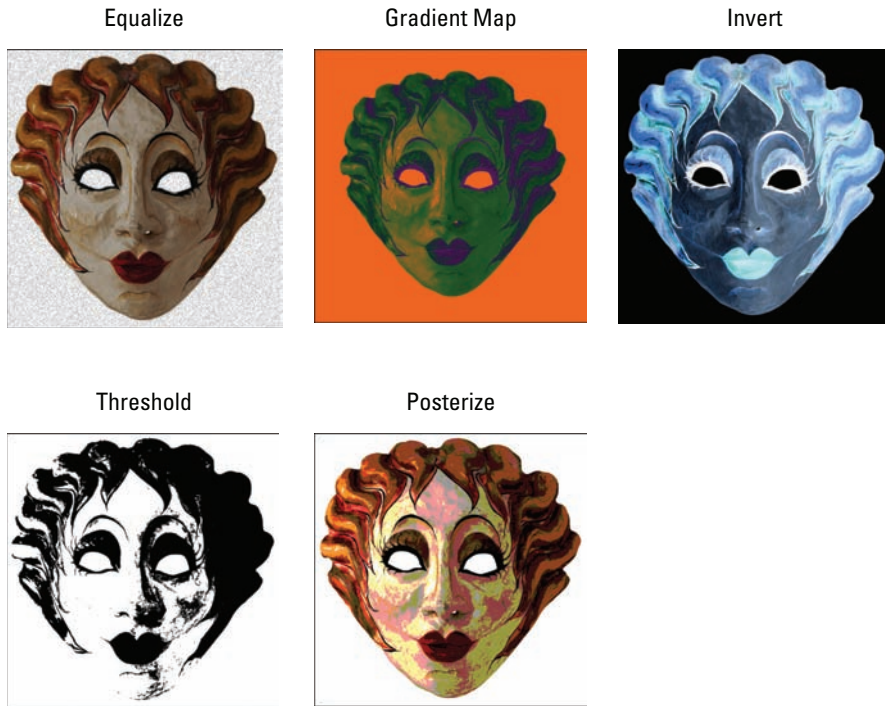
Elements provides some commands referred to as *color mappers*, which change the colors in your image by mapping them to other values. The color mappers are found in the Filter⇨Adjustments submenu. Figure 10-13 shows an example of each command, all of which are also briefly described in the following sections.

### Equalize

This mapper first locates the lightest and darkest pixels in the image and assigns them values of white and black. It then redistributes all the remaining pixels among the grayscale values. The exact effect depends on your individual image.

### *Gradient Map*

This command maps the tonal range of an image to the colors of your chosen gradient. For example, colors (such as orange, green, and purple) are mapped to the shadows, highlight, and midtone areas.



**Figure 10-13:** Change the colors in your image by remapping them to other values.

### *Invert*

This command reverses all the colors in your image, creating a kind of negative. Black reverses to white, and colors convert to their complementary hues (blue goes to yellow, red goes to cyan, and so on).

### *Threshold*

Threshold makes your image black and white, with all pixels that are brighter than a value you specify represented as white, and all pixels that are darker than that value as black. You can change the threshold level to achieve different high-contrast effects.

### *Posterize*

This command reduces the number of colors in your image. Choose a value between 2 and 255 colors. Lower values create an illustrative, poster look, and higher values produce a more photo-realistic image.

## *Adjusting Clarity*

After your image has the right contrast and color, and you fix any flaws (as we describe in Chapter 9), you're ready to work on the overall clarity of that image. Although you may have fixed the nitpicky little blemishes with the healing tools, if your image suffers from an overall problem, like dust, scratches, or *artifacts* (blocky pixels or halos), you may need to employ the help of a filter. After you totally clean up your image, your last chore is to give it a good sharpening. Why wait until the bitter end to do so? Sometimes, while you're improving the contrast and color and getting rid of flaws, you can reduce the clarity and sharpness of an image. So, you want to be sure that your image is as soft as it's going to get before you tackle your sharpening tasks. On the other hand, also be aware that sharpening itself increases contrast, so depending on how much of your image you're sharpening, you may need to go back and fine-tune it by using the lighting adjustments described in the section "Adjusting Lighting," earlier in this chapter.

Finally, with all this talk about sharpening, we know that you may find it strange when we say that you may also need to occasionally blur your image. Blurring can be done to eliminate unpleasant patterns that occur during scanning, soften distracting backgrounds to give a better focal point, or even to create the illusion of motion.

### *Removing noise, artifacts, dust, and scratches*

Surprisingly, the tools you want to use to eliminate junk from your images are found on the Filter⇨Noise filter submenu in Full Edit mode. With the exception of the Add Noise filter, the others help to hide noise, dust, scratches, and artifacts. Here's the list of junk removers:

- ✓ **Despeckle:** Decreases the contrast, without affecting the edges, to make the dust in your image less pronounced. You may notice a slight blurring of your image (that's what's hiding the junk), but hopefully the edges are still sharp.
- ✓ **Dust & Scratches:** Like its name says, hides dust and scratches by blurring those areas of your image that contain the nastiness (it looks for harsh transitions in tone). Specify your desired Radius value, which is the size of the area to be blurred. Also, specify the Threshold value, which determines how much contrast between pixels must be present before they're blurred.



Use this filter with restraint because it can obliterate detail and make your image go from bad to worse.

- ✓ **Median:** Reduces contrast around dust spots. The process the filter goes through is rather technical, so suffice it to say that the light spots darken, the dark spots lighten, and the rest of the image isn't changed. Specify your desired radius, which is the size of the area to be adjusted.
- ✓ **Reduce Noise:** Designed to remove luminance noise and artifacts from your images. We used this filter to correct the original image (on the left) in Figure 10-14. *Luminance noise* is grayscale noise that makes images look overly grainy. Specify these options to reduce the noise in your image:
  - *Strength:* Specify the amount of noise reduction.
  - *Preserve Details:* A higher percentage preserves edges and details but reduces the amount of noise that's removed.
  - *Reduce Color Noise:* Remove random colored pixels.
  - *Remove JPEG Artifact:* Remove the blocks and halos that can occur from low-quality JPEG compression.



**Figure 10-14:** Use the Reduce Noise filter to remove noise and artifacts.

### *Blurring when you need to*

It may sound odd that anyone would intentionally want to blur an image. But, if your photo is overly grainy or suffers from a nasty moiré (wavy) pattern (described in the following list), you may need to blur the image to correct the problem. And, occasionally, you may even want to blur the background of an image to deemphasize distractions, or to make the foreground elements appear sharper and provide a better focal point.



All the blurring tools are found on the Filter⇨Blur menu in Full Edit or Quick Fix mode, with the exception of the Blur tool, which is explained in Chapter 9:

- ✓ **Average:** This one-step filter calculates the average value of the image or selection and fills the area with that average value. You can use it for smoothing overly noisy areas in your image.
- ✓ **Blur:** Another one-step filter, this one applies a fixed amount of blurring to the whole image.
- ✓ **Blur More:** This one-step blur filter gives the same effect as Blur, but more intensely.
- ✓ **Motion Blur:** This filter mimics the blur given off by moving objects. Specify the angle of motion and the distance of the blur. Make sure to select the Preview check box to see the effect while you enter your values.
- ✓ **Radial Blur:** Need to simulate a moving Ferris wheel or some other round object? This filter produces a circular blur effect. Specify the amount of blur you want. Choose the Spin method to blur along concentric circular lines, as shown in the thumbnail. Or, choose Zoom to blur along radial lines and mimic the effect of zooming in to your image. Specify your desired Quality level. Because the Radial Blur filter is notoriously slow, Elements gives you the option of Draft (fast but grainy), Good, or Best (slow but smooth). The difference between Good and Best is evident only on large, high-resolution images. Finally, indicate where you want the center of your blur by moving the blur diagram thumbnail.
- ✓ **Smart Blur:** This filter provides several options to enable you to specify how the blur is applied. Specify a value for the radius and threshold, both defined in the following section. Start with a lower value for both and adjust from there. Choose a quality setting from the pop-up menu. Choose a mode setting. Normal blurs the entire image or selection. Edge Only blurs only the edges of your elements and uses black and white in the blurred pixels. Overlay Edge also blurs just the edges, but it applies only white to the blurred pixels.
- ✓ **Gaussian Blur:** The last Blur filter we discuss is probably the one you'll use most often. It offers a Radius setting to let you adjust the amount of blurring you desire.



Use the Gaussian Blur filter to camouflage moiré patterns on scanned images. A *moiré pattern* is caused when you scan halftone images. A *halftone* is created when a continuous tone image, such as a photo, is digitized and converted into a screen pattern of repeating lines (usually between 85 and 150 lines per inch) and then printed. When you then scan that halftone, a second pattern results and is overlaid on the original pattern. These two different patterns bump heads and create a nasty moiré pattern. The Gaussian Blur filter doesn't eliminate the moiré — it simply merges the dots and reduces the appearance of the pattern. Play with the Radius slider until you get an

acceptable trade-off between less moiré and less focus. If you happen to have a descreen filter built into your scanning software, you can use that, as well, during the scanning of the halftone image.

### *Sharpening for better focus*

Of course, if your images don't need any contrast, color, and flaw fixing, feel free to jump right into sharpening. Sometimes, images captured by a scanner or a digital camera are a little soft, and it's not due to any tonal adjustments. Occasionally, you may even want to sharpen a selected area in your image just so that it stands out more.

First, let us say that you can't really improve the focus of an image after it's captured. But you can do a pretty good job of faking it. All sharpening tools work by increasing the contrast between adjacent pixels. This increased contrast causes the edges to appear more distinct, thereby giving the illusion that the focus is improved, as shown in Figure 10-15. Remember that you can also use the Sharpen tool for small areas, as described in Chapter 9. Here's a description of the two sharpening commands:



**Figure 10-15:** Sharpening mimics an increase in focus by increasing contrast between adjacent pixels.

✓ **Unsharp Mask:** Unsharp Mask, in the Enhance menu in Full Edit or Quick Fix mode, which gets its odd name from a darkroom technique, is the sharpening tool of choice. It gives you several options that enable you to control the amount of sharpening and the width of the areas to be sharpened. Use them to pinpoint your desired sharpening:

- *Amount:* Specify an amount (from 1 to 500 percent) of edge sharpening. The higher the value, the more contrast between pixels around the edges. Start with a value of 100 percent (or less), which usually gives good contrast without appearing overly grainy.



- **Radius:** Specify the width (from 0.1 to 250 pixels) of the edges that the filter will sharpen. The higher the value, the wider the edge. The value you use is largely based on the resolution of your image. Low-resolution images require a smaller radius value. High-resolution images require a higher value.

Be warned that specifying a value that's too high overemphasizes the edges of your image and makes it appear too "contrasty" or even "goopy" around the edges.

A good guideline in selecting a starting radius value is to divide your image's resolution by 150. For example, if you have a 300 ppi image, set the radius at 2 and then use your eye to adjust from there.

- **Threshold:** Specify the difference in brightness (from 0 to 255) that must be present between adjacent pixels before the edge is sharpened. A lower value sharpens edges with very little contrast difference. Higher values sharpen only when adjacent pixels are very different in contrast. We recommend leaving Threshold set at 0 unless your image is very grainy. Increasing the value too high can cause unnatural transitions between sharpened and unsharpened areas.

Occasionally, the values you enter for Amount and Radius may sharpen the image effectively but in turn create excess *grain*, or noise, in your image. You can sometimes reduce this noise by increasing the Threshold value.



- ✓ **Adjust Sharpness:** When you're looking for precision in your image sharpening, Unsharp Mask is one option. The Adjust Sharpness command, as shown in Figure 10-16, is the other. This feature enables you to control the amount of sharpening applied to shadow and highlight areas. It also allows you to select from various sharpening algorithms.

Here are the various options you can specify:

- **Amount and Radius:** See the two descriptions in the preceding Unsharp Mask bullet.
- **Remove:** Choose your sharpening algorithm. Gaussian Blur is the algorithm used for the Unsharp Mask command. Lens Blur detects detail in the image and attempts to respect the details while reducing the nasty halos that can occur with sharpening. Motion Blur tries to sharpen the blurring that occurs when you move the camera (or if your subject doesn't sit still).
- **Angle:** Specify the direction of motion for the Motion Blur algorithm, described in the preceding bullet.
- **More Refined:** Runs the algorithm more slowly than the default speed for better accuracy.

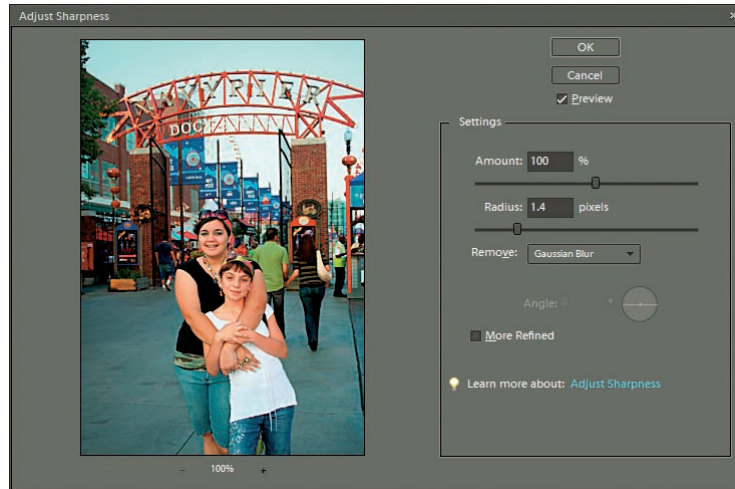


Figure 10-16: The Adjust Sharpness command.

## Working Intelligently with the Smart Brush tools



Some of the best new features to debut in Elements are the Smart Brush tools — Smart Brush and Detail Smart Brush. These two tools enable you to selectively paint on an image adjustment or special effects that appear on all or part of your image. What’s even more exciting is that these adjustments and effects are applied via an adjustment layer, meaning that they “hover” over your layers and don’t permanently alter the pixels in your image. It also means that the adjustments can be flexibly edited and deleted, if so desired.

Follow these steps to use the Smart Brush tool:

- 1. Select the Smart Brush tool in the toolbar in Full Edit mode.**

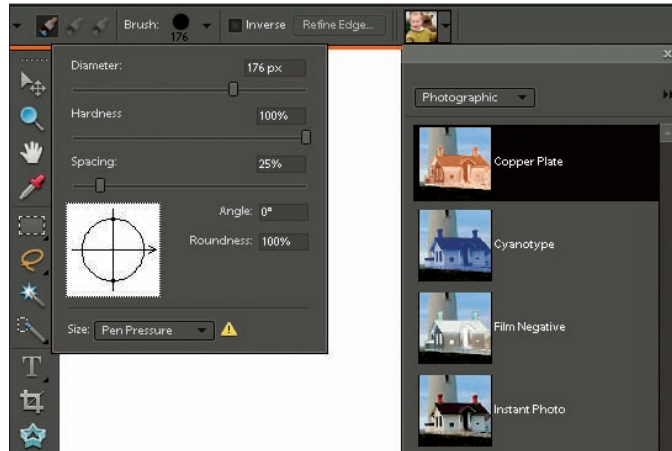
The tool icon looks like a house paint brush with an adjacent gear.

- 2. Choose your desired brush attributes, such as diameter and hardness, from the Brush Picker drop-down panel.**

For more on working with brushes, see Chapter 12.

- 3. Select an adjustment category and then your particular preset adjustment from the Smart Paint drop-down menu in the Options bar, as shown in Figure 10-17.**

Note that you can “tear off” this panel by grabbing the grip area in the upper-left corner of the panel and dragging it anywhere in your application window. In the Smart Paint menu, you can find adjustments ranging from photographic effects, such as a vintage Yellowed Photo, to nature effects, such as Sunset (which gives a warm, orange glow to your image).



**Figure 10-17:** The Smart Brush enables you to paint on adjustments.

#### 4. Paint an adjustment on the desired layer in your image.

Note that while you paint, the Smart Brush tool attempts to detect edges in your image and snaps to those edges. In addition, while you brush, a selection border appears.

A new adjustment layer is automatically created with your first paint stroke. The accompanying layer mask also appears on that adjustment layer. For more on adjustment layers, see Chapter 8.

#### 5. Using the Add and Subtract Smart Brush modes, fine-tune your adjusted area by adding and subtracting from it.

When you add and subtract from your adjusted area, you're essentially modifying your layer mask. Adding to your adjusted area adds white to your layer mask, and subtracting from your adjusted area adds black to your layer mask. For more on layer masks, see Chapter 8.

#### 6. Select a different preset adjustment for your selected area, if you want.

In fact, try them all out before you settle on your final choice.

- 7. If you feel you need to refine your selected area, choose select the Refine Edges option on the Options bar.**

For more on Refine Edges, See Chapter 7.

If you'd rather apply the adjustment to your unselected area, select the Inverse option on the Options bar.

If you want to modify your adjustment, double-click the Adjustment Layer pin on your image. The pin is annotated by a small, square black and red gear icon. After you double-click the pin, the dialog box corresponding to your particular adjustment appears. For example, if you double-click the Shoebox photo adjustment (under Photographic), you access the Hue/Saturation dialog box.



- 8. Make your necessary adjustments in the dialog box and click OK.**

You can also right-click (Control-click on the Mac) and select Change Adjustment Settings from the context menu that appears. Or, you can select Delete Adjustment and Hide Selection from the same menu.



- 9. After you finish, simply deselect your selection by choosing Select⇧Deselect.**

You can add multiple Smart Brush adjustments. After you apply one effect, reset the Smart Brush tool and apply additional adjustments.

Follow these steps to work with the Detail Smart Brush tool:

- 1. Select the Detail Smart Brush tool in the toolbar in Full Edit mode.**

This tool shares the flyout menu with the Smart Brush tool. The tool icon looks like an art paint brush with an adjacent gear.

- 2. Choose a brush tip preset and brush size, and attributes from the Brushes drop-down panel.**

Feel free to change your brush tip and size as needed for your desired effect. For more on working with brushes, see Chapter 12. For better accessibility, you can “tear off” this panel (and the Smart Paint panel in Step 3) by grabbing the grip area in the upper-left corner of the panel and dragging it anywhere in your application window.

- 3. Select your desired adjustment category and then your particular preset adjustment from the Smart Paint drop-down menu in the Options bar.**

Several of the Special Effect adjustments are shown in Figure 10-18.





**Figure 10-18:** The Detail Smart Brush lets you paint on a variety of special effects.

**4. Paint an adjustment on the desired layer in your image.**

A new adjustment layer is automatically created with your first paint stroke, along with an accompanying layer mask. For details on adjustment layers and layer masks, see Chapter 8.

**5. Follow Steps 5 through 8 in the preceding list for the Smart Brush tool.**



# Part IV

## Exploring Your Inner Artist



## *In this part . . .*

**I**n addition to correcting photos to improve their appearance, you can delve into the world of the Photoshop Elements artist, where you can use tools to draw and paint on existing photos, or create new, blank documents and create your own drawings. The tools available to you rival an artist's analog tools, and Photoshop Elements capabilities are limited only by your imagination. In this part, you can find out how to apply different artistic effects by using many tools and customizing them for your own use, and you can get some helpful tips to create some dazzling images.

In addition to describing the artistic effects you can apply to your photos, this section tells you how to handle working with text. When it comes time for creating a poster, an advertisement, or some Web icons, the text features in Elements offer you many options for creating headline type, body copy, and special type effects.



# Playing with Filters, Effects, Styles, and More

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Fooling with filters
- ▶ Getting familiar with the Filter Gallery
- ▶ Making digital taffy with Liquify
- ▶ Fixing camera distortion
- ▶ Enhancing with effects
- ▶ Using layer styles
- ▶ Changing colors with blend modes
- ▶ Compositing images with Photomerge

After giving your images a makeover — edges cropped, color corrected, flaws repaired, focus sharpened — you may want to get them all gussied up for a night out on the town. You can do just that with filters, effects, layer styles, and blend modes. These features enable you to add that touch of emphasis, drama, whimsy, or just plain goofy fun. We're the first to admit that often the simplest art (and that includes photographs) is the best. That gorgeous landscape shot or the portrait that perfectly captures the expression on a child's happy face is something you may want to leave unembellished. But, for the times when a little artistic experimentation is in order, turn to this chapter as your guide.



## *Having Fun with Filters*

Filters have been around since the early days of digital imaging, when Photoshop was just a little bitty program. *Filters*, also called *plug-ins* because they can be installed or removed independently, change the look of your

image in a variety of ways, as shown in Figure 11-1. They can correct less-than-perfect images by making them appear sharper or by covering up flaws, as we describe in Chapter 10. Or they can enhance your images by making them appear as though they're painted, tiled, photocopied, or lit by spotlights. Just make sure to create a backup of your original image if you plan on saving your filtered one. The following sections give you the basics on how to apply a filter and give you a few filtering tips.



**Figure 11-1:** Use filters to correct image imperfections or to completely transform images.

## Applying filters

You can apply a filter in three ways:

- ✓ **In either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode:** From the Filter menu, choose your desired filter category and then select a specific filter.
- ✓ **In Full Edit mode only:** Choose Window⇨Effects to open the panel. Click the Filters button at the top of the panel. Select your filter category from the drop-down list in the upper-right corner of the panel. Double-click the thumbnail of your desired filter or drag the filter onto your image window.
- ✓ **In either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode:** Choose Filter⇨Filter Gallery to apply one or more filters in a flexible editing environment. The Filter Gallery is described in the section “Working in the Filter Gallery,” later in this chapter.



You can't apply filters to images that are in Bitmap or Index Color mode. And some filters don't work on images in Grayscale mode. For a refresher on color modes, see Chapter 3.

## Corrective or destructive filters

Although there are no hard and fast rules, most digital-imaging folks classify filters into two basic categories, *corrective* and *destructive*:

- ✓ **Corrective filters** usually fix some kind of image problem. They adjust color, improve focus, remove dust or artifacts, and so on. Don't get us wrong — pixels are still modified. It's just that the basic appearance of the image remains the same, albeit hopefully improved. Two of the most popular corrective filters, Sharpen and Blur, are covered in Chapter 10.
- ✓ **Destructive filters** are used to create some kind of special effect. Pixels are also modified, but the image may look quite a bit different from its original. These kinds of filters create effects, such as textures, brush strokes, mosaics, lights, and clouds. They can also distort an image with waves, spheres, and ripples.

## One-step or multistep filters

All corrective and destructive filters are either one-step filters or multistep filters. One-step filters have no options and no dialog boxes; select the filter and watch the magic happen. Multistep filters act almost like mini-applications. Choose the filter to open a dialog box that has options for you to specify. The options vary widely depending on the filter, but most come equipped with at least one option to control the intensity of the filter. A multistep filter appears on the menu with an ellipsis following its name, indicating that a dialog box follows the execution of the command.

## Fading a filter

Sometimes, you don't want the full effects of a filter applied to your image. Sometimes, fading a filter a bit softens the effect and makes it look less “computerish.” Here's what you can do:

1. **Choose Layer⇨Duplicate Layer and then click OK when the dialog box appears.**
2. **Apply your desired filter to the duplicate layer.**
3. **Use the blend modes and opacity settings located on the Layers panel to merge the filtered layer with the original unfiltered image.**



4. (Optional) With the Eraser tool, selectively erase portions of your filtered image to enable the unfiltered image to show through.

For example, if you applied a Gaussian Blur filter to soften a harshly lit portrait, try erasing the blurred portion that covers the subject's eyes to let the unblurred eyes of the layer below show through. The sharply focused eyes provide a natural focal point.

### *Selectively applying a filter*

Up to this point in the book, we refer to applying filters to your *images*. But we use this word rather loosely. You don't necessarily have to apply filters to your entire image. You can apply filters to individual layers or even to selections. You can often get better effects when you apply a filter just to a portion of an image or layer. For example, you can blur a distracting background so that the person in your image gets due attention. Or, as shown in Figure 11-2, you can apply an Ocean Ripple or Wave filter to the ocean, leaving your surfer unfiltered to avoid that overly "Photoshopped" effect.



*Corbis Digital Stock*

**Figure 11-2:** Selectively applying a filter can prevent an image from looking overly manipulated.



Exercising a little restraint in applying filters usually produces a more attractive image.

## Working in the Filter Gallery

When you apply a filter, don't be surprised if you're presented with a gargantuan dialog box. This *editing window*, as it's officially called, is the Filter Gallery. You can also access it by choosing Filter⇨Filter Gallery. In the flexible Filter Gallery, you can apply multiple filters, as well as edit them *ad nauseum*.



Even when you're using the Filter Gallery, make a backup copy of your image, or at least create a duplicate layer, before you apply filters. Filters change the pixels of an image permanently, and when you exit the Filter Gallery, the filters that are applied can't be removed.

Follow these steps to work in the Filter Gallery:

**1. Choose Filter⇨Filter Gallery in either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode.**

The Filter Gallery editing window appears, as shown in Figure 11-3.

**2. In the center of the editing window, click your desired filter category folder.**

The folder expands and shows the filters in that category. A thumbnail displays each filter's effect.

**3. Select your desired filter.**

You get a large, dynamic preview of your image on the left side of the dialog box. To preview a different filter, just select it. Use the magnification controls to zoom in and out of the preview. To hide the Filter menu and get a larger preview box, click the arrow to the left of the OK button.

**4. Specify any settings associated with the filter.**

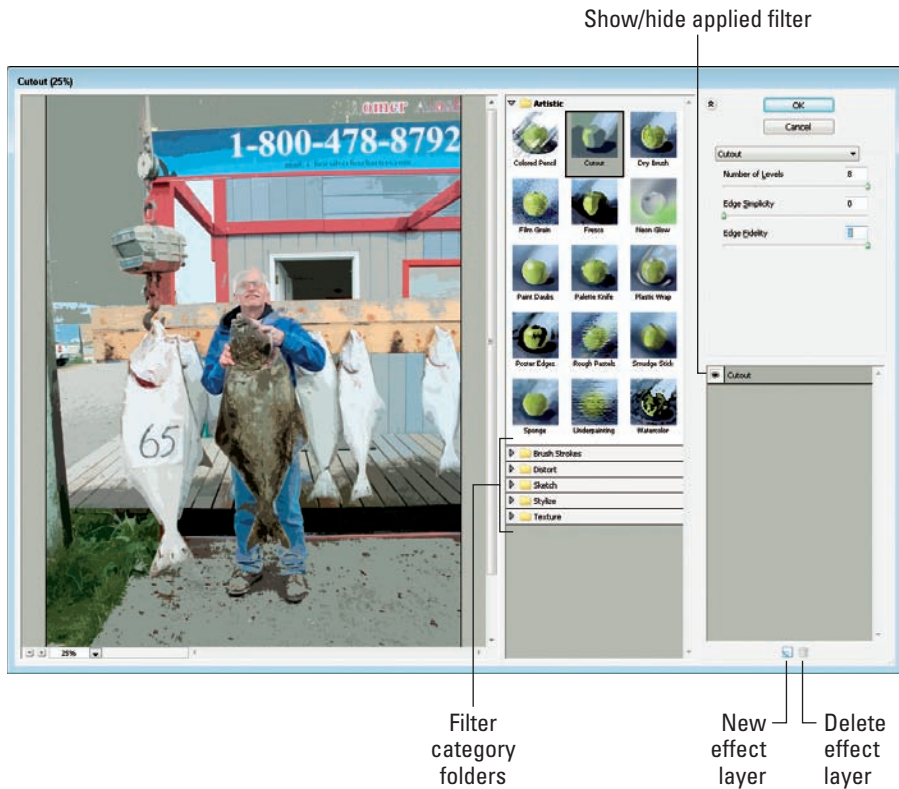
The preview is updated accordingly.

**5. When you're happy with the results, click OK to apply the filter and close the editing window.**

**6. If you want to apply another filter, click the New Effect Layer button at the bottom of the editing window.**

This step duplicates the existing filter.





**Figure 11-3:** Apply and edit multiple filters in the Filter Gallery.

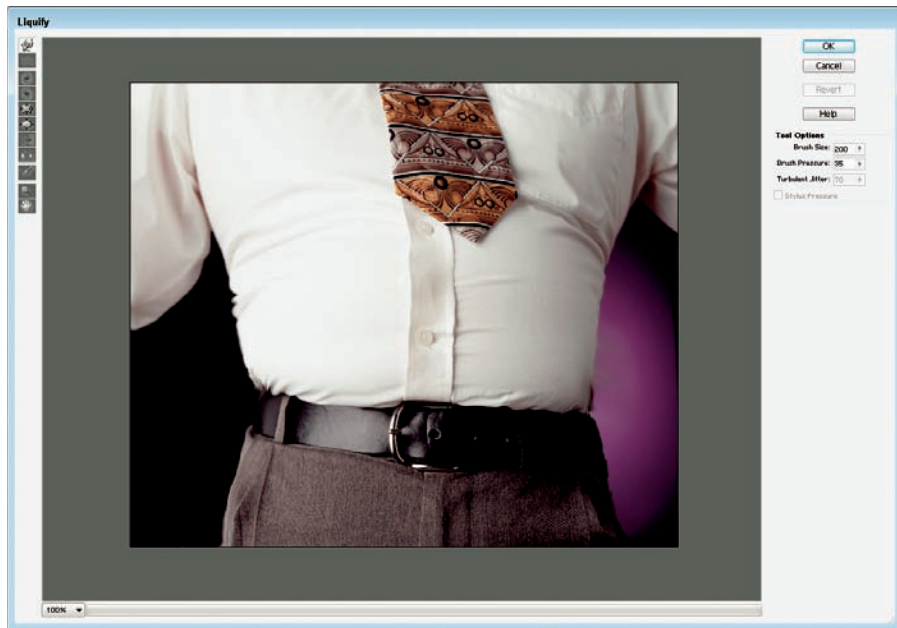
**7. Choose your desired new filter, which then replaces the duplicate in the Applied Filters area of the dialog box.**

Each of the filters you apply is displayed in the lower-right area of the Filter Gallery dialog box. To delete a filter, select it and click the Delete Effect Layer button. To edit a filter's settings, select it from the list and make any changes. Keep in mind that when you edit a filter's settings, the edit may affect the look of any subsequent filters you've applied. Finally, you can rearrange the order of the applied filters. Doing so changes the overall effect, however.

**8. When you're completely done, click OK to apply the filters and close the editing window.**

## Distorting with the Liquify Filter

The Liquify filter is really much more than a filter. It's a distortion that allows you to manipulate an image as though it were warm taffy. You can interactively twist, pull, twirl, pinch, and bloat parts of your image. You can even put your image on a diet, as we did in Figure 11-4. You can apply this distortion filter on the entire image, on a layer, or on a selection. This *überfilter* comes equipped with a “mega” dialog box with its own set of tools (on the left) and options (on the right), as shown in Figure 11-4.



**Figure 11-4:** The Liquify filter enables you to interactively distort your image.

Follow these steps to turn your image into a melted Dalí-esque wannabe:

**1. Choose Filter⇨Distort⇨Liquify in either Full Edit or Quick Fix mode.**

Your image appears in the preview area.

**2. Choose your distortion weapon of choice.**

You also have a number of tools to help zoom and navigate around your image window.

Here's a description of each tool to help you decide which to use (the letter in parentheses is the keyboard shortcut):

- *Warp (W)*: This tool pushes pixels forward while you drag, creating a stretched effect. Use short strokes or long pushes.
- *Turbulence (T)*: Drag to randomly jumble your pixels. Use this tool to re-create maelstroms of air, fire, and water with clouds, flames, and waves. Adjust how smooth the effect is by dragging the Turbulent Jitter slider in the Tool Options area. The higher the value, the smoother the effect.
- *Twirl Clockwise (R)* and *Twirl Counterclockwise (L)*: These options rotate pixels either clockwise or counterclockwise. Place the cursor in one spot, hold down the mouse button, and watch the pixels under your brush rotate; or drag the cursor to create a moving twirl effect.
- *Pucker (P)*: Click and hold or drag to pinch your pixels toward the center of the area covered by the brush. To reverse the pucker direction (*bloat*), press the Alt (Option on the Mac) key while you hold or drag.
- *Bloat (B)*: Click, and hold or drag to push pixels toward the edge of the brush area. To reverse the bloat direction (*pucker*), press the Alt (Option on the Mac) key while you hold or drag.
- *Shift Pixels (S)*: This tool moves pixels to the left when you drag the tool straight up. Drag down to move pixels to the right. Drag clockwise to increase the size of the object being distorted. Drag counterclockwise to decrease the size. To reverse any direction, press Alt (Option on the Mac) while you hold or drag.
- *Reflection (M)*: This tool drags a reversed image of your pixels at a 90-degree angle to the motion of the brush. Hold down the Alt (Option on the Mac) key to force the reflection in the direction opposite the motion of the brush. This tool works well for making reflections on water.
- *Zoom (Z)*: This tool, which works like the Zoom tool on the Elements Tools panel, zooms you in and out (you can zoom out by holding down the Alt [Option on the Mac] key when you press Z) so that

you can better see your distortions. You can also zoom by selecting a magnification percentage from the pop-up list in the lower-left corner of the dialog box.

- *Hand (H)*: This tool works like the Hand tool on the Elements Tools panel. Drag with the Hand tool to move the image around the preview window.

**3. Specify your options in the Tool Options area:**

- *Brush Size*: Drag the pop-up slider or enter a value from 1 to 600 pixels to specify the width of your brush.
- *Brush Pressure*: Drag the pop-up slider or enter a value from 1 to 100 to change the pressure. The higher the pressure, the faster the distortion effect is applied.
- *Turbulent Jitter*: Drag the pop-up slider or enter a value from 1 to 100 to adjust the smoothness when you're using the Turbulence tool.
- *Stylus Pressure*: If you're lucky enough to have a graphics tablet and stylus, click this option to select the pressure of your stylus.

**4. If you get a little carried away, select the Reconstruct tool (R), and then hold down or drag the mouse on the distorted portions of the image that you want to reverse or reconstruct.**

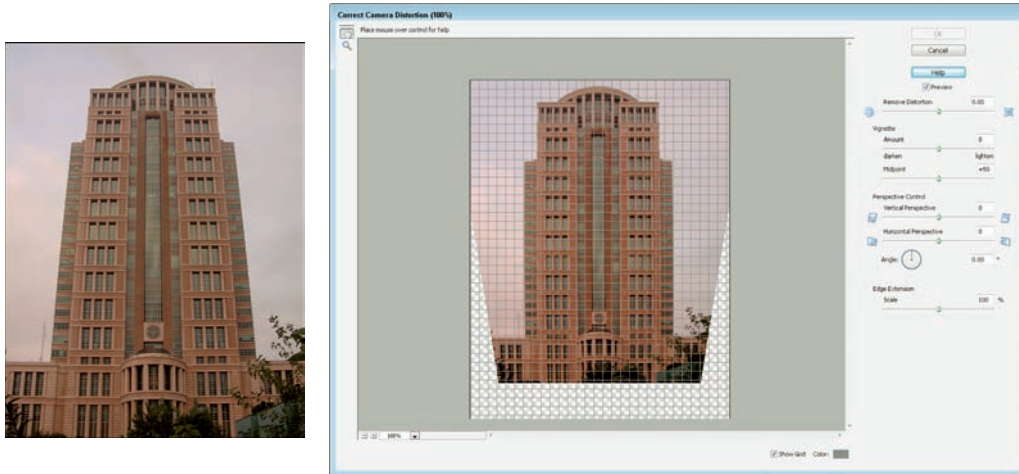
Note that the reconstruction occurs faster at the center of the brush's diameter. To partially reconstruct your image, set a low brush pressure and watch closely while your mouse drags across the distorted areas.

**5. Click OK to apply the distortions and close the dialog box.**

However, if you mucked up things and want to start again, click the Revert button to get your original, unaltered image back. This action also resets the tools to their previous settings.

## Correcting Camera Distortion

If you've ever tried to capture a looming skyscraper or cathedral in the lens of your camera, you know that it often involves tilting your camera and putting your neck in some unnatural position. And then, after all that, what you end up with is a distorted view of what was an impressive building in "real life," as shown with the "before" image on the left in Figure 11-5. That's not a problem with Elements — now. The Correct Camera Distortion filter fixes the distorted perspective created by both vertical and horizontal tilting of the camera. As a bonus, this filter also corrects other kinds of distortions caused by lens snafus.



**Figure 11-5:** The Correct Camera Distortion filter fixes distortions caused by camera tilt and lens flaws.

Here's how to fix all:

1. **Choose Filter** → **Correct Camera Distortion** in either **Full Edit** or **Quick Fix** mode.
2. **In the Correct Camera Distortion dialog box, be sure to select the Preview option.**
3. **Specify your correction options:**
  - **Remove Distortion:** Corrects *lens barrel*, which causes your images to appear spherized or bloated. This distortion can occur when you're using wide angle lenses. It also corrects *pincushion* distortion, which creates images that appear to be pinched in at the center, a flaw that's found when using telephoto or zoom lenses. Slide the slider while keeping an eye on the preview. Use the handy grid as your guide for proper alignment.
  - **Amount:** Adjusts the amount of lightening or darkening around the edges of your photo that you can get sometimes from incorrect lens shading. Change the width of the adjustment by specifying a midpoint value. A lower midpoint value affects more of the image. Then, move the Amount slider while viewing the preview.
  - **Vertical Perspective:** Corrects the distorted perspective created by tilting the camera up or down. Again, use the grid to assist in your correction. We used the Vertical Perspective to correct the building shown in Figure 11-5.

- *Horizontal Perspective*: Corrects halos and blurs caused by moving the camera (or if your subject can't sit still). For better results, set the angle of movement under the Angle option.
  - *Angle*: Enables you to rotate the image to compensate for tilting the camera. You may also need to tweak the angle slightly after correcting the vertical or horizontal perspective.
  - *Scale*: When you correct the perspective on your image, you may be left with blank areas on your canvas. You can scale your image up or down to crop into the image and eliminate these "holes." Note that scaling up results in interpolating your image up to its original pixel dimensions. Therefore, if you do this, be sure to start with an image that has a high-enough pixel dimension, or resolution, to avoid severe degradation. For more on resolution and interpolation, see Chapter 3.
  - *Show Grid*: Shows and hides the grid, as needed. Choose the color of your grid lines.
  - *Zoom*: Zooms in and out for your desired view.
4. **Click OK to apply the correction and close the dialog box.**

## Dressing Up with Photo and Text Effects

In addition to the multitude of filters at your disposal, Elements also provides a lot of different effects that you can apply to enhance your photos. Note that some effects automatically create a duplicate of the selected layer, whereas other effects can work only on flattened images. (See Chapter 8 for details on layers.) Finally, unlike with filters, you can't preview how the effect will look on your image or type, nor do you have any options to specify.

Here are the short steps to follow to apply an effect:

1. **Select your desired image layer in the Layers panel.**  
Or, if you're applying the effect to just a selection, make the selection before applying the effect.
2. **Choose Window⇨Effects.**
3. **Select the Photo Effects button at the top of the panel.**
4. **Select your desired category of photo effects from the drop-down list in the upper-right area of the panel:**
  - *Frame*: Includes effects that enhance the edges of the layer or selection, as shown in Figure 11-6.



PhotoSpin

**Figure 11-6:** Enhance your images by adding effects to your image and type layers.

- *Faded Photo, Monotone Color, Old Photo, and Vintage Photo:* This group of effects makes your image fade from color to grayscale, appear as a single color, or look like an old pencil sketch or a photo on old paper.
- *Misc Effects:* Includes a wide variety of effects to make your image appear as though it's snowing, made of lizard skin or neon tubes, or painted with oil pastels.
- *Show All:* Shows all the effects described in this list.

**5. On the Effects panel, double-click your desired effect or drag the effect onto the image.**

Note that you can view your styles and effects by thumbnails or by list. To change the view, click More in the upper-right corner of the panel.





You can also apply an effect to type. Select your type layer and follow Steps 2–5 in the preceding list. Note that a dialog box alerts you that the type layer must be simplified before the effect can be applied. Simplifying the layer, of course, means you lose any text editability.

## Adding Shadows, Glows, and More

Going hand in hand with filters and photo effects are layer styles. Also designed to enhance your image and type layers, layer styles range from simple shadows and bevels to the more complex styles, such as buttons and patterns. The wonderful thing about layer styles is that they're completely nondestructive. Unlike filters, layer styles don't change your pixel data. You can edit them or even delete them if you're unhappy with the results.

Here are some important facts about layer styles:

- ✓ **Layer styles can be applied only to layers.** Therefore, if all you have in your image is a background, be sure to convert it to a layer first.
- ✓ **Layer styles are dynamically linked to the contents of a layer.** If you move or edit the contents of the layers, the results are updated.
- ✓ **When you apply a layer style to a layer, an fx symbol appears next to the layer's name on the Layers panel.** Double-click the fx to bring up the Styles Settings dialog box and perform any editing that's necessary to get the look you want.

## Applying layer styles

Layer styles are stored in a few different libraries. You can add shadows, glows, beveled and embossed edges, and more complex styles, such as neon, plastic, chrome, and various other image effects. A sampling of styles is shown in Figure 11-7.

Here are the steps to apply a style and a description of each of the style libraries.

1. **Select your desired image or type layer on the Layers panel.**
2. **Choose Window⇨Effects.**
3. **Select the Layer Styles button at the top of the Effects panel.**

**4. Select your desired library of styles from the drop-down list in the upper-right area of the panel:**

- *Bevels*: Bevels add a three-dimensional edge on the outside or inside edges of the contents of a layer, giving the element some dimension. Emboss styles make elements appear as though they're raised off or punched into the page. You can change the appearance of these styles, depending on the type of bevel chosen. Adjust parameters, such as the lighting angle, distance (how close the shadow is to the layer contents), size, bevel direction, and opacity.
- *Drop and Inner Shadows*: Add a soft drop or inner shadow to a layer. Choose from the garden-variety shadow or one that includes noise, neon, or outlines. You can adjust the lighting angle, distance, size, and opacity, as desired.
- *Outer and Inner Glows*: Add a soft halo that appears on the outside or inside edges of your layer contents. Adjust the appearance of the glow by changing the lighting angle, size, and opacity of the glow.
- *Visibility*: Click Show, Hide, or Ghosted to either display, hide, or partially show the layer contents. The Layer Style remains fully displayed.
- *Complex and others*: The remaining layer styles are a cornucopia of different effects ranging from simple glass buttons to the more exotic effects, such as Groovy and Rose Impressions. You can customize all these layer styles to a certain extent by adjusting the various settings, which are similar to those for other styles in this list.

**5. On the Layer Styles panel, double-click your desired effect or drag the effect onto the image.**

The style, with its default settings, is applied to the layer. Note that layer styles are cumulative. You can apply multiple styles — specifically, one style from each library — to a single layer.

To edit the style's settings, either double-click the fx on the Layers panel or choose Layer⇨Layer Style⇨Style Settings.

You can also apply layer styles to type layers, and the type layer doesn't need to be simplified.





**Figure 11-7:** Add dimension by applying shadows and bevels to your object or type.

## Working with layer styles

Here are a few last tips for working with layer styles:

- ✓ **Delete a layer style or styles.** Choose Layer⇨Layer Style⇨Clear Layer Style or drag the fx icon on the Layers panel to the trash can icon.
- ✓ **Copy and paste layer styles onto other layers.** Select the layer containing the layer style and choose Layer⇨Layer Style⇨Copy Layer Style. Select the layer or layers on which you want to apply the effect and choose Layer⇨Layer Style⇨Paste Layer Style. If it's easier, you can also just drag and drop an effect from one layer to another while holding down the Alt (Option on the Mac) key.
- ✓ **Hide or show layer styles.** Choose Layer⇨Layer Style⇨Hide All Effects or Show All Effects.
- ✓ **Scale a layer style.** Choose Layer⇨Layer Style⇨Scale Effects. Select Preview and enter a value between 1 and 1,000 percent. This action allows you to scale the style without scaling the element.

## Mixing It Up with Blend Modes

Elements sports a whopping 25 blend modes. *Blend modes* affect how colors interact between layers and also how colors interact when you apply paint to a layer. Not only do blend modes create interesting effects, but you can also easily apply, edit, or remove blend modes without touching your image pixels.

The various blend modes are located on a drop-down list at the top of your Layers panel in Full Edit mode. The best way to get a feel for the effect of blend modes is not to memorize the descriptions we give you in the following sections. Instead, grab an image with some layers and apply each of the blend modes to one or more of the layers to see what happens. The exact result varies, depending on the colors in your image layers.

### General blend modes

The Normal blend mode needs no introduction. It's the one you probably use the most. Dissolve is the next one on the list and, ironically, is probably the one you use the least (both blend modes are illustrated in Figure 11-8):

- ✔ **Normal:** The default mode displays each pixel unadjusted.
- ✔ **Dissolve:** This mode can be seen only on a layer with an opacity setting of less than 100 percent. It allows some pixels from lower layers, which are randomized, to show through the target (selected) layer.

Normal



Dissolve



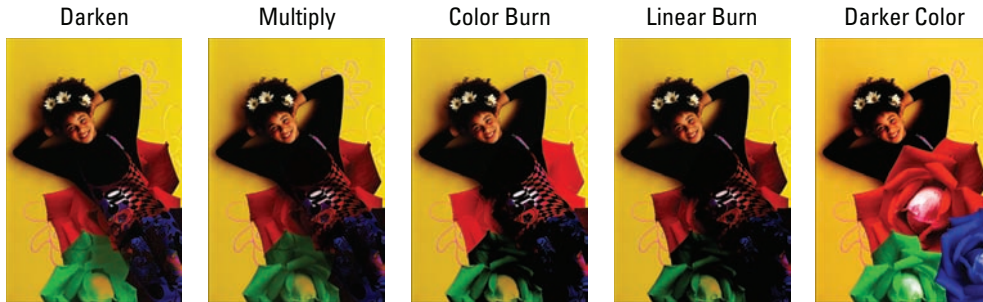
*Corbis Digital Stock*

**Figure 11-8:** The Dissolve blend mode allows pixels from one layer to peek randomly through another.

### Darken blend modes

These blend modes produce effects that darken your image in various ways, as shown in Figure 11-9:

- ✔ **Darken:** Turns lighter pixels transparent if the pixels on the target layer are lighter than those below. If the pixels are darker, they're unchanged.



Corbis Digital Stock

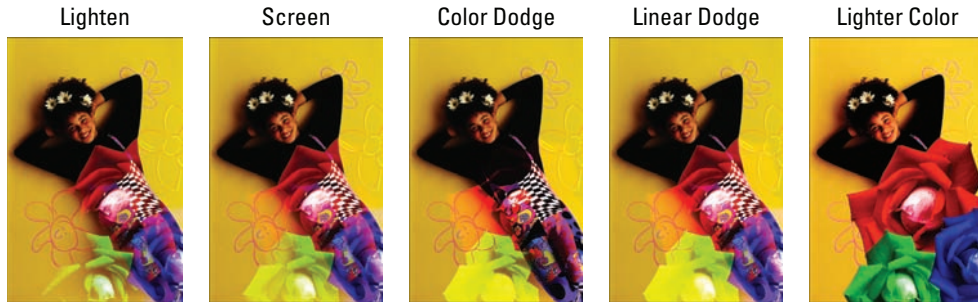
**Figure 11-9:** These blend modes darken your image layers.

- ✓ **Multiply:** Burns the target layer onto the layers underneath, thereby darkening all colors where they mix. When you're painting with the Brush or Pencil tool, each stroke creates a darker color, as though you're drawing with markers.
- ✓ **Color Burn:** Darkens the layers underneath the target layer and burns them with color, creating a contrast effect, like applying a dark dye to your image.
- ✓ **Linear Burn:** Darkens the layers underneath the target layer by decreasing the brightness. This effect is similar to Multiply but often makes parts of your image black.
- ✓ **Darker Color:** When blending two layers, the darker color of the two colors is visible.

## Lighten blend modes

The lighten blend modes are the opposite of the darken blend modes. All these blend modes create lightening effects on your image, as shown in Figure 11-10:

- ✓ **Lighten:** Turns darker pixels transparent if the pixels on the target layer are darker than those below. If the pixels are lighter, they're unchanged. This effect is the opposite of Darken.
- ✓ **Screen:** Lightens the target layer where it mixes with the layers underneath. This effect is the opposite of Multiply.
- ✓ **Color Dodge:** Lightens the pixels in the layers underneath the target layer and infuses them with colors from the top layer. This effect is similar to applying a bleach to your image.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 11-10:** These blend modes lighten your image layers.

- ✓ **Linear Dodge:** Lightens the layers underneath the target layer by increasing the brightness. This effect is similar to Screen but often makes parts of your image white.
- ✓ **Lighter Color:** When blending two layers, the lighter color of the two colors is visible.

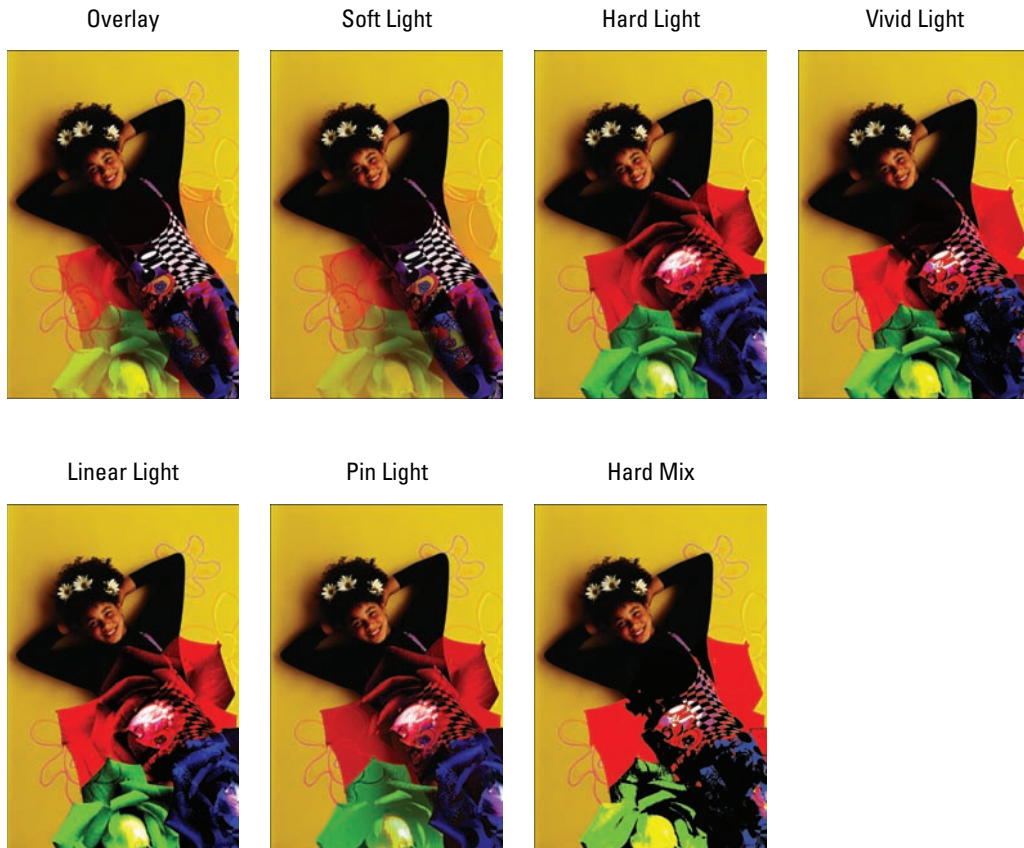
## Lighting blend modes

This group of blend modes plays with the lighting in your layers, as shown in Figure 11-11:

- ✓ **Overlay:** Overlay multiplies the dark pixels in the target layer and screens the light pixels in the underlying layers. It also enhances the contrast and saturation of colors.
- ✓ **Soft Light:** This mode darkens the dark (greater than 50 percent gray) pixels and lightens the light (less than 50 percent gray) pixels. The effect is like shining a soft spotlight on the image.
- ✓ **Hard Light:** This mode multiplies the dark (greater than 50 percent gray) pixels and screens the light (less than 50 percent gray) pixels. The effect is similar to shining a bright, hard spotlight on the image.
- ✓ **Vivid Light:** If the pixels on the top layer are darker than 50 percent gray, this mode darkens the colors by increasing the contrast. If the pixels on the top layer are lighter than 50 percent gray, the mode lightens the colors by decreasing the contrast.
- ✓ **Linear Light:** If the pixels on the top layer are darker than 50 percent gray, the mode darkens the colors by decreasing the brightness. If the pixels on the top layer are lighter than 50 percent gray, the mode lightens the colors by increasing the brightness.



- ✓ **Pin Light:** If the pixels on the top layer are darker than 50 percent gray, the mode replaces pixels darker than those on the top layer and doesn't change lighter pixels. If the pixels on the top layer are lighter than 50 percent gray, the mode replaces the pixels lighter than those on the top layer and doesn't change pixels that are darker. The mode is usually reserved for special effects.
- ✓ **Hard Mix:** This mode is similar to Vivid Light but reduces the colors to a total of eight — cyan, magenta, yellow, black, red, green, blue, and white. This mode creates a posterized effect.



*Corbis Digital Stock*

**Figure 11-11:** Some blend modes adjust the lighting between your image layers.



## Inverter blend modes

The Inverter blend modes invert your colors and tend to produce some radical effects, as shown in Figure 11-12:

- ✔ **Difference:** Produces a negative effect according to the brightness values on the top layers. If the pixels on the top layer are black, no change occurs in the underlying layers. If the pixels on the top layer are white, the mode inverts the colors of the underlying layers.
- ✔ **Exclusion:** Like Difference, but with less contrast and saturation. If the pixels on the top layer are black, no change occurs in the underlying layers. If the pixels on the top layer are white, this mode inverts the colors of the underlying layers. Medium colors blend to create shades of gray.

Difference



Exclusion



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 11-12:** Difference and Exclusion blend modes invert colors.

## HSL blend modes

These blend modes use the HSL (hue, saturation, lightness) color model to mix colors, as shown in Figure 11-13:

- ✔ **Hue:** Blends the *luminance* (brightness) and *saturation* (intensity of the color) of the underlying layers with the *hue* (color) of the top layer.
- ✔ **Saturation:** Blends the luminance and hue of the underlying layers with the saturation of the top layer.
- ✔ **Color:** Blends the luminance of the underlying layers with the saturation and hue of the top layer. This mode enables you to paint color while preserving the shadows, highlights, and details of the underlying layers.



The Color mode is a great tool for coloring images. If you've ever admired those hand-tinted black-and-white photos used in greeting cards and posters, you can create the same effect fairly easily. First, make sure that your black-and-white image is in RGB (red, green, blue) mode so that it can accept color. Create a new layer on the Layers panel and set it to the Color blend mode. Grab the Brush tool (with a soft-edged tip), choose your desired color, and paint over your image. Adjust your opacity to less than 100 percent to create a softer effect.

- ✓ **Luminosity:** The opposite of Color, this mode blends the hue and saturation of the underlying layers with the luminance of the top layer. This mode also preserves the shadows, highlights, and details from the top layer and mixes them with the colors of the underlying layers.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 11-13:** Some blend modes mix colors based on the actual hue, richness, and brightness of color.

## Using Photomerge

The awesome Photomerge features help in creating fabulous composites from multiple images. Whether it's creating the perfect shot of a group of friends or of your favorite vacation spot without passing cars and people, the Photomerge feature is the go-to tool to get it done. The following sections tell you how each of the four Photomerge commands help to create the special type of composite image you need.

### *Photomerge Panorama*

The Photomerge Panorama command enables you to combine multiple images into a single panoramic image. From skylines to mountain ranges, you can take several overlapping shots and stitch them together into one. To be successful at merging photos into a panorama, you need to start with good source files. First of all, make sure that when you shoot your photos, you overlap your individual images by 15 to 40 percent, but no more than 50 percent. Then, avoid using distortion lenses (such as fish-eye) and your camera's zoom setting. Also, try to keep the same exposure settings for even lighting. Lastly, try to stay in the same position and keep your camera at the same level for each photo. Using a tripod and rotating the head can help you get shots at the same camera level.

Follow these steps to create a Photomerge Panorama image:

**1. Choose File⇨New⇨Photomerge Panorama in Full Edit mode.**

**2. In the first Photomerge dialog box, select your source files.**

You can select Files or Folder from the Use drop-down list.

**3. Click Add Open Files to use all open files, or click the Browse button and navigate to where your files or folder are located.**

**4. Choose your desired mode under Layout.**

Here's a brief description of each mode:

- *Auto*: Elements analyzes your images.
- *Perspective*: If you shot your images with perspective or at extreme angles, this is your mode. Try this mode if you shot your images with a tripod.
- *Cylindrical*: If you shot your images with a wide-angle lens or you have those 360-degree, full panoramic shots, this is a good mode.
- *Reposition Only*: Elements doesn't take any distortion into account; it simply scans the images and positions them in the best position.

If you choose any of the preceding modes, Elements opens and automatically assembles the source files to create the composite panorama in the work area of the dialog box. If it looks good, skip to Step 7.

Elements alerts you if it can't automatically composite your source files. You then have to assemble the images manually.

- *Interactive Layout*: This option opens the work area pane, as shown in Figure 11-14. Elements tries to align and stitch the images the best it can, but you may have to manually complete or adjust the panorama.

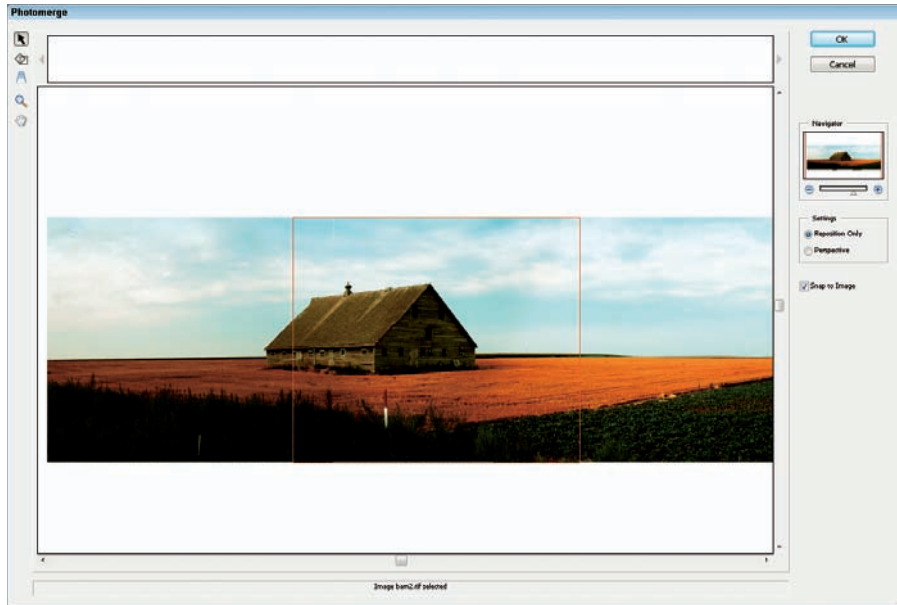


Note that with any of the modes, Elements leaves your merged image in layers. You'll also notice that a layer mask has been added to each layer to better blend your panoramic image. For more on layer masks, see Chapter 8.

**5. If Elements hasn't already done so for you, drag the image thumbnails from the lightbox area (the small white area at the top) onto the work area with the Select Image tool (the arrow), or simply double-click the lightbox thumbnail to add it to the composition.**

**6. Arrange and position your images:**

- *Select Image tool*: Positions the images.
- *Rotate Image tool*: Makes rotations.



PhotoSpin

**Figure 11-14:** Combine multiple images into a single panorama with Photomerge.

- *Zoom and Move View tools:* Helps view and navigate around your panorama.
- *Navigator view box:* Zooms into and out of your composition when you drag the slider.
- *Snap to Image option:* Enables overlapping images to automatically snap into place.

**7. To adjust the Vanishing Point, first select the Perspective option in the Settings area and click your desired image with the Set Vanishing Point tool.**

Elements changes the perspective of the composition. By default, Elements selects the center image as the vanishing point. If necessary, you can move the other images.

Note that when you select the Perspective setting, Elements links non-Vanishing Point images to the Vanishing Point image. To break the link, click the Normal Setting button or separate the images in the work area.

**8. Click OK to create the panorama.**

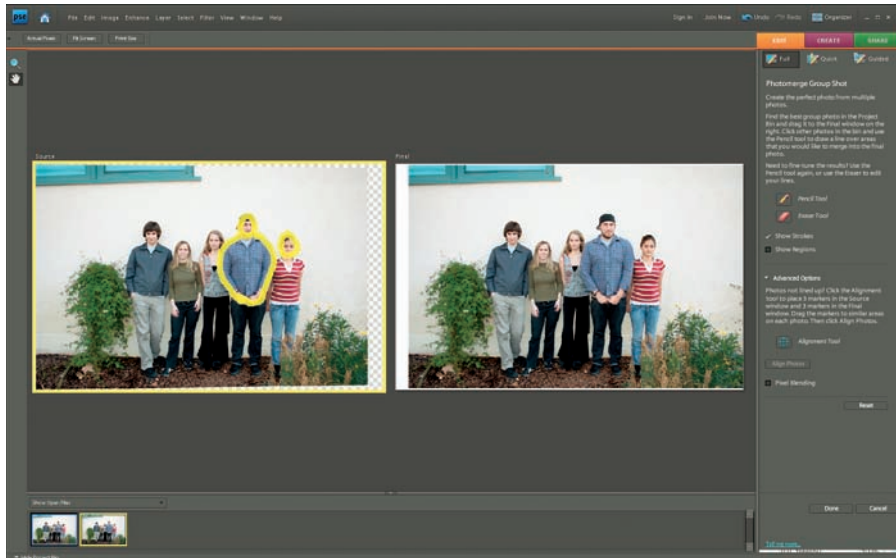
The file opens as a new file in Elements.

## Photomerge Group Shot

We all know how hard it is to get a group of people to all look great in one shot. Well, Photomerge Group Shot lets you take multiple group photos and merge the best of them to get that perfect shot.

Here are the steps to create a Photomerge Group Shot image:

1. Select two or more photos from your Photo Bin.
2. Choose **File**⇨**New**⇨**Photomerge Group Shot** in any of the Edit modes.
3. Take your best overall group shot and drag it from the Photo Bin onto the Final pane.
4. Select one of your other photos in the Photo Bin to use as your Source image. Drag it to the Source pane.
5. With the Pencil tool, draw a line around the portions of the Source photo you want to merge into your Final photo, as shown in Figure 11-15.



**Figure 11-15:** Get the perfect group shot from several images.

You can choose to show your yellow pencil strokes or show your regions, which will be highlighted with a blue overlay.

**6. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 with any remaining photos.**

If your photos aren't aligned, you can use the Alignment tool under the Advanced Options.

**7. With the Alignment tool, click your Source image and position the three target markers on three key locations. Do the same on the Final image and choose similar locations.**

**8. Click the Align Photos button.**

Again, as with Photomerge Panorama, the better your starting source images are (similar framing, similar size), the better the merged result.

**9. If you make a mess of things, click the Reset button.**

**10. When you're satisfied with the result, click Done.**

The file opens as a new file in Elements.

## *Photomerge Faces*

Photomerge Faces, more of a fun than useful tool, lets you blend features from multiple faces to get a kind of hybrid face.

To create a hybrid human by using the Photomerge Faces feature, follow these steps:

**1. Select two or more photos from your Photo Bin.**

**2. Choose File⇨New⇨Photomerge Faces in any of the Edit modes.**

**3. Choose the face you want to be your “canvas” (or starting image) and drag it from the Photo Bin onto the Final pane.**

**4. Select one of your other photos in the Photo Bin to use as your Source image. Drag it to the Source pane.**

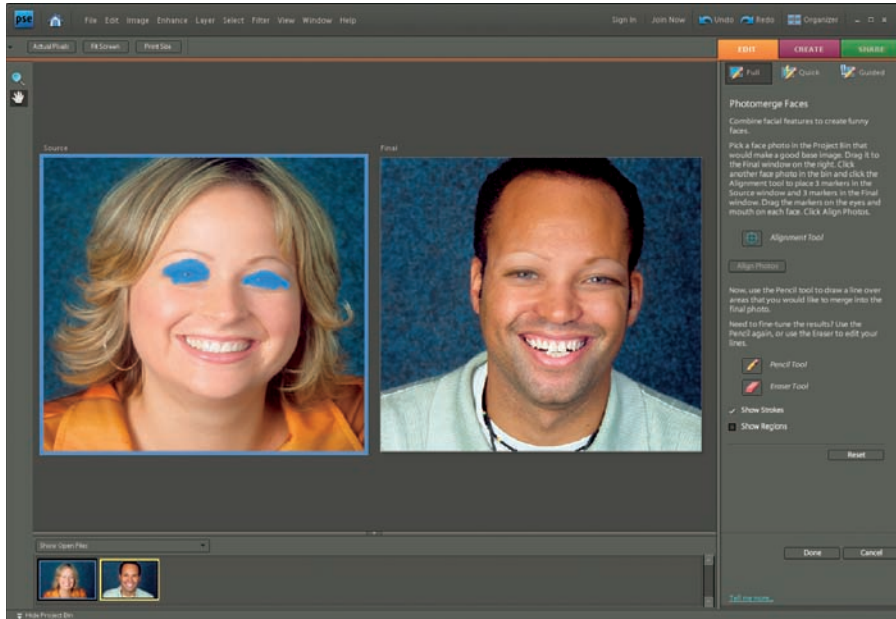
**5. With the Alignment tool, click your Source image and position the three target markers on the eyes and mouth of the face, and then do the same on the Final image.**

**6. Click the Align Photos button.**

This command sizes the images to better match and align the features. It's always best to start with similarly sized and oriented images. Shooting the images in similar lighting helps, as well.

**7. With the Pencil tool, draw a line around the features of the Source photo that you want to merge into your Final photo, as shown in Figure 11-16.**





**Figure 11-16:** Create a single human from many with Photomerge Faces.

You can choose to show your blue pencil strokes or show your regions, which will be highlighted with a blue overlay.

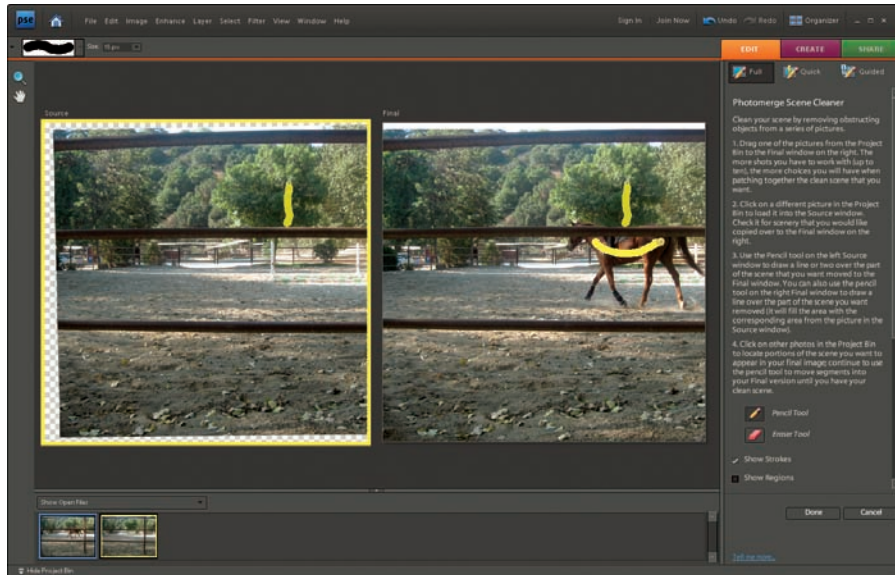
8. If you make a mess of things, click the **Reset** button.
9. When you're satisfied with the result, click **Done**.

## Photomerge Scene Cleaner



Photomerge Scene Cleaner (see Figure 11-17) sounds like a tool you might see in an episode of CSI to mop up a crime scene, but it isn't quite that gory. This latest addition to the family of Photomerge commands enables you to create the optimum image by allowing you to eliminate annoying distractions, such as cars, passersby, and so on.





**Figure 11-17:** Eliminate annoying distractions with Photomerge Scene Cleaner.

To get the best Source images for a “clean scene,” be sure to take multiple shots of your scene from the same angle and distance. It also works best when the elements you want to eliminate are moving.

Follow these steps to create a Photomerge Scene Cleaner composite:

- 1. Select two or more photos from your Photo Bin.**
- 2. Choose File⇨New⇨Photomerge Scene Cleaner in any of the Edit modes.**  
Elements attempts to auto-align your images the best it can.
- 3. Take your best overall shot of the scene and drag it from the Photo Bin onto the Final pane.**
- 4. Select one of your other photos in the Photo Bin to use as your Source image. Drag it to the Source pane.**
- 5. With the Pencil tool, draw a line around the elements in the Final photo that you want to be replaced by content from the Source photo.**
- 6. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 with the remaining shots of the scene.**

If your photos aren’t aligned, you can use the Alignment tool under the Advanced Options.

- 7. With the Alignment tool, click your Source image and position the three target markers on three key locations.**

Do the same on the Final image, choosing similar locations.

- 8. Click the Align Photos button, as shown in Figure 11-17.**

Again, as with the other Photomerge commands, the more similar your starting source images are (similar framing, similar angle), the better the merged result.

- 9. If you make a mess of things, click the Reset button.**

- 10. When you're satisfied with the result, click Done.**

The file opens as a new file in Elements.

# Drawing and Painting

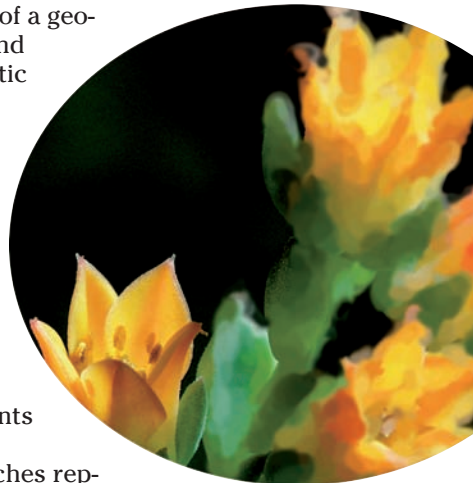
## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Choosing colors
- ▶ Drawing with the Elements Pencil tool
- ▶ Painting with the Elements Brush tool
- ▶ Filling and outlining your selections
- ▶ Pouring color with the Paint Bucket tool
- ▶ Creating gradients and patterns
- ▶ Creating and editing shapes of all sorts

**E**lements is such a deluxe, full-service image editing program that it doesn't just stop at giving you tools to select, repair, organize, and share your images. It figures that you may need to add a swash of color, either freeform with a brush or pencil, or in the form of a geometric or organic shape. Don't worry: This drawing and painting business isn't just for those with innate artistic talent. In fact, Elements gives you plenty of preset brushes and shapes that you can use. If you can pick a tool and drag your mouse, you can draw and paint.

## *Choosing Color*

Before you start drawing or painting, you may want to change your color to something other than the default black. If you've read the earlier chapters in this book, we're sure that you checked out the Elements Tools panel and noticed the two overlapping color swatches at the bottom of the panel. These two swatches represent two categories of color: *foreground* and *background*. Here's a quick look at how they work with different tools:



- ✓ When you add type, paint with the Brush tool, or create a shape, you're using the foreground color.
- ✓ On the background layer of an image, when you erase with the Eraser tool, or when you increase the size of your canvas, you're accessing the background color.
- ✓ When you drag with the Gradient tool, as long as your gradient is set to the default, you're laying down a blend of color from the foreground to the background.

Elements gives you three ways to choose your foreground and background colors: the Color Picker; the Color Swatches panel; and the Eyedropper tool, which samples color in an image. In the following sections, we explore each one.

## Working with the Color Picker

By default, Elements uses a black foreground color and a white background color. If you're experimenting with color and want to go back to the default color, press the D key. If you want to swap between foreground and background colors, press the X key. If you want any other color of the rainbow, click your desired swatch to change either the foreground or background color. This action transports you to the Color Picker, as shown in Figure 12-1.

Here are the steps to choose your color via the Color Picker:

- 1. Click either the Foreground or Background color swatch on the Tools panel.**

The Color Picker appears.

- 2. Drag the color slider or click the color bar to get close to the general color you desire.**
- 3. Choose the exact color you want by clicking in the large square, or *color field*, on the left.**

The circle cursor targets your selected color. The two swatches in the upper-right corner of the dialog box represent your newly selected color and the original foreground or background color.

The numeric values on the right side of the dialog box also change according to the color you selected. If you happen to know the values of your desired color, you may also enter them in the text boxes. Remember that RGB (red, green, blue) values are based on brightness levels, from 0 (black) to 255 (white). You can also enter HSB (hue, saturation, brightness) values or the hexadecimal formula for Web colors.

- 4. When you're happy with your color, click OK.**



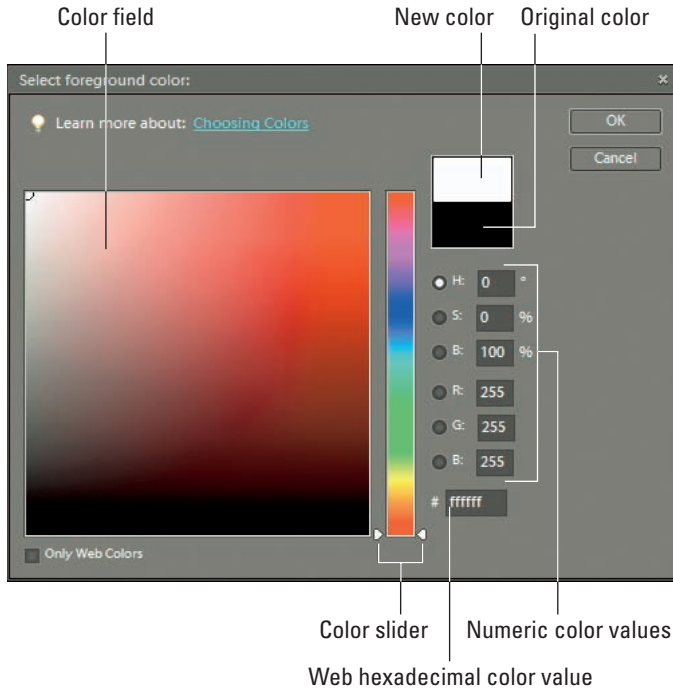


Figure 12-1: The Color Picker.

## Dipping into the Color Swatches panel

Another way Elements enables you to choose a foreground or background color is by selecting a color on the Color Swatches panel. The Color Swatches panel is a digital version of the artist's paint palette. In addition to preset colors, you can mix and store your own colors for use now and later. You can have several panels for certain types of projects or images. For example, you may want a panel of skin tones for retouching portraits. Choose Window⇨Color Swatches to bring up the panel, as shown in Figure 12-2.

To grab a color from the Color Swatches panel, click the color swatch you want. By the way, it doesn't matter which tool you have. As soon as you move the tool over the panel, it temporarily converts to an eyedropper that samples the color and makes it your new foreground or background color.



Figure 12-2: The Color Swatches panel.



Although the Color Swatches panel is a breeze to use, here are a few tips to help you along:

- ✓ **Change the background color.** Either first select the background swatch on the Tools panel or Ctrl-click (⌘-click on the Mac) a swatch.
- ✓ **Use preset colors.** To load a particular preset swatch library, select it from the Color Swatches panel drop-down list. Elements offers libraries specific to Web graphics, photo filters, and Windows systems.
- ✓ **Add a color to the Color Swatches panel.** To add a color to the Swatches panel, choose New Swatch from the More pop-up menu. You can also simply click in an empty portion of the panel. Name your swatch and click OK.
- ✓ **Save swatches.** Choose Save Swatches from the More pop-up menu in the upper-right corner of the panel. We recommend saving the swatch library in the default Color Swatches folder in the Presets folder. If by chance this folder doesn't come up by default, just navigate to the Color Swatches folder by following this partial path: `Adobe\Photoshop Elements 7.0\Presets\Color Swatches`.
- ✓ **Load swatches.** If you want to load a custom library created by you or by someone else, choose More⇨Load Swatches. In the dialog box, select your desired library from the Color Swatches folder. The new library is *appended* (added) to your current library.  
  
You can also work with swatches by using the Preset Manager. For more on the Preset Manager, see Chapter 2.
- ✓ **Delete swatches.** To delete a swatch, drag it to the trash can at the bottom of the panel or Alt-click (Option-click on the Mac) the swatch.
- ✓ **Change the panel's appearance.** Click the More button in the upper-right corner to choose from Small or Large Thumbnail (swatch squares) or Small or Large List (swatch squares with a name).
- ✓ **Replace your current swatch library with a different library.** Choose Replace Swatches from the More pop-up menu. Choose a library from the Color Swatches folder.

## Sampling with the Eyedropper tool

Another way that Elements enables you to choose color is via the Eyedropper tool. The Eyedropper tool comes in handy when you want to sample an existing color in an image and use it for another element. For example, you may want your text to be the same color as the green background in the image shown in Figure 12-3. Grab the Eyedropper tool (or press I) and click a shade of green in the background. The tool samples the color and makes it your new foreground color. You can then create the type with your new foreground color.



*Corbis Digital Stock*

**Figure 12-3:** The Eyedropper tool enables you to sample color from your image to use with other elements, such as type.

Here are a few things to remember when you're using the Eyedropper tool:

- ✓ **Sample a new foreground or background color.** Obviously, you can select either the foreground or background swatch on the Tools panel before you sample a color. But if the foreground color swatch is active, holding down the Alt (Option on the Mac) key samples a new background color, and vice versa.
- ✓ **Choose a color from any open image.** If you have multiple images open, you can even sample a color from an image that you're not working on!
- ✓ **Choose your sample size on the Options bar.** You can select the color of just the single pixel you click (Point Sample), or Elements can average the colors of the pixels in a 3-x-3- or 5-x-5-pixel area.
- ✓ **Make colors Web safe.** If you right-click your image to bring up the context menu, you have a hidden option: Copy Color as HTML. This option



provides the Web hexadecimal color formula for that sampled color and copies it to the Clipboard. You can then paste that formula into an HTML file or grab the Type tool and choose Edit⇧Paste to view the formula in your image.

- ✓ **Toggle between the Eyedropper and other tools.** Elements, multitasker that it is, enables you to temporarily access the Eyedropper tool when you're using the Brush, Pencil, Color Replacement, Gradient, Paint Bucket, Cookie Cutter, or Shape tools. Simply press the Alt (Option on the Mac) key to access the Eyedropper. Release the Alt (Option on the Mac) key to go back to your original tool.

## Getting Artsy with the Pencil and Brush Tools

If you've read the first part of this chapter and have been thoroughly doused with every way to choose a color, you probably want to find out how to paint and draw with that color. The Pencil and Brush tools give you the power to put your creative abilities to work, and the following sections show you how.



When you use these two tools, you benefit immensely from the use of a pressure-sensitive digital drawing tablet. The awkwardness of trying to draw or paint with a mouse disappears and leaves you with tools that behave much closer to their analog ancestors.

### Drawing with the Pencil tool

Drawing with the Pencil tool creates hard edges. You can't get the soft, feathery edges that you can with the Brush tool. In fact, the edges of a pencil stroke can't even be *anti-aliased*. (For more on anti-aliasing, see the following section.) Keep in mind that if you draw anything other than vertical or horizontal lines, your lines will have some jaggies when they're viewed up close. But hey, don't diss the Pencil just yet. Those hard-edged strokes can be perfect for Web graphics. What's more, the Pencil tool can erase itself, and it's great for digital sketches, as shown in Figure 12-4.

Follow these steps to become familiar with the Pencil tool:

- 1. Select the Pencil tool from the Tools panel.**

You can also press the N key. By default, the Pencil tool's brush tip is the 1-pixel brush. Yes, even though the Pencil tip is hard-edged, we still refer to it as a brush.



*Illustration credit: Chris Blair*

**Figure 12-4:** The Pencil tool can be used for digital drawings.

2. **On the Options bar, choose your desired pencil options, beginning with a brush preset. Click the arrow and select your desired brush from the Brush Preset Picker drop-down panel.**

To load another preset library, click the Brushes menu at the top of the panel.



Remember that you aren't limited to the standard old brush strokes. Check out the Assorted and Special Effects brushes, found in the Brushes drop-down list on the Brushes panel. You'll be surprised at some of the interesting brushes lurking on these panels. Use them to create standalone images or to enhance your photographic creations.

Access the pop-up menu on the Brushes panel to save, rename, or delete individual brushes and also save, load, and reset brush libraries. For more on these operations, see the following section.

3. **Choose your brush size.**

A preset brush's pixel diameters are shown as text below a thumbnail image of the brush shape. If you want to change the size of that brush tip, drag the Size slider or enter a value.

4. **Select a blending mode.**

Blend modes alter the way the color you're applying interacts with the color on your canvas. You can find more about blend modes in Chapter 11.

5. **If you want the background to show through your strokes, adjust the opacity by dragging the slider or entering an Opacity percentage less than 100 percent.**

The lower the percentage, the more the background images show through.



Your strokes must be on a separate layer above your images for you to be able to adjust the opacity and blend modes after you draw them. For more on layers, see Chapter 8.

6. **Select Auto Erase if you want to enable that option.**

This option removes portions of your pencil strokes. For example, say that your foreground color is black and your background color is white, and you apply some black strokes. With Auto Erase enabled, you apply white if you drag back over the black strokes. If you drag over the white background, you apply black.

7. **Click and drag with the mouse to create your freeform lines.**

To draw straight lines, click at a starting point, release the mouse button, and then Shift-click at a second point.

## Painting with the Brush tool

The Brush tool creates soft-edged strokes. How soft those strokes are depends on which brush you use. By default, even the hardest brush has a slightly soft edge because it's anti-aliased. *Anti-aliasing* creates a single row of partially filled pixels along the edges to produce the illusion of a smooth edge. You can also get even softer brushes, which employ feathering. For details on feathering, see Chapter 7.

The Brush tool shares most of the options found in the Pencil tool, except that the Auto Erase feature isn't available. Here's the lowdown on the unique Brush options:

✓ **Airbrush:** Click the Airbrush button on the Options bar to apply the Airbrush mode. In this mode, the longer you hold down the mouse button, the more paint the Brush pumps out and the wider the airbrush effect spreads.

✓ **Tablet Options:** If you're using a pressure-sensitive digital drawing tablet, check the settings you want the tablet to control, including size, scatter, opacity, roundness, and hue jitter. The harder you press with the stylus, the greater the effect of these options.

✓ **More Options:** Click the brush icon to access additional options. These options, referred to as brush *dynamics*, change while you apply your stroke. See Figure 12-5 for an example of each one. These options include

- *Fade:* The lower the value, the quicker the stroke fades. Zero, however, creates no fade.
- *Hue Jitter:* Vary the stroke between the foreground and background colors. The higher the value, the more frequent the variation.
- *Scatter:* The higher the value, the higher the number of brush marks and the farther apart they are.
- *Spacing:* The higher the number, the more space between marks.
- *Hardness:* The higher the value, the harder the brush.

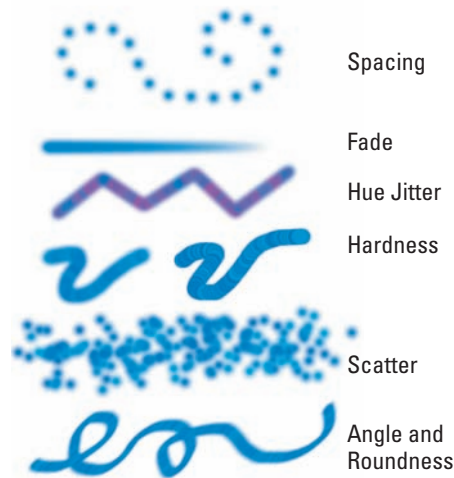


Figure 12-5: Change brush options to create a custom brush.



- **Angle:** If you create an oval brush by adjusting the roundness (see the following bullet), this option controls the angle of that oval brush stroke. It's so much easier to drag the points and the arrow on the diagram than to "guesstimate" values in the text boxes.
- **Roundness:** A setting of 100 percent is totally circular. The lower the percentage, the more elliptical your brush becomes.

You can lock in these brush dynamics by selecting the Keep These Settings for All Brushes check box, ensuring that every brush you select adopts these settings.

Like the Pencil tool, additional features for the Brush tool appear in the pop-up list on the Brush Preset Picker drop-down panel. Here's a quick description of each:

- ✓ **Save Brush:** Allows you to save a custom brush as a preset. See the following section for details.
- ✓ **Rename Brush:** Don't like your brush's moniker? Change it with this option.
- ✓ **Delete Brush:** Don't like your entire brush? Eliminate it with this option.
- ✓ **Reset Brushes:** Reverts your current brush library to the default.
- ✓ **Save Brushes:** Saves custom brushes in a separate library.
- ✓ **Load Brushes:** Loads a preset or custom brush library.
- ✓ **The display options:** Not a single command, but rather a set of commands that enable you to change the way your brush tips are displayed. The default view is Stroke Thumbnail, which displays the appearance of the stroke. These commands include Text Only, Small and Large Thumbnail, and Small and Large List.

You can also manage brush tip libraries by using the Preset Manager. See Chapter 2 for information on using the Preset Manager.

## Creating your own brush

After playing with all the various options, if you really like the Franken-brush you've created, feel free to save it as a preset that you can access again in the future. Choose Save Brush from the pop-up menu on the Brush Preset Picker panel. Name the brush and click OK. Your new custom brush shows up at the bottom of the Brush Preset Picker drop-down panel.

There's one additional way to create a brush. Elements allows you to create a brush from all or part of your image. The image can be a photograph or something you've painted or drawn.

Here's how to create a brush from your image:

**1. Select part of your image with any of the selection tools.**

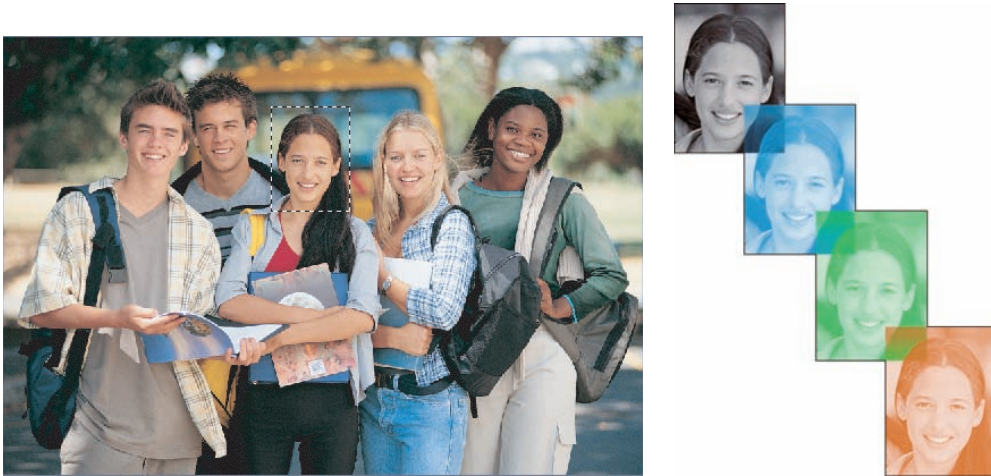
If you want to use the entire image or entire layer, deselect everything. For more on selections, see Chapter 7.

**2. Choose *Edit* ⇨ *Define Brush* or *Edit* ⇨ *Define Brush from Selection*.**

You see one command or the other, depending on what you do in Step 1.

**3. Name the brush and click OK.**

The new brush shows up at the bottom of your Brush Preset Picker drop-down panel. Note that your brush is only a grayscale version of your image. When you use the brush, it automatically applies the color you've selected as your foreground color, as shown in Figure 12-6.



*Digital Vision*

**Figure 12-6:** Create a custom brush from a portion of your image.

## *Using the Impressionist Brush*

In this section, we introduce the Impressionist Brush. This tool is designed to paint over your photos in a way that makes them look like fine art paintings. You can set various options that change the style of the brush strokes.

Here's how to use this artistic brush:

**1. Select the Impressionist Brush from the Tools panel.**

It looks like a brush with a curlicue next to it. You can also press B, or Shift+B, to cycle through the brushes.

## 2. Set your brush options.

The Brushes, Size, Mode, and Opacity options are identical to those found with the Brush tool, described in the section “Painting with the Brush tool,” earlier in this chapter. You can also find some unique options on the More Options panel, indicated by the Impressionist Brush icon:

- *Style*: This drop-down list contains various brush stroke styles, such as Dab and Tight Curl.
- *Area*: Controls the size of your brush stroke. The larger the value, the larger the area covered.
- *Tolerance*: Controls how similar color pixels have to be before they’re changed by the brush stroke.



*Corbis Digital Stock*

## 3. Drag on your image and paint with your brush strokes, as shown in Figure 12-7.

**Figure 12-7:** The Impressionist Brush turns your photo into a painting.

The best way to get a feel for what this tool does is to open your favorite image, grab the tool, and take it for a test drive.

## Filling and Outlining Selections

There may be times when you want to create an element on your canvas that can't quite be created with a brush or pencil stroke. Maybe it's a perfect circle or a five-point star. Elements offers a couple of ways to create these objects. If you have a selection, you can fill or stroke that selection to create that element, rather than draw or paint it on. The Fill command adds a color or a pattern to the entire selection, whereas the Stroke command applies the color to only the edge of the selection border.

### Fill 'er up

You won't find a Fill tool on the Tools panel. Elements decided to avoid the overpopulated panel and placed the Fill and Stroke commands on the Edit menu. Here are the simple steps to fill a selection:



**1. Grab the selection tool of your choice and create your selection on a new layer.**

Although you don't have to create a new layer to make a selection to fill, we recommend it. That way, if you don't like the filled selection, you can delete the layer, and your image or background below it remains safe. See Chapter 7 for more on selections and Chapter 8 for details on working with layers.

**2. Select either the foreground or background color and then choose a fill color.**

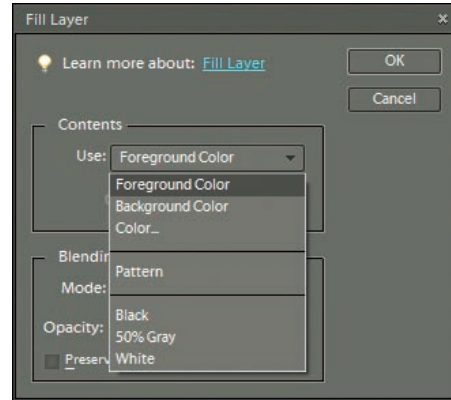
See “Choosing Color,” earlier in this chapter, if you need a refresher.

**3. Choose Edit→Fill Selection.**

The Fill Layer dialog box, as shown in Figure 12-8, appears.

If you want to bypass the Fill Layer dialog box (and the rest of these steps), you can use these handy keyboard shortcuts instead:

- *To fill the selection with the foreground color:* Press Alt+Backspace (Option+Delete on the Mac).
- *To fill it with the background color:* Press Ctrl+Backspace (⌘+Delete on the Mac).



**Figure 12-8:** Fill your selection or layer with color or a pattern.

**4. Choose your desired fill from the Use pop-up menu.**

You can select whether to fill with the foreground or background color. You also can choose Color, Black, 50% Gray, White, or Pattern. If you select Color, you're transported to the Color Picker. If you choose Pattern, you must then choose a pattern from the Custom Pattern drop-down panel. For more on patterns, see the section “Working with Patterns,” later in this chapter.

If you don't have an active selection border in your image, the command says Fill Layer and your entire layer is filled with your color or pattern.

**5. In the blending area, you can specify whether to preserve transparency, which enables you to fill only the portions of the selection that contain pixels (the nontransparent areas).**







Although you can also choose a *blend mode* (how the fill color interacts with colors below it) and opacity percentage, we urge you not to adjust your blend mode and opacity in the Fill Layer dialog box. Make those adjustments on your layer later, by using the Layer panel commands, where you have more flexibility for editing.

**6. Click OK.**

The color or pattern fills the selection.

## Outlining with the Stroke command

Stroking a selection enables you to create colored outlines, or *borders*, of selections or layers. You can put this border inside or outside the selection border or centered on it. Here are the steps to stroke a selection:

**1. Choose a foreground color and make a selection.**

**2. Choose Edit⇨Stroke (Outline) Selection.**

The Stroke dialog box opens.

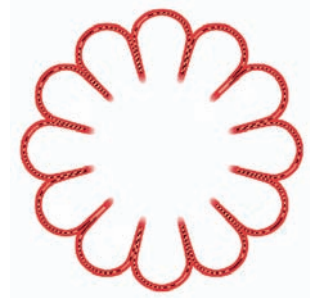
**3. Select your desired settings.**

Many settings are the same as those found in the Fill Layer dialog box, as we explain in the preceding section. Here's a brief rundown of the options that are unique to strokes:

- *Width*: Enter a width of 1 to 250 pixels for the stroke.
- *Location*: Specify how Elements should apply the stroke: outside the selection, inside the selection, or centered on the selection.

**4. Click OK to apply the stroke.**

We gave a 30-pixel centered stroke to our selection, as shown in Figure 12-9.



**Figure 12-9:** Stroke a selection to create a colored border.

## Splashing On Color with the Paint Bucket Tool

The Paint Bucket tool has been a longtime occupant of the Tools panel. This tool, whose icon looks just like a bucket, behaves like a combination of the Fill command and the Magic Wand tool. It makes a selection based on similarly colored pixels and then immediately fills that selection with color or a pattern. Just like the Magic Wand tool, this tool is the most successful when you have a limited number of colors, as shown in Figure 12-10.

To use the Paint Bucket tool, simply click inside the selection you want to fill. Before you click, however, specify your options:

- ✓ **Fill:** Choose between a fill of the foreground color or a pattern. If you want to use the foreground color, leave Pattern unchecked.
- ✓ **Pattern:** If you select Pattern, select a preset pattern from the drop-down panel. For more details on patterns, see the section “Working with Patterns,” later in this chapter.
- ✓ **Mode:** Select a blending mode to change how your fill color interacts with the color below it.
- ✓ **Opacity:** Adjust the opacity to make your fill more or less transparent.
- ✓ **Tolerance:** Choose a tolerance level that specifies how similar in color a pixel must be before it’s selected and then filled. The lower the value, the more similar the color must be. For more on tolerance, see the section on the Magic Wand in Chapter 7.
- ✓ **Anti-Alias:** Choose this option to smooth the edges between the filled and unfilled areas.
- ✓ **Contiguous:** If selected, this option selects and fills only pixels that are touching within your selection. If the option is unselected, pixels are selected and filled wherever they lie within your selection.
- ✓ **All Layers:** This option selects and fills pixels within the selection in all layers that are within your tolerance level.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 12-10:** The Paint Bucket tool makes a selection and fills it at the same time.

## Working with Multicolored Gradients

If one color isn’t enough for you, you’ll be pleased to know that Elements enables you to fill a selection or layer with a gradient. A *gradient* is a blend of two or more colors that gradually dissolve from one to another. Elements provides a whole slew of various preset gradients. But creating your own custom gradient is also fun and easy.

### Applying a preset gradient

Similar to colors, patterns, and brushes, gradients have a whole slew of presets that you can apply to your selection and layers. You can also load other libraries of gradients from the Gradient panel pop-up menu.

Here's how to apply a preset gradient:

**1. Make the selection you want to fill with a gradient.**

We recommend making the selection on a new layer so that you can edit the gradient later without harming the underlying image.

If you don't make a selection, the gradient is applied to the entire layer or background.

**2. Select the Gradient tool from the Tools panel or press the G key.**

**3. On the Options bar, click the down-pointing arrow on the Gradient Picker drop-down panel and choose a preset gradient.**

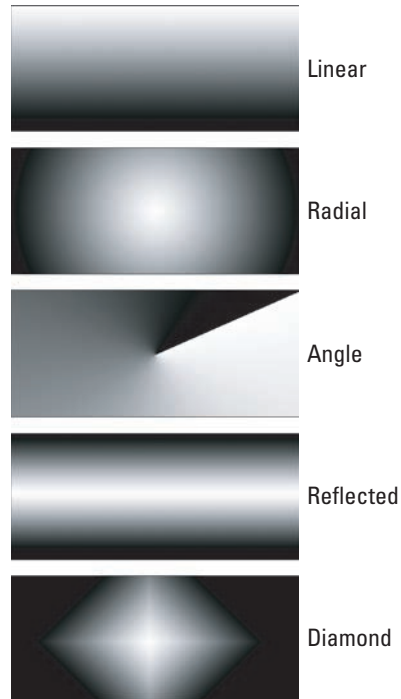
Remember that you can choose other preset libraries from the panel pop-up menu. Libraries, such as Color Harmonies and Metals, contain interesting presets.

**4. Choose your desired gradient type by clicking one of the icons.**

See Figure 12-11 for an example of each type.

**5. Choose from the following additional options on the Options bar:**

- *Mode*: Select a blending mode to change how the color of the gradient interacts with the colors below it.
- *Opacity*: Specify how opaque or transparent the gradient is.
- *Reverse*: Reverse the order in which the colors are applied.
- *Dither*: Add *noise*, or random information, to produce a smoother gradient that prints with less *banding* (weird stripes caused by printing limitations).
- *Transparency*: Deselect this option to make Elements ignore any transparent areas in the gradient, making them opaque instead.



**Figure 12-11:** Choose from one of five gradient types.

**6. Position your gradient cursor at your desired starting point within your selection or layer.**

**7. Drag in any direction to your desired end point for the gradient.**



Longer drags result in a subtler transition between colors, whereas shorter drags result in a more abrupt transition. Hold down the Shift key to restrain the direction of the gradient to a 45-degree angle.

**8. Release the mouse button to apply the gradient.**

We applied an Orange Yellow radial gradient from the Color Harmonies 2-preset library to a selection of a sun in Figure 12-12. We selected the Reverse option and dragged from the center of the sun to the tip of the top ray.



**Figure 12-12:** We filled our sun selection with a radial Orange Yellow gradient.

## Customizing gradients

If you can't find the exact gradient you need, you can easily create your own. The Gradient Editor lets you create your own custom gradient using as many colors as you want. After you create a custom gradient, you can save it as a preset to reuse in the future.

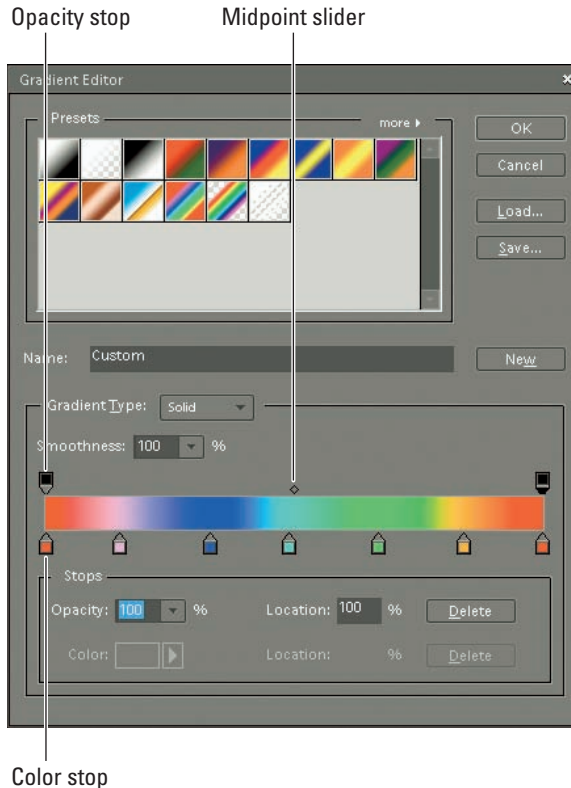
Follow these steps to create a custom gradient:

- 1. Select the Gradient tool from the Tools panel.**
- 2. Click the Edit button on the Options bar.**
- 3. Pick an existing preset to use as the basis for your new gradient.**
- 4. Choose your gradient type, either Solid or Noise, from the pop-up menu.**

A Noise gradient contains random colors. Interestingly, each time you create a Noise gradient, the result is different.

Note that as soon as you start to edit the existing gradient, the name of the gradient changes to Custom.

- 5. Choose your options for either a Solid or Noise gradient, depending on what you chose in Step 4:**



**Figure 12-13:** Use the Gradient Editor to edit and customize gradients.

- *If you chose Solid:* Adjust the Smoothness percentage to determine how smoothly one color blends into another.
  - *If you chose Noise:* You can choose which Color Model to use to set the color range. You can also adjust the Roughness, which affects how smoothly or abruptly the color transitions from one to another. Click Restrict Colors to avoid oversaturated colors. The Add Transparency option adds transparency to random colors. Click the Randomize button to randomly generate a new gradient. You can then skip to Step 15 to finish the gradient-making process.
- 6. If you're creating a solid gradient, begin choosing the first color of your gradient by first clicking the left color stop under the gradient bar (refer to Figure 12-13).**

The triangle on top of the stop turns black to indicate that you're working with the starting point of the gradient.

- 7. Choose the starting color by double-clicking the left color stop and selecting a color from the Color Picker that appears.**

In the Stops area, you can also click the color swatch or choose Foreground, Background, or User Color from the Color pop-up menu. If you select Color with the Foreground or Background option when you change either of those colors, the color in the gradient changes automatically for gradients you make. However, when you open the Gradient Editor again, you can revert to your original foreground or background color by selecting the User Color option.

- 8. Select the ending color by clicking the right color stop. Repeat Step 7 to define the color.**
- 9. Change the percentage of the amount of one color versus the other by moving the starting or ending point's color stop to the left or right. Drag the midpoint slider (a diamond icon) to adjust where the colors mix equally, 50-50.**

You can also change the position of the midpoint by typing a value in the Location box.

- 10. To add another color, click below the gradient bar at the position you want to add the color. Define a color in the same way you did in Step 7.**
- 11. Repeat Step 10 to add colors.**
- 12. To add transparency to your gradient, select an opacity stop (refer to Figure 12-13) and adjust the Opacity slider to specify the amount of transparency you desire.**

By default, a gradient has colors that are 100-percent opaque. You can fade a gradient to transparency so that the portion of the image under the gradient shows through.

You can also add additional opacity stops in the same way you add color stops.

- 13. Adjust your color and opacity stops and their midpoint sliders to vary the percentages of each color.**
- 14. You can also redefine any of the colors. To delete a color stop, drag it up or down off the gradient bar.**
- 15. When you're done, name your gradient and click the New button.**

Your gradient is added to the Presets menu.



TIP

After all that work, you may want to consider saving your gradients for later use. To save a gradient, click the Save button in the Gradient Editor dialog box. Save the current presets, with your new gradient, under the current library's name or a new name altogether. You can then later load that preset library. You can also manage your gradient presets with the Preset Manager, as we explain in Chapter 2.

## Working with Patterns

If you've ever seen someone wearing leopard-print pants with an argyle sweater and a plaid blazer, you're familiar with patterns. Not always pretty when used without restraint, patterns can be used to occasionally fill selections or layers. You can also stamp your image by using the Pattern Stamp tool. You can even retouch by using a pattern with the Healing Brush tool. Elements offers a lot of preset patterns to keep you happy. And, if you're not happy with Elements' selection, you can create your own, of course.

### Applying a preset pattern

Although you can apply patterns by using many different tools, this chapter sticks with applying patterns as fills. To fill a layer or selection with a preset pattern, follow these steps:

**1. Choose the layer or selection you want to fill with a pattern.**

Again, we recommend making your selection on a new layer above your image for more flexible editing later on.

**2. Choose **Edit** → **Fill Selection** or **Fill Layer** and choose **Pattern** from the **Use** drop-down menu.**

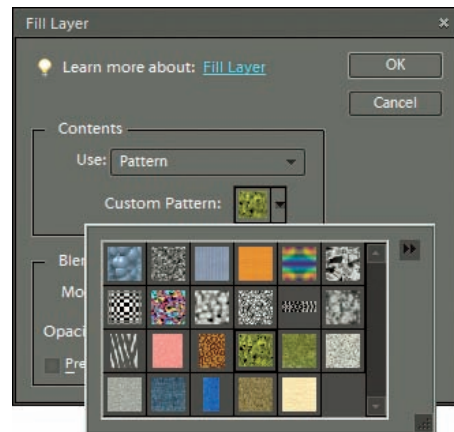
**3. Click the down-pointing arrow and select a pattern from the **Custom Pattern** drop-down panel, as shown in Figure 12-14.**

If you don't see a pattern to your liking, choose another preset library by clicking the panel pop-up menu and choosing another preset library at the bottom of the submenu.

**4. Choose any other fill options you want to apply, such as **Mode**, **Opacity**, or **Preserve Transparency**.**

For details on these options, see the section "Filling and Outlining Selections," earlier in this chapter.

**5. Click **OK** to fill the layer or selection with the chosen pattern.**



**Figure 12-14:** Fill your selection with one of the many Elements preset patterns.



## Creating a new pattern

You may someday want to create your own pattern. Patterns can be easily created from any existing photo or painting you create in Elements. You can even scan your signature or logo, define it as a pattern, and use it with the Pattern Stamp tool to sign all your work.

To create your own pattern, follow these steps:

1. **Open the photographic, painted, or scanned image that contains the area you want to use as a pattern.**
2. **Use the Rectangular Marquee tool to select the area you want to convert into a pattern.**

Make sure that your Feather option is set to 0.

If you don't make a selection, Elements uses your entire layer as a basis for the pattern.

3. **Choose Edit⇨Define Pattern from Selection or Edit⇨Define Pattern.**
4. **Enter a name for your pattern in the Pattern Name dialog box that appears.**

Your new pattern now appears in every Pattern panel, wherever it may lurk in Elements.

In addition to filling your selection with a pattern, you can stamp on a pattern with the Pattern Stamp tool. For details, see Chapter 9.

## Creating Shapes of All Sorts

In this section, we leave the land of pixels and head into uncharted territory — Vectorville. Before we discuss the ins and outs of creating shapes, here's a little overview that explains the difference between pixels and vectors:

- ✓ **Pixel images describe a shape in terms of a grid of pixels.** When you increase the size of a pixel-based image, it loses quality and begins to look blocky, mushy, and otherwise nasty. For more details on resizing pixel-based images and the ramifications of doing so, see Chapter 3.
- ✓ **Vectors describe a shape mathematically.** The shapes comprise paths made up of lines, curves, and anchor points. Because vector shapes are math-based, you can resize them without any loss of quality whatsoever.

In Figure 12-15, you can see both types of images.

When you create a shape in Elements, you're creating a vector-based element. Shapes reside on a special kind of layer called, not surprisingly, a shape layer. Use shapes to create simple logos, Web buttons, and other small spot illustrations.

## Drawing a shape

Elements offers an assortment of shape tools for you to choose from. Follow these steps to draw a shape in your document:

### 1. Choose your desired shape tool from the Tools panel.

You can also press Shift+U to cycle through the shape tools. All the following tools have associated Geometry options, which are described in the section “Specifying Geometry options,” later in this chapter. Here are the tools that are available:

- *Rectangle and Ellipse*: As with their Marquee counterparts, you can hold down the Shift key while dragging to produce a square or circle; hold down the Alt key to draw the shape from the center outward.
- *Rounded Rectangle*: This tool works like the regular Rectangle but with the addition of a radius value used to round off the corners of the rectangle.
- *Polygon*: This tool creates a polygon with a specified number of sides, from 3 to 100.
- *Line*: This tool draws a line with a width from 1 to 1000 pixels. You can also add arrowheads at either end.
- *Custom*: Custom is the most varied shape tool. You have numerous preset custom shapes to choose from. As with any shape, hold down Shift to constrain proportions or Alt (Option on the Mac) to draw from the center out.

### 2. Click the down-pointing arrow just to the right of the Shape tools to specify your Geometry options.

For detailed explanations on the various Geometry options, see the upcoming sections.

If you chose the Custom Shape tool in Step 1, click the down-pointing arrow to access the drop-down Shapes panel and choose your desired shape. You can access more preset shape libraries via the pop-up menu at the top of the panel.



**Figure 12-15:** Elements images can be vector-based (top) or pixel-based (bottom).

**3. Select your desired color from the Color drop-down panel on the Options bar.**

Click the More Colors button (down-pointing arrow) to access the Color Picker for additional color choices.

**4. Select a style from the Style drop-down panel.**

To jazz up the shape with bevels and other fancy edges, choose a style from the panel. For more on styles, see Chapter 11.

**5. Drag in the document to draw the shape you defined.**

The shape appears in the Image window on its own shape layer. Check out the Layers panel to see this phenomenon. Figure 12-16 shows our shape, a Japanese hairstyle, which we add to in the following section.



**Figure 12-16:** Custom shapes run the gamut from the ordinary to the exotic, such as this hairstyle.

## Drawing multiple shapes

After you create a shape layer, you can draw additional shapes on that layer. You can add, subtract, overlap, and intersect shapes in exactly the same way you do with selections (see Chapter 7). Just follow these steps:

**1. Select your desired state button on the Options bar.**

You can choose from the following options:

- *New Shape Layer:* Creates your initial shape layer
- *Add to Shape Area:* Combines and joins two or more shapes
- *Subtract from Shape Area:* Subtracts one shape from another shape
- *Intersect Shape Areas:* Creates a shape from only the areas that overlap
- *Exclude Overlapping Shape Areas:* Creates a shape from only the areas that don't overlap

**2. Choose your desired Shape tool and draw the next shape.**

We completed the shape by adding the face, as shown in Figure 12-17.



**Figure 12-17:** Add to your shape layer.

## Specifying Geometry options

Geometry options help define how your shapes look. Click the down-pointing arrow on the Options bar to access the Geometry options described in the sections that follow.

### Rectangle and Rounded Rectangle Geometry options

Here are the Geometry options for the Rectangle and Rounded Rectangle shapes:

- ✓ **Unconstrained:** Enables you to have free rein to draw a rectangle at any size or shape.
- ✓ **Square:** Constrains the shape to a perfect square.
- ✓ **Fixed Size:** Lets you draw rectangles in fixed sizes, as specified by your width and height values.
- ✓ **Proportional:** Allows you to define a proportion for the rectangle. For example, specifying 2W and 1H makes a rectangle twice as wide as it is high.
- ✓ **From Center:** Enables you to draw from the center out.
- ✓ **Snap to Pixels:** Aligns the shape to the pixels on your screen.
- ✓ **Radius:** For Rounded Rectangles, applies the radius of a circle used to round off the corners. Note that this option is found on the Options bar itself, not in the Geometry options drop-down menu.

### Ellipse Geometry options

The Ellipse shape has the same options that are available for rectangles, except for the Snap to Pixels option. The only difference is that, instead of being able to create a perfect square, you can create a perfect circle with the Circle option.

### Polygon Geometry options

The Geometry options for the Polygon shape are as follows:

- ✓ **Radius:** Enter the radius of a circle used to round off the corners of a polygon when you have the Smooth Corners option selected.
- ✓ **Smooth Corners:** Round off the corners.
- ✓ **Star:** Create an inward-pointing polygon called a star.
- ✓ **Indent Sides By:** Determine the amount the sides indent inward.
- ✓ **Smooth Indents:** Round off the inner corners of indented sides.
- ✓ **Sides:** Specify the number of sides for your polygon or the number of points for your star.

### *Line Geometry options*

The line's Geometry settings include whether to put arrowheads at the start or end of the line. You can also adjust the width, length, and concavity settings to change the arrowhead shapes.

### *Custom Shape Geometry options*

The Custom Shape options are similar to those you find for the other shapes, but with a couple of unique options:

- ✓ **Defined Proportions:** Draws a shape based on the original proportions you used when you created it.
- ✓ **Defined Size:** Draws a shape based on its original size when you created it.

### *Editing shapes*

You can edit shapes that you create by using a variety of tools and techniques. Here's a list of the things you can do to modify your shapes:

- ✓ **Select:** Choose the Shape Selection tool to move one or more shapes in their layers. This tool shares a flyout menu with the Shapes tools.
- ✓ **Move:** Choose the Move tool (press V) to move the entire contents of the shape layer.
- ✓ **Delete:** Select a shape and press Delete to remove it.
- ✓ **Transform shapes:** Choose the Shape Selection tool and select your shape. Choose Image⇨Transform Shape and choose your desired transformation.
- ✓ **Change the color:** Double-click the thumbnail of the shape layer on the Layers panel. This action transports you to the Color Picker, where you can choose a new color.
- ✓ **Clone a shape:** Hold down Alt (Option on the Mac) and move the shape with the Move tool.



To convert your vector-based shape into a pixel-based shape, click the Simplify button on the Options bar or choose Layer⇨Simplify Layer. Note that you can't edit a shape after you simplify it, except to modify the pixels. But you can now apply filters to the layer. See Chapter 11 for more on fun with filters.

# Working with Type

## *In This Chapter*

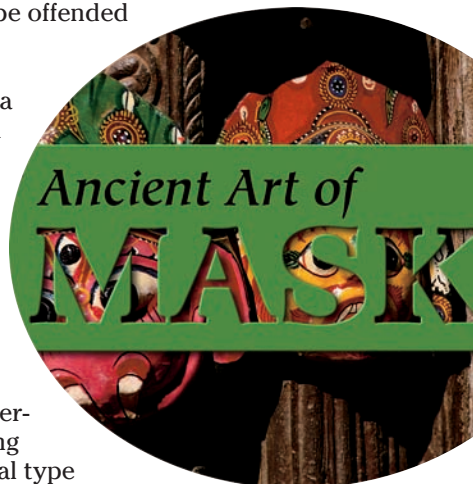
- ▶ Understanding type basics
- ▶ Creating point type and paragraph type
- ▶ Setting type options
- ▶ Editing type
- ▶ Simplifying (rasterizing) type
- ▶ Masking with type
- ▶ Stylizing and warping type

Although we spout on in this book about how a picture says a thousand words, we would be terribly negligent if we didn't at least give a nod to the power of the written word, as well. You may find that you never need to go near the type tools. That's fine. We won't be offended if you skip right past this chapter.

Then again, you may have an occasional need to add a caption, a headline, or maybe even a short paragraph to an image. Although it's by no means a word-processing or even page-layout program, Elements does give you ample tools for creating, editing, stylizing, and even distorting type.

## *Understanding Type Basics*

Elements has four type tools. Two of them are for entering horizontally oriented type, and two are for entering vertically oriented type. Don't worry about the vertical type tools. Although you can use them, they're really designed for the Asian market, to enter Chinese and Japanese characters. The horizontal and vertical type tools are identical in their attributes, so we just cover the two horizontal type tools from here on, and for the sake of simplicity, we just call them the Type and Type Mask tools:





- ✓ **Type:** Use this tool to enter type. This type is created on its own type layer, except when used in Bitmap mode or Indexed Color mode, neither of which supports layers.

We refer to layers a lot in this chapter, so if your layer knowledge is rusty, check out Chapter 8.

- ✓ **Type Mask:** This tool doesn't create actual type; instead, it creates a selection border in the shape of the type you want to enter. The selection border is added to the active layer. You can do anything with a type selection that you can do with any other selection.

We also talk more about selections in this chapter; for even more detail on selections, see Chapter 7.

You can enter text in Elements in two different modes: point type and paragraph type. Both the Type and Type Mask tools can enter either one. Here's a brief description of each one (for the step-by-step process of creating the text, see the following sections):

- ✓ **Point:** Use this mode if you want to enter only a few words or so. To create point type, select the Type tool, click in your image, and, well, type. The text appears while you type and continues to grow. In fact, it even continues past the boundary of your image! Remember that point type *never* wraps around to a new line. To wrap to the next line, you must press Enter.
- ✓ **Paragraph:** Use this mode to enter longer chunks of text on an image. To create paragraph type, click and drag your type tool to create a text bounding box and then type. All the text is entered in this resizable bounding box. If a line of text is too long, Elements automatically wraps it around to the next line.

Elements is capable of displaying and printing type in two different formats. Each format has its pros and cons, and which format you use depends on your needs. Here's the lowdown on each one:

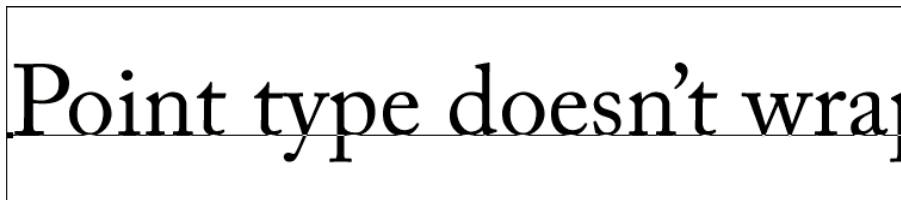
- ✓ **Vector:** All text in Elements is initially created as vector type. *Vector* type provides scalable outlines that you can resize without producing jaggy edges in the diagonal strokes. Vector type remains fully editable and always prints with optimum quality, appearing crisp and clean. Vector type is the default type format in Elements.
- ✓ **Raster:** When Elements converts vector type into pixels, the text is *rasterized*. Elements refers to this rasterization process as *simplifying*. When text is *simplified*, it's no longer editable but is converted into a raster image. You usually simplify your vector type when you want to apply filters to the type to produce a special effect or when you want to merge the type with the image. You can't resize simplified type without losing some quality or risking jagged edges. For more details, see the section "Simplifying Type," later in this chapter.



## Creating Point Type

The majority of your type entry will most likely be in point type mode. Point type is useful for short chunks of text, such as headlines, labels, logos, and headings for Web pages.

Point type is so called because it's preceded by a single *anchor point*, which marks the starting point of the line of the type. Remember that point-type lines don't wrap automatically, as shown in Figure 13-1.



**Figure 13-1:** Point type doesn't wrap automatically, but instead can run off your image into a type Neverland.

Follow these steps to create point type:

- 1. In the Editor, in Full Edit mode, open an image or create a new, blank Elements file (File⇨New).**
- 2. Select the Type tool from the Tools panel.**  
You can also press the T key.
- 3. On the image, click where you want to insert your text.**  
Your cursor is called an *I-beam*. When you click, you make an insertion point.  
A small, horizontal line about one-third of the way up the I-beam shows the *baseline* (the line on which the text sits) for horizontal type.
- 4. Specify your type options from the Options bar.**  
All the options are described in detail in the section “Specifying Type Options,” later in this chapter.
- 5. Type your text and press Enter to begin a new line.**  
When you press Enter, you insert a hard return that doesn't move.
- 6. When you finish entering the text, click the Commit button (the check mark icon) on the Options bar.**

You can also commit the type by pressing Enter on the numeric keypad or by clicking any other tool on the Tools panel. A new type layer with your text is created. Type layers appear on your Layers panel and are indicated by the T icon.

## Creating Paragraph Type

If you have larger chunks of text, it's more practical to enter the text as paragraph type. Entering paragraph type is similar to entering text in a word-processing or page-layout program, except that it's contained inside a bounding box. When you type and come to the end of the bounding box, Elements automatically wraps the text to the next line.

To enter paragraph type, follow these steps:

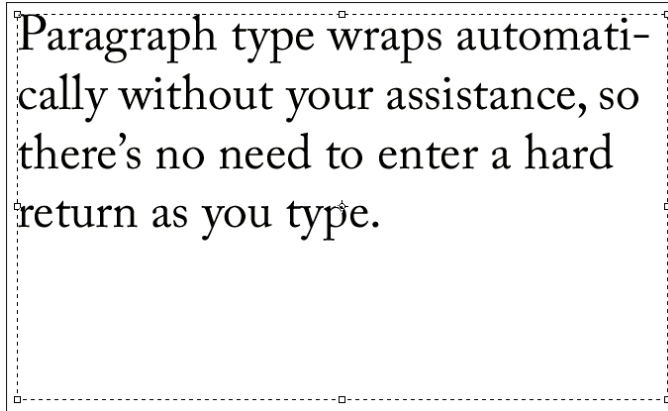
- 1. Open an image or create a new, blank Elements file.**
- 2. Select the Type tool from the Tools panel or press the T key.**
- 3. On the image, insert and size the bounding box by using one of two methods:**
  - *Drag to create a bounding box close to your desired size.* After you release the mouse button, you can drag any of the handles at the corners and sides of the box to resize the box.
  - *Hold down the Alt (Option on the Mac) key and click the image.* The Paragraph Text Size dialog box appears. Enter the exact dimensions of your desired bounding box. When you click OK, your specified box appears, complete with handles for resizing later, if necessary.
- 4. Specify your type options from the Options bar.**

Options are described in detail in the following section.
- 5. Enter your text; to start a new paragraph, press Enter.**

Each line wraps around to fit inside the bounding box, as shown in Figure 13-2.

If you type more text than can squeeze into the text box, an overflow icon appears. Just resize the text box by dragging a bounding box handle.
- 6. Click the Commit button (the check mark icon) on the Options bar or press Enter on the numeric keypad.**

Elements creates a new type layer.



**Figure 13-2:** Paragraph type automatically wraps to fit within your bounding box.

## Specifying Type Options

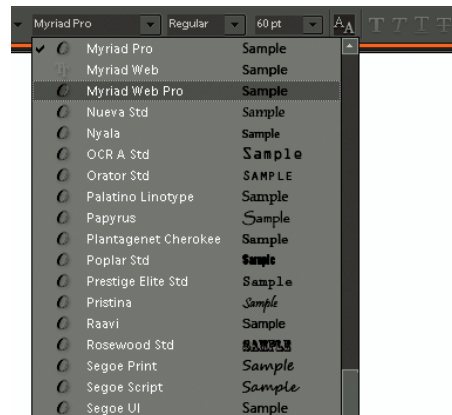
You can find several character and paragraph type settings on the Options bar, as shown in Figure 13-3. These options enable you to specify your type to your liking and pair it with your images.

Here's an explanation of each available option on the Options bar, from left to right:

✓ **Font family:** Select the font you want from the drop-down list. Elements provides a WYSIWYG (What You See Is What You Get) font menu. After each font name, the word *Sample* is rendered in the actual font — no more selecting a font without knowing what it really looks like. You also find one of these abbreviations before each font name to let you know what type of font it is:

- *a*: Adobe Type 1 (PostScript) fonts
- *TT*: TrueType fonts
- *O*: OpenType fonts

Fonts with no abbreviation are bitmapped fonts.



**Figure 13-3:** Specify your type options, such as font family and size, before you type.

- ✓ **Font style:** Some font families have additional styles, such as light or condensed. Only the styles available for a particular font appear in the list. This is also a WYSIWYG menu.
- ✓ **Font size:** Select your type size from the drop-down list or just type a size in the text box. Note that type size is most commonly measured in points (72 points equals about 1 inch at a resolution of 72 ppi). You can switch to millimeters or pixels by choosing Edit⇨Preferences⇨Units and Rulers (or Elements⇨Preferences⇨Units and Rulers).
- ✓ **Anti-aliasing:** Select Anti-aliasing to slightly smooth out the edges of your text. Anti-aliasing softens that edge by 1 pixel, as shown in Figure 13-4. For the most part, you want to keep this option turned on. The one occasion in which you may want it turned off is when you're creating small type to be displayed onscreen, such as on Web pages. The soft edges can sometimes be tough to read easily.



**Figure 13-4:** Anti-aliasing softens the edges of your type.

- ✓ **Faux Bold:** Use this option to create a fake bold style when a real bold style (which you'd choose under Font Style) doesn't exist. Be warned that although the sky won't fall, applying faux styles can distort the proportions of a font. You should use fonts with real styles, and if they don't exist, oh, well.

- ✓ **Faux Italic:** This option creates a phony italic style and carries the same warning as the Faux Bold option.
- ✓ **Underline:** This setting obviously underlines your type, like this.
- ✓ **Strikethrough:** Choose this option to apply a ~~strikethrough~~ style to your text.
- ✓ **Text alignment:** These three options align your horizontal text on the left or right, or in the center. If you happen to have vertical text, these options rotate 90 degrees clockwise and change into top, bottom, and center vertical settings.
- ✓ **Leading:** Leading (pronounced “ledding”) is the amount of space between the baselines of lines of type. A *baseline* is the imaginary line on which a line of type sits. You can choose Auto Leading or specify the amount of leading to apply. When you choose Auto Leading, Elements uses a value of 120 percent of your type point size. Therefore, 10-point type gets 12 points of leading. Elements adds that extra 20 percent so that the bottoms of the lowest letters don’t crash into the tops of the tallest letters on the line below them.
- ✓ **Text Color:** Click the color swatch to select a color for your type from the Color Picker. You can also choose a color from the Swatches panel.
- ✓ **Style:** Click this option to access a drop-down panel of preset styles that you can apply to your type. For more on this option and the Create Warped Text option (described in the following bullet), see “Stylizing and Warping Type,” later in this chapter.
- ✓ **Create Warped Text:** This fun option lets you distort type in more than a dozen ways.
- ✓ **Change the Text Orientation:** Select your type layer and then click this option to switch between vertical and horizontal type orientations.
- ✓ **Cancel:** Click this button (or press Esc) to cancel and keep the type from being entered. Use this option or the Commit option only after you click the type tool on your canvas.
- ✓ **Commit:** Click this button to apply the type to your canvas.

## Editing Text

If you read the first part of this chapter and slogged with us through all the available options for type in Elements, just remember that you can apply these settings either before or after you enter your text. To correct typos, add and delete type, or change any of the type options, simply follow these steps:

1. **Select the Type tool from the Tools panel.**
2. **Select your desired type layer on the Layers panel or click within the text to automatically select the type layer.**
3. **Do one of the following:**
  - *To change the font family, size, color, or other type option:* If you want to change all the text, simply select that type layer on the Layers panel. To select only portions of the text, highlight the text by dragging across it with the I-beam of the Type tool.
  - *To delete text:* Highlight the text by dragging across it with the I-beam of the Type tool. Then press the Backspace key (Delete on the Mac).
  - *To add text:* Make an insertion point by clicking your I-beam within the line of text. Then, type your new text.
4. **When you're done editing your text, click the Commit button.**



You may also occasionally need to transform your text. To do so, make sure that the type layer is selected on the Layers panel. Then, choose Image⇨Transform⇨Free Transform. Grab a handle on the bounding box and drag to rotate or scale. Press Ctrl (⌘ on the Mac) and drag a handle to distort. When you're done, double-click inside the bounding box to commit the transformation. For more details on transformations, see Chapter 9.

## Simplifying Type

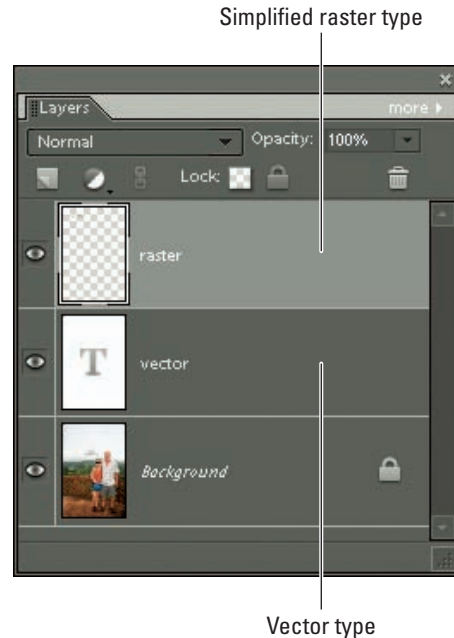
As we explain in the section “Understanding Type Basics,” earlier in this chapter, Elements can display and print type in two different formats: vector and raster. Remember that as long as you keep type in a vector format in a type layer, you can edit and resize that type all day long.

Occasionally, however, you may find the need to *simplify* your type — to convert your type into pixels. After it's simplified, you can apply filters, paint on the type, and apply gradients and patterns. If you're working with layers and *flatten* your image (merge your layers into a single background image), your type layer is also simplified and merged with the other pixels in your image. By the way, if you try to apply a filter to a type layer, Elements barks at you that the type layer must be simplified before proceeding and gives you the opportunity to click OK (if you want to simplify) or Cancel.

To simplify your type, select the type layer on the Layers panel and choose Layer⇨Simplify Layer. Your type layer is then converted (the T icon disappears) into a regular layer on which your type is now displayed as pixels against a transparent background, as shown in Figure 13-5.



To avoid re-creating your type from scratch, be sure to make all necessary edits before simplifying. This includes sizing your text. After you simplify your type, you can't resize your text without risking the dreaded jaggies. The other downside to remember about simplified type is that although it looks identical to vector type onscreen, it never prints as crisply and cleanly as vector type. Even at higher-resolution settings, a slight jagged edge always appears on simplified type. So, if you're experimenting with painting or filters on your type, just make a duplicate of your type layer before simplifying it and then hide that layer.



## Masking with Type

Using the Type Mask tool epitomizes the combination of type and image. Unlike its conventional cousin, the Type Mask tool doesn't create a new layer. Instead, it creates a selection on the active layer. This is the tool of choice for filling text with an image or cutting text out of an image so that the background shows through, as shown in Figure 13-6.

**Figure 13-5:** Simplifying your type layer converts vector type into pixels.



A selection is a selection, no matter how it was created. So, even though they look like letters, they act like selections. You can move, modify, and save them.

Here are the steps to create a type mask:

- 1. In the Editor, in Full Edit mode, open the image of your choice.**

We selected a stone texture.

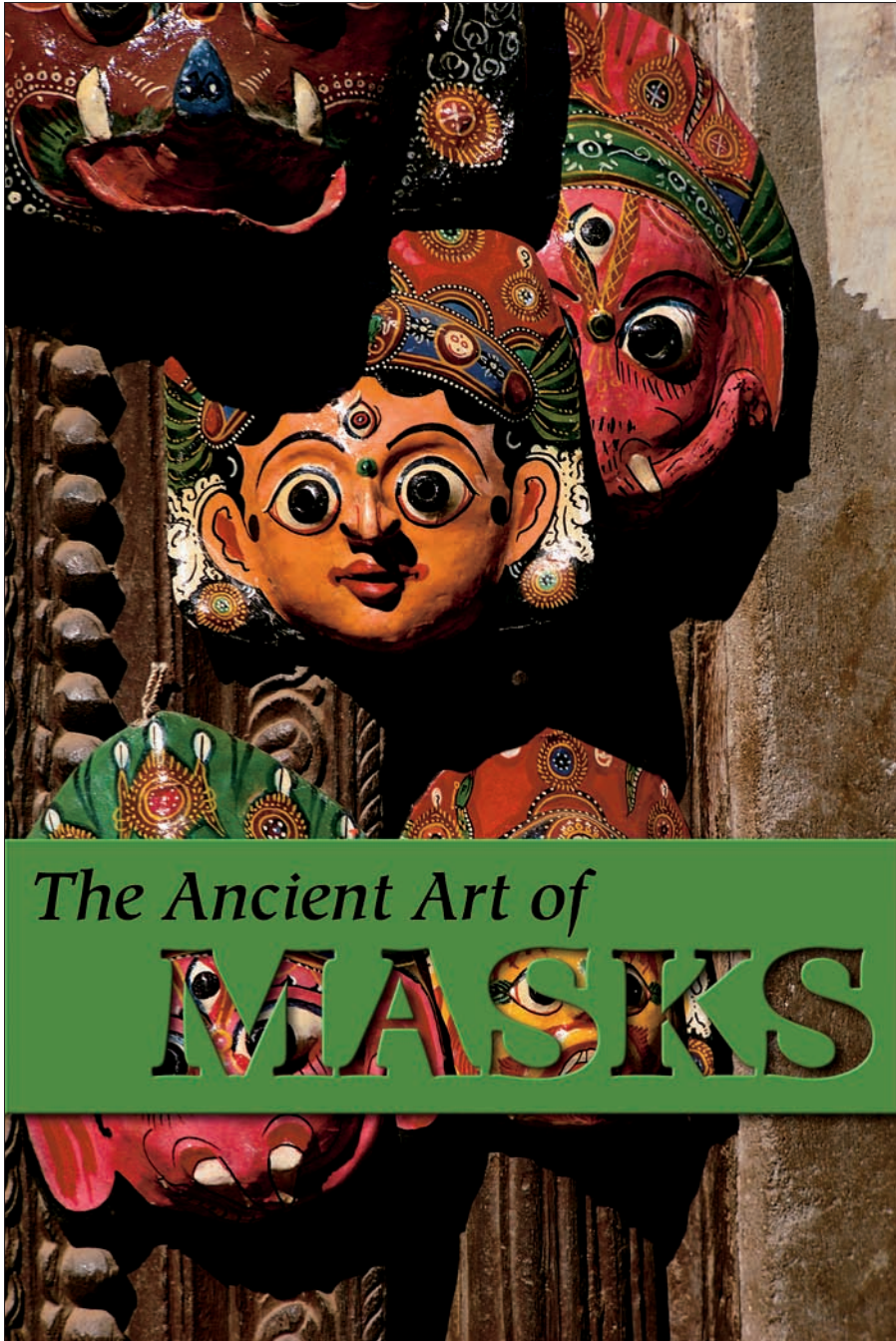
- 2. Convert your background into a layer by double-clicking the word *Background* on the Layers panel and then click OK.**

This step enables you to jazz up the type with styles later on.

- 3. Choose the Horizontal Type Mask tool from the Tools panel.**

- 4. Specify your type options, such as font family, style, and size, on the Options bar.**





Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 13-6:** The Type Mask tool enables you to cut type out of solid color or image layers.

5. Click the image and type your desired text. When you're done, click the Commit button on the Options bar.

A selection border in the shape of your type appears on your image.

6. Choose **Select**⇨**Inverse**, which deselects your letter selections and selects everything else.

7. Press the Backspace key to delete everything outside your selection border.

Your type is now filled with your image.

8. Choose **Select**⇨**Deselect**.

9. Experiment with applying layer styles to your type.

If the Effects panel isn't visible, choose **Window**⇨**Effects**. Select the Layer Styles button (second from the left) located in the Effects panel. Select the type of Layer Styles you desire from the drop-down list on the panel, such as Drop Shadows or Bevels. Finally, double-click the exact style you want. We used a drop shadow and an inner bevel in Figure 13-7. See Chapter 11 for more layer styles.



If you want to admire your type against a solid background, as we did, create a new layer and then choose **Edit**⇨**Fill Layer** and choose your desired color from the Use drop-down menu.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 13-7:** Fill type with imagery by using the Type Mask tool.

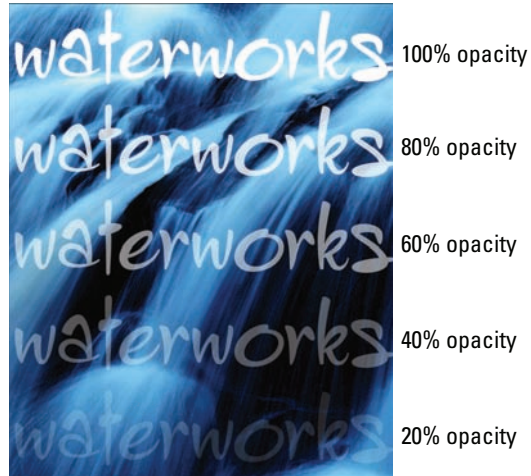
## Stylizing and Warping Type

If you tried your hand at creating a type mask in the preceding section, you know that Elements is capable of much more than just throwing a few black letters at the bottom of your image. With a few clicks here and there, you can warp, distort, enhance, and stylize your type. If you're not careful, your creative typography can outshine your image.

## Adjusting type opacity

If you checked out Chapter 8 before reading this chapter, you know that *layers* are a digital version of the old analog transparency sheets. You can change the opacity of elements on layers to enable the underlying layer to show through in varying degrees. This is also possible on a type layer. Peek at Figure 13-8 to see how varying the percentage of opacity of our type layer makes more of the underlying layer of water show through.

To change the opacity of a type layer, simply select the layer in the Layers panel, click the arrow to the right of the Opacity percentage, and drag the slider. The lower the percentage, the less opaque the type (and the more the underlying layer shows through).



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 13-8:** You can vary the opacity of type layers to allow the underlying layer to peek through.

## Applying filters to your type

One of the most interesting things you can do with type in Elements that you can't do in a word-processing or page-layout program is apply special effects, such as filters. You can make type look like it's on fire, underwater, or on the move, as shown in Figure 13-9, where we applied a motion blur. The only caveat is that type has to be simplified first before a filter can be applied. Be sure to do all your text editing before you get to the filtering stage. Applying the filter is as easy as just selecting the simplified type layer on the Layers panel and choosing a filter from the Filter menu. For more on filters, see Chapter 11.

## Painting your type with color and gradients

Changing the color of text is as easy as highlighting it and selecting a color from the Color Picker. But what if you want to do something a little more unconventional, such as apply brush strokes of paint randomly across the type, like we did in the first image shown in Figure 13-10? It's really easier than it looks. Again, as with applying filters to text, the only criterion is that the type has to be simplified first. After that's done, select a color, grab the Brush tool with settings of your choice, and paint. In our example, we used the Granite Flow brush, found in the Special Effect Brushes presets. We used a diameter of 39, 15, and 6 pixels and just swiped our type a few times.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 13-9:** Applying a motion blur to type can make it appear as fast as the car.



If you want the color or gradient to be confined to only the type area, you can select the text by either Ctrl-clicking (⌘-clicking on the Mac) the layer containing the text or locking the transparency of the layer on the Layers panel.

You can also apply a gradient to your type. Here are the steps to follow after simplifying your type:

1. Select the Gradient tool from the Tools panel.
2. On the Options bar, click the down-pointing arrow next to the Gradient Picker to access the Gradient Picker drop-down panel.
3. Choose your desired gradient.

If you want to create a custom gradient, find out how in Chapter 12.

4. Position your gradient cursor on the text where you want your gradient to start and drag to where you want your gradient to end.

Don't like the results? Drag again until you get the look you want. Remember that you can drag at any angle and to any length, even outside your type. In the bottom image shown in Figure 13-10, we used



**Figure 13-10:** Bring your type to life with color (top) or a gradient (bottom).



the copper gradient and just dragged from the top of the letters to the bottom. We also locked the transparent pixels on the layer to confine the gradient to just the type area.

### *Warping your type*

If horizontal or vertical text is just way too regimented for you, try some of the distortions you can apply to your type with the Warp feature. The best part about the distortions you apply to the type is that the text remains fully editable. This feature is fun and easy to use. Click the Create Warped Text button at the far-right end of the Options bar. (It's the T with a curved line below it.) This action opens the Warp Text dialog box, where you find a vast array of distortions on the Style pop-up menu with descriptive names such as Bulge, Inflate, and Squeeze.

After selecting a warp style, you can adjust the orientation, amount of bend, and degree of distortion by dragging the sliders. The Bend setting affects the amount of warp, and the Horizontal and Vertical Distortions apply perspective to that warp. Luckily, you can also view the results while you adjust. We could give you technical explanations of these adjustments, but the best way to see what they do is to just play with them. See Figure 13-11 to get a quick look at a few of the warp styles. The names speak for themselves.



Note that you can also use the Transform command, such as scale and skew, to manipulate text. See Chapter 8 for details on transforming.



**Figure 13-11:** Text remains fully editable after applying distortions with the Warp command.

# Part V

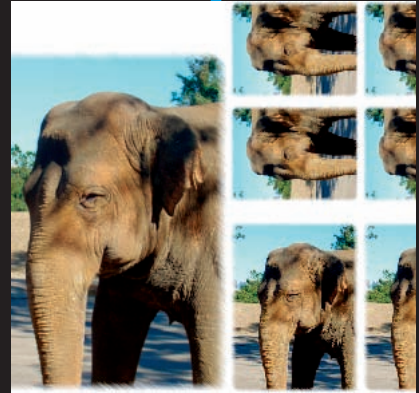
## Printing, Creating, and Sharing



## *In this part . . .*

**R**egardless of whether you read much of what's contained in the first four parts of this book, this last part finishes up with photo output and deployment. As is the case with so many other editing features, you have an abundance of opportunities for outputting your files. Beginning with the most familiar method, which is simply printing to your desktop color printer, we talk about how to get the best results on your printed images. We start with printing to your personal desktop printer and then cover issues related to submitting photos to commercial photo labs and service centers.

In addition to printing, you have a number of different options for sharing images, and they're all covered in the final chapters, where you can find out about slide shows and videodiscs, and about Web hosting, e-mailing, and sharing via online services. The opportunities are enormous, and you may want to look over all that Photoshop Elements has to offer related to photo output and file sharing.





# Getting It on Paper

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Preparing files for printing
- ▶ Working with printer profiles
- ▶ Using Epson, HP, and Canon printers
- ▶ Using professional print centers
- ▶ Ordering prints online
- ▶ Looking at other Elements print options

**P**erhaps the greatest challenge to individuals using programs such as Photoshop Elements, and even the professionals who use its granddaddy, Adobe Photoshop, is getting what you see on your monitor to render a reasonable facsimile on a printed page. You can find all sorts of books on color printing — how to get color right, how to calibrate your equipment, and how to create and use color profiles — all for the purpose of getting a good match between your computer monitor and your printer. It's downright discouraging to spend a lot of time tweaking an image so that all the brilliant blue colors jump out on your computer monitor only to find that all those blues turn to murky purples when the photo is printed.

If you already read Chapters 2 and 3, you're ahead of the game because you know a little bit about color management, color profiles, and printer resolutions. After you check out those chapters, your next step is to get to know your printer or your print service center, and understand how to correctly print your pictures.

In this chapter, we talk about options — many options — for setting print attributes for printing to your own color printer, and we toss in some tips on how to get better results when you're using print service centers. If you need to, reread this chapter a few times just to be certain that you understand the process for printing good-quality images. A little time spent here will, we hope, save you some headaches down the road.



## Getting Pictures Ready for Printing

The first step toward getting your photos to your desktop printer or to a printing service is to prepare each image for optimum output. You have several considerations when you're preparing files, including the ones in this list:

- ✔ **Set resolution and size.** Before you print a file, use the Image Size dialog box (Image⇨Resize⇨Image Size) to set your image size and the optimum resolution for your printer. Files that have too much resolution can print images that are inferior to files optimized for a printer. See your printer's documentation for recommendations for resolution. As a general rule, 300 ppi (pixels per inch) works best for most printers printing on high-quality paper. If you print on plain paper, you often find that lower resolutions work just as well or even better.
- ✔ **Make all brightness and color corrections before printing.** It stands to reason that you want to make sure that your pictures appear their best before sending them off to your printer. If you have your monitor properly calibrated, as we discuss in Chapter 2, you should see a fair representation of what your pictures will look like before you print them.
- ✔ **Decide how color will be managed before you print.** You can color-manage output to your printer in three ways, as we discuss in the next section. Know your printer's profiles and how to use them before you start to print your files.

## Working with Color Printer Profiles

In Chapter 2, we talk about creating color profiles for your monitor and selecting a color workspace. The final leg in a color-managed workflow is to convert color from your color workspace profile to your printer's color profile. Basically, this conversion means that the colors you see on your monitor in your current workspace are accurately converted to the color that can be reproduced by your printer. To print accurate color, you need to have a color profile used by your printer at print time.

### Understanding how Elements uses color profiles

You can manage color in Photoshop Elements in three ways when it comes time to print your files:

- ✔ **Printer Manages Colors:** This method permits your printer to decide which profile is used when your photo is printed to your desktop color printer. Your printer makes this decision according to the paper you select as the source paper used to print your photos. If you choose

Epson Premium Glossy Photo Paper, for example, your printer chooses the profile that goes along with that particular paper. If you choose another paper, your printer chooses a different color profile. This method is all automatic, and color profile selection is made when you print your file.

- ✔ **Photoshop Elements Manages Color:** When you make this choice, color management is taken out of the hands of your printer and is controlled by Elements. You must choose a color profile after making this choice in the Print dialog box. Many color profiles are installed with desktop printers falling in the medium to more expensive models.
- ✔ **No Color Management:** You use this choice if you have a color profile embedded in one of your pictures. You'll probably rarely use this option. Unless you know how to embed profiles or receive files with embedded profiles from other users, don't make this choice in the Print dialog box.

Each of these three options requires you to make some kind of choice about how color is managed. You make choices (as we discuss later in this chapter, when we walk you through the steps for printing) about whether to color-manage your output. These selections are all unique to the Print dialog box for your individual printer.

### *Converting color to a printer profile*

The third option in the preceding section mentions printing a file with converted color. If you choose one of the first two options for converting color (either you select a profile or you let the printer select one), the image on your monitor doesn't change. The conversion happens at print time.

You can physically convert the color in your image to a given printer profile, and doing so actually shows you how the color is converted *before* you print your file. In a way, you're proofing color before wasting paper and ink. If you want to print files with accurate color, we recommend using this method.

In Windows, you can download a free utility from Dry Creek Photo ([www.drycreekphoto.com](http://www.drycreekphoto.com)) that converts color from a workspace to a color profile. Suppose that you want to print some pictures at a discount store, such as Costco, and you want to be certain to use the correct profile for the photo equipment that prints your pictures. You want to convert color from your color workspace (in this case, sRGB will work best for you) to the profile used for a photo printer and paper you want to order.

Follow these steps to prepare a file for a photo service, such as Costco, or when printing to your own desktop printer that installs profiles for the papers you use:

1. **Make all the necessary edits you need to make in Elements and save your files in TIFF format.**

You must use TIFF format to use the converter we mention in Step 6.

2. **Download color profiles from your provider's Web site.**

Almost all service centers post color profiles for their printing equipment. You can visit the Costco Web site at [www.costco.com](http://www.costco.com) and click the Photo link on the home page to go to the Photo Center. You're prompted to set up an account, and then you see a page where profiles are listed. Costco makes the profiles available for stores in their geographic regions, and usually you find profiles for printing on the store's equipment and profiles best suited for different papers. **Note:** If several profiles are available for downloading, be certain to use the right profile for the paper you want your pictures to be printed on.

If you use a photo lab that wants you to convert color and embed profiles, you can visit independent lab Web sites and download profiles, as well.

If you want to convert color to your own printer, use a color profile installed for your printer.

3. **Copy the profiles to your system color folder: C:\WINDOWS\system32\spool\drivers\color.**

This folder is where all your color profiles are stored. Note that the path is the same for Windows XP and Windows Vista.

If you're converting color for your own printer, this folder contains all the color profiles installed by your printer when you installed the printer driver.

4. **Download a converter by going to [www.drycreekphoto.com/tools/profile\\_converter](http://www.drycreekphoto.com/tools/profile_converter) and clicking the ProfileConverterSetup.zip link.**

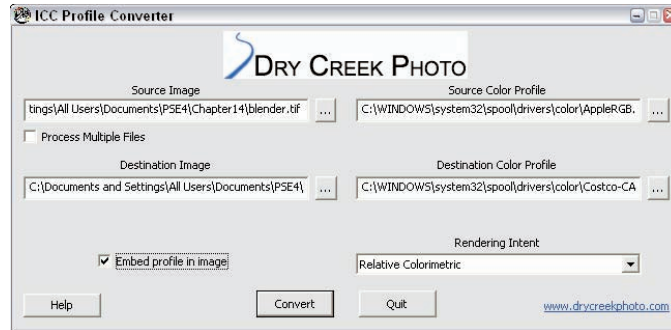
You need a utility to convert files that use the Adobe RGB (1998) or sRGB color space to the color space used by machines at your service center. Fortunately, the Dry Creek Photo converter is a great free tool.



The Dry Creek Photo Web site is one of the best sources of information available for color management and color profiling. In addition to offering custom color-profiling services, Dry Creek Photo hosts a number of different color profiles for many different commercial printers.

5. **After downloading the file to your hard drive, double-click the Setup file and follow the brief steps in the install wizard.**
6. **Choose Start⇨Programs⇨Dry Creek Photo⇨Profile Converter⇨ICC Profile Converter.**

The simple program interface opens, as shown in Figure 14-1.



**Figure 14-1:** Select the options for converting the color profile and select the Embed Profile in Image check box before clicking the Convert button.

**7. Click the Source Image ellipsis (. . .) and select the source file.**

The source file is the file saved in TIFF format that you want to print.

**8. Click the Source Color Profile ellipsis and select the source color profile.**

This color profile is currently embedded in your source file.

**9. Click the Destination Image ellipsis and select the folder where you want to save your file.**

**10. Click the Destination Color Profile ellipsis and select the color profile used by the equipment where you place your order.**

You saved your color profiles to the Windows color folder, so be certain to look in this folder for the target printer color profiles.

**11. If you want to process multiple files, select the Process Multiple Files check box.**

**12. Be certain to select the Embed Profile in Image check box and then click the Convert button.**

After you click Convert, the profile converter handles the profile conversion and saves your files to the target folder.



## Printing to Epson Inkjet Printers

Print settings vary according to manufacturers, and we can't hope to cover all printers in this chapter. We choose to discuss Epson printers as an introduction to printing to desktop color printers in this chapter, but we also show some print options for HP and Canon low-end inkjets later in the chapter.



If you own a different brand of printer or use a service that uses other printers, what's important to know in reviewing this section is the process involved in printing your files. Regardless of what type of printer you own, be aware of when a color profile is used and how color is either managed or not managed. You may have different check-box selections and menu commands, but the process is the same for any printer printing your photos.

Over the past few years, at least half of many service-provider troubleshooting tech calls coming from clients involved problems with accurate color output from Epson and some other ink jet printers. We're not talking about subtle changes between monitor and printer, but huge, monstrous color changes on output prints. As it turns out, almost all the strange output results originated from just one minor error when setting up a file to print — specifically, managing color in the Print dialog box.



Color profiles are also dependent upon the ink being used and *refilling* cartridges with generic ink can (in some cases) result in colors being shifted. Similarly, if the nozzles aren't clean and delivering ink consistently, you can get some very strange results.

We've come up with settings that will work well for you to get accurate results without stress or frustration. Just remember to use the settings exactly as described, and you can achieve superior results with either desktop or professional printers.

When you install your printer driver, the installation utility also installs a number of color profiles. You can choose the profiles in the Photoshop Elements Print dialog box and control all the printing by using the profile provided by your printer manufacturer.



You can also print from the Organizer by selecting one or more image thumbnails in the Organizer window and then choosing File⇨Print. We use printing from Full Edit mode for the examples shown here because you may often want to perform some final corrections before printing.

You have a choice for how these profiles are used. You can

- ✓ Choose to let your printer manage color. The profiling selection is automatic, and you don't have to worry about making other choices in the Print dialog boxes.
- ✓ Choose to let Photoshop Elements manage color, in which case, you need to make some choices about the color profile to be used and make choices for the color management process.



We're talking about two very different issues here. One issue is *color management*, which ultimately comes down to who manages color — your printer or no color management. The other issue is choosing a color profile. Therefore, you have a series of combined options to choose from. You can choose a profile and either turn color management on or off, or you can elect to not make a profile choice and decide whether color management is on or off. What choices you make are critical to getting color right on your output.

All the methods are described in the following sections.

### *Automatic profile selection for Epson printers*

The automatic profile selection method exists, and depending on what model of printer you have, you may be required to make this choice.

Your options all depend on whether the printer you buy installs color profiles on your computer. If you buy some low-end color printers that cost less than \$100, the installer software typically doesn't install color profiles. When no profiles are installed, the printer manages the color through built-in profiles contained in the printer's memory.

High-end models (above the \$100 price range) often install individual color profiles. You might see the profiles for various papers in the Printer Profile pop-up menu in the Elements Print dialog box. If you have one of these high-end printers, you might want to choose the profile that matches the paper you're using and let Elements manage the color.

## Sizing files for output

When we talk about sizing files, we're referring to the physical width, the height dimensions, and the resolution. If you print your pictures at 8 x 10 inches, be certain that you visit the Image Size dialog box by choosing Image → Resize → Image Size and verify that the width and height dimensions are established for your desired paper size. Also critically important is the image resolution, which you can also adjust in the Image Size dialog box. Use your printer manufacturer recommendations for resolution, according to the paper type you use. If you can't find a recommendation in the user manual, use 300 ppi (pixels per inch) as a standard for printing

to quality coated-paper stocks, such as Epson Premium Glossy Photo Paper.

Above all, don't size your image resolution larger than the default size of your photo. For example, if you have a 5-x-7-inch photo at 300 ppi, don't try to size the photo up to 8 x 10 inches at 300 ppi. Doing so can produce unexpected results. If you need an image size larger than your file size, go back to your original digital camera image, edit it for color correction, and size it to the desired output. If the original camera image is smaller than you want, you're stuck and can't get a quality print that greatly exceeds your camera's capture capabilities.



As we discuss in Chapter 2, you have two choices for your color workspace. Those choices are sRGB or Adobe RGB (1998). The workspace is used to see color on your monitor. We also talk about calibrating your monitor so the colors you see appear as close to real-world color as you can get.

When you print a picture, the color from your workspace (either sRGB or Adobe RGB [1998]) is converted to your printer color. So, you want to take all the color you see in an sRGB workspace, for example, and fit that color into the printer's profile so the print looks as close as possible to what you see on your monitor. Elements takes care of this color conversion. The only thing you need to worry about is making the right choice for how that conversion will take place.

Follow these steps to print from the native color space:

**1. Choose File⇨Print.**

The Print dialog box that opens contains all the settings you need to print a file.

**2. Select the orientation of your print.**

Your choices are either Portrait or Landscape, as shown in Figure 14-2. Click the proper orientation from the icons in the lower-left corner of the Print dialog box.

**3. Choose your printer.**

Select the printer you use from the Printer drop-down menu.

**4. Set the print attributes.**

Select the number of copies, position, scaling, and output items you want.

In the Color Management area of the Print dialog box, as shown in Figure 14-3, you can make choices for how to manage color when you print files.

**5. From the Printer Profile drop-down list, select Printer Manages Color.**

This choice uses your current workspace color and later converts the color from your workspace to the printer output file when you open



**Figure 14-2:** Click the orientation matching your photo.

the printer driver dialog box. As you can see in Figure 14-3, the Source Space is sRGB. The Color Management section of the Print dialog box indicates that the color will be converted from sRGB — the working space — to the color space managed by the printer.

**6. Click Print in the Print dialog box.**

The file doesn't print yet. Rather, the Windows system Print dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 14-4.

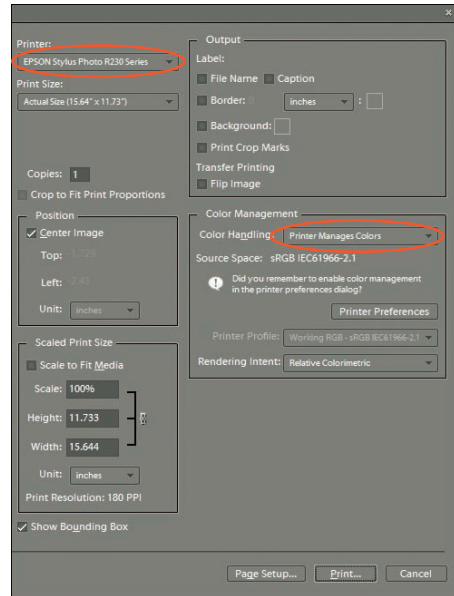
**7. Verify that your target printer is still selected in the Windows Print dialog box and click Preferences.**

The printer driver dialog box opens.

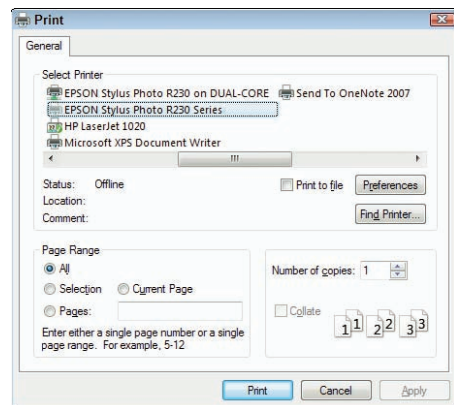
Each printer displays a different dialog box after you click Properties in the Windows Print dialog box. Figure 14-5 shows the Epson Stylus Photo R230Series Properties dialog box. Although many Epson printers use an identical dialog box, you find that some Epson printers, especially the high-end devices, display different dialog boxes. Furthermore, printers from other manufacturers appear with completely different settings in the printer driver dialog box.

**8. Set print attributes.**

In our Epson example, select Epson Premium Glossy (or another paper from the Type drop-down list that you may be using) and then click the Best Photo radio button, as shown in Figure 14-5.



**Figure 14-3:** Look over the Color Management area in the Print dialog box for options on how to manage color.



**Figure 14-4:** Click Print in the Elements Print dialog box to open the Windows Print dialog box.

Now, it's time to color manage your file. This step is critical in your print production workflow.

9. Click the **Advanced** button and then, in the **Warning** dialog box that appears, simply click **Continue**.

The Advanced Settings dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 14-6.

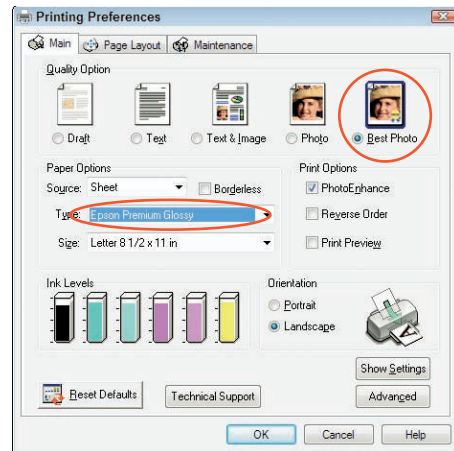
10. **Make your choices in the Advanced Settings dialog box.**

Here are the most important choices:

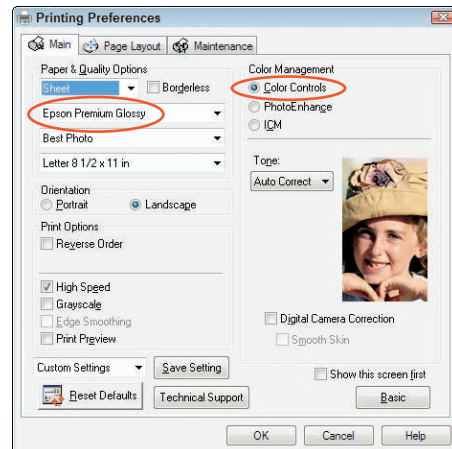
- *Select a paper type.* You selected paper already? The second drop-down menu in the Paper & Quality section of the dialog box determines the application of inks. Choose the same paper here as you did in Step 8.
- *Turn on color management.* Because you're letting the print driver determine the color, you need to be certain that the Color Controls radio button is active. This setting tells the print driver to automatically select a printer profile for the paper type you selected.
- *Set the color mode.* Don't use Epson Vivid. This choice produces inferior results on photos. Choose Best Photo, the Epson Standard, or Adobe RGB, depending on your printer (see Figure 14-6).



If you frequently print files using the same settings, you can save your settings by clicking the Save Setting button.



**Figure 14-5:** Select the paper type from the Type drop-down list and the Best Photo option for printing photos.



**Figure 14-6:** Click Advanced and then click Continue to access the advanced settings in the Epson printer driver.

**11. To print the photo, click OK and then OK again in the Print dialog box.**

Your file is sent to your printer. The color is converted automatically from your source workspace of sRGB or Adobe RGB (1998) to the profile the printer driver automatically selects for you.

## Selecting a printer profile

Another method for managing color when you're printing files is to select a printer profile from the available list of color profiles installed with your printer. Whereas in the preceding section, you used your printer to manage color, this time, you let Photoshop Elements manage the color.

The steps in this section are the same as the ones described in the preceding section for printing files for automatic profile selection when you're setting up the page and selecting a printer. When you choose File⇨Print, you open the Elements Print dialog box. To let Elements handle the color conversion, follow these steps in the Print dialog box:

**1. From the Printer Profile drop-down list in the Print dialog box, select the color profile designed for use with the paper you've chosen to print your image.**

In this example, we use a heavyweight matte paper color profile, as shown in Figure 14-7. (Note that custom color profiles you acquire from a profiling service come with recommended color-rendering intents. For this paper, Relative Colorimetric is recommended and is selected in the Rendering Intent drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 14-7.)

**2. Click Print.**

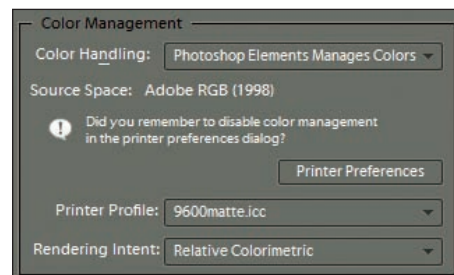
The second Print dialog box opens.

**3. Click the Properties button.**

You arrive at the same dialog box shown in Figure 14-5.

**4. Click the Best Photo radio button. From the Type drop-down list, select the recommended paper choice.**

Custom color profiles are also shipped with guidelines for selecting proper paper.

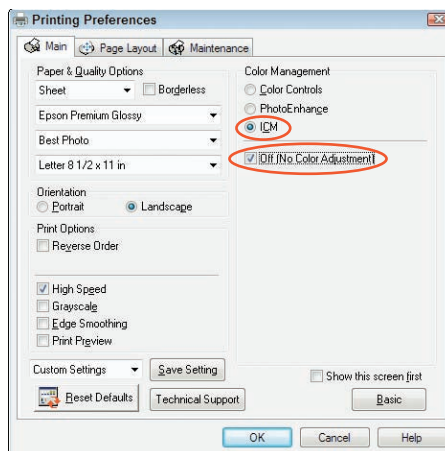
**5. Click Advanced and click Continue to arrive at the same dialog box shown earlier in Figure 14-6.**

**Figure 14-7:** Choose a printer profile that matches the paper you use.

The paper choice selection is automatically carried over from the previous Properties dialog box (in Step 2 in the steps in the preceding section). The one different setting you make is in the Color Management section.

6. Click the **ICM (Image Color Management)** radio button and check **Off (No Color Adjustment)**, as shown in **Figure 14-8**.

Because you selected the color profile in Step 1 and you're letting Elements manage the color, be sure that color management is turned off. If you don't turn off color management, you end up double-profiling your print.



**Figure 14-8:** Click ICM and click Off (No Color Adjustment).



When to choose to manage color and when to choose to not manage color is simplified in Photoshop Elements. In the Color Management area of the dialog box, a message is reported each time you make a selection from the Color Handling drop-down menu. Right below Source Space, you see a message asking if you remembered to turn color management on or off. Each time you make a selection for the Color Handling, pause a moment and read the message. This is your reminder that you need to follow the recommendation to properly handle color.

### *Printing with a custom profile*

Printing with a custom profile is very simple. Just remember that you must use the profile with exactly the same settings that you used to print the test target when the profile was created. For custom profiles, you always use No Color Management throughout the output process.

Let us make this concept even clearer. When you generate your test target for the profiling service where you may order a custom profile created for your printer, the service requires that you print the target without color conversions of any kind. The target has to reflect the actual colors generated by your printer from a known sample file, with no modifications whatsoever, for a known printing condition and media type. The resulting profile tells the color engine exactly how to modify the output data to match the colors as closely as possible to your working space or a different previously embedded color profile.

For all this to work properly, the printer can't be allowed to modify the printing data in any way. All the work has to be done by Photoshop Elements. So, assuming that you have a custom profile ready to use, here's the setup:

**1. Use a profile converter to convert color.**

In Windows, use a utility, such as the Dry Creek Photo Profile Converter. (For details, see “Converting color to a printer profile,” earlier in this chapter.)



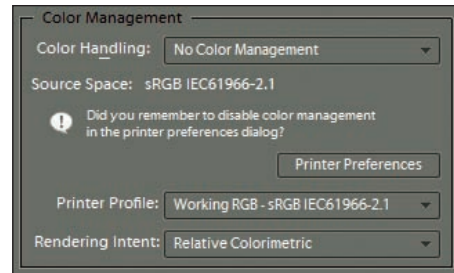
If you've obtained a custom profile from a media supplier, you must use the specific media and intent settings it recommends for your printer, although all other instructions in this section are the same.

**2. Open the converted file in Elements and choose File→Print.**

**3. In the Print dialog box, select No Color Management for your printer profile, as shown in Figure 14-9.**

**4. Turn off color management.**

Use the same settings for printing when you let Elements determine color. Be certain to turn off color management, the same way we show you in the preceding section (refer to Figure 14-7).



**Figure 14-9:** Select No Color Management when you print files with converted color.

## Printing to HP Inkjet Printers

Regardless of the printer you use, the process for printing follows the same logic that we describe for printing to Epson printers in the preceding sections. Unfortunately, each manufacturer uses different dialog boxes and different menu command names that can leave you completely confused if you try to apply the steps you use in printing on one printer to a different printer.

The three methods for managing color (as we describe in the section “Understanding how Elements uses color profiles,” earlier in this chapter) apply to all printers, but the dialog boxes, buttons, and menu choices appear differently.

If you own an HP printer, you probably know where to make your paper selection and your best photo selection. The most obscure setting is likely the color management choice. We don't go through each detailed step for printing to an HP low-end desktop printer — take a look in the following section to find out how to manage color.



As with all printers, you have three choices for managing color with an HP printer:

✓ **Let your printer determine color.** Follow these general steps:

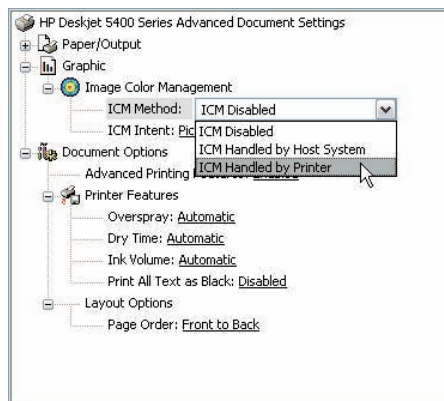
1. Choose **File**⇨**Print** to open the **Print dialog box**.

2. From the **Printer Profile drop-down menu**, select **Printer Color Management** and then click **Print**.

A second **Print dialog box** opens.

3. Click **Properties** to open the **Printer Driver dialog box**.

4. On the **Advanced tab**, click **Graphic** and click **Image Color Management**. From the **ICM Method drop-down menu**, select **ICM Handled by Printer**, as shown in **Figure 14-10**.



**Figure 14-10:** Click the **Advanced** tab and select **ICM Handled by Printer**.

✓ **Let Elements determine color.** Follow the preceding steps, but this time, select a color profile in the **Print dialog box** (refer to Step 2) and select **ICM Disabled** on the **Advanced tab** (refer to Step 4).

✓ **Print a file with converted color.** Follow the preceding steps, but select **Same as Source** in the **Print dialog box** (refer to Step 2) and select **ICM Disabled** on the **Advanced tab** (refer to Step 4).

## Printing to Canon Printers

As with Epson and HP printers (which we describe in the preceding sections), you follow the same logic and choose to either enable or disable color management when printing to Canon printers. With Canon color printers, the area in the printer driver dialog box is even more hidden than in Epson and HP desktop printers.

When printing to Canon printers, you control color management in one of these ways:

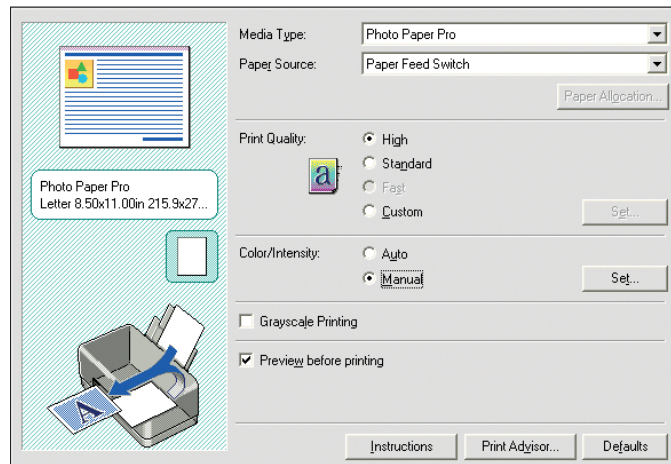


✓ **Let your printer determine color.** Follow these steps:

1. Choose **File**→**Print** to open the **Print dialog box**.
2. From the **Printer Profile** drop-down menu, select **Printer Color Management** and then click **Print**.

A second Print dialog box opens.

3. Click **Properties** to open the printer driver dialog box.
4. On the **Main** tab, click **Manual** in the **Color/Intensity** area, as shown in Figure 14-11.



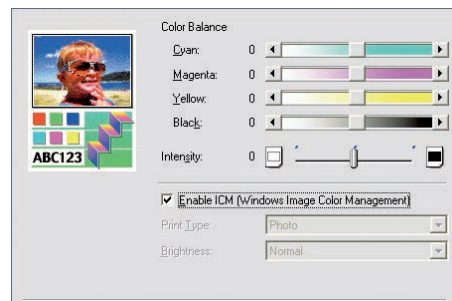
**Figure 14-11:** Click the Manual radio button for Color/Intensity.

5. Click the **Set** button to open the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box.
6. Select the **Enable ICM (Windows Image Color Management)** check box, shown in Figure 14-12.

✓ **Let Elements determine color.**

Follow the preceding set of steps and deselect the **Enable ICM (Windows Image Color Management)** check box in Step 6.

✓ **Print a file with converted color.** Select **Same as Source** in the **Print dialog box** in Step 2 and deselect **ICM (Windows Image Color Management)** in Step 6.



**Figure 14-12:** Check the Enable ICM (Windows Image Color Management) check box.

## Submitting Files to Service Centers

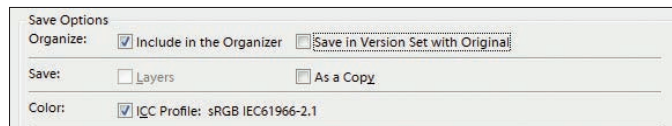
On provider Web sites, you can usually find guidelines for acceptable file formats and the recommended resolutions and dimensions of your images. If you don't see these guidelines on Web sites, be sure to call and inquire about which file attributes are acceptable.

As a general rule, here are some things to consider when you're submitting files, if guidelines aren't provided:

- ✓ **Color workspace:** Always ask a provider what workspace it prefers to use to convert color. Online services generally recommend that you use sRGB as your color workspace.
- ✓ **Resolution:** For photo printing machines, be certain to submit files at 300 ppi (pixels per inch). See Chapter 3 for more information on image resolution.
- ✓ **Dimensions:** As a general rule, size images to the print size. For example, if you want 4-x-6-inch prints, be certain that your images are sized to 4 x 6 inches at 300 ppi.
- ✓ **File format:** Some centers may take only JPEG images. If TIFF isn't acceptable, locate the converted images you saved from the Dry Creek ICC Profile Converter and follow these steps (in Windows):

1. **Open the TIFF file or files in Photoshop Elements and choose File⇨Save As.**
2. **Be certain that the ICC Profile check box is selected in the Save Options in the Save/Save As dialog box. Select JPEG for the format and click Save.**

Notice that the profile used with the Dry Creek ICC Profile Converter is listed as the ICC Profile. In Figure 14-13, you can see a profile embedded for a Costco print center. (See the section "Converting color to a printer profile," earlier in this chapter, for more on the Dry Creek Converter.)



**Figure 14-13:** You can change file formats from TIFF to JPEG and preserve embedded profiles when you're saving from Elements.

✓ **Media storage:** If you walk into a FedEx Kinko's store and go to the self-serve photo-printing machines, you don't see support for any external USB hard drives or removable USB drives. All the print centers support a wide range of media cards used by digital cameras. Be certain to use your memory card and not a USB device when placing orders. If you use CompactFlash II, memory sticks, or other media sources used by digital cameras, copy your files to these sources when you place orders as a walk-in customer.



Vendors that host Web sites with downloadable profiles and order information are likely to accept file uploads online. This capability saves you the time spent fighting crowds when you're placing orders. In some cases, you can have service centers mail your images back to you so that you don't need to wait when you're picking up orders, either. This online ordering stuff is a matter that we talk about in the following section.

## Using Online Printing Services

Photoshop Elements supports the Adobe Photoshop Services program, which is a joint effort between Adobe Systems and Kodak EasyShare (formerly Ofoto), a division of Kodak. The Services program offers online ordering of prints and sharing of photos and projects, and it has a huge array of different print products for consumers and professionals.

As of this writing, you get ten free prints, so it's worth taking a little time to check out the service — especially if you want to order prints and have them mailed directly to your home or office. No lines, no hassles, no fighting high-rising gasoline costs — this service offers great prints and an abundance of convenience.

To use the service, follow these steps:

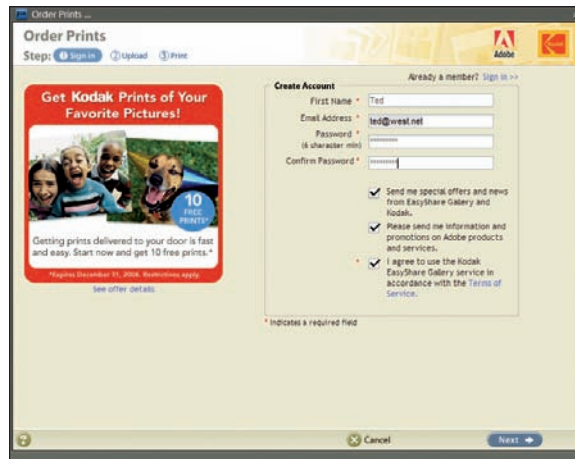
1. **Select files in the Organizer much like you'd select files for printing.**
2. **In either editing mode or the Organizer, choose File⇨Order Prints. Alternately, you can click the Share tab in the Panels Bin and click the Order Prints button.**

The Kodak EasyShare Wizard opens, as shown in Figure 14-14. The first screen shown in the wizard is a form for you to create an account.

If you try to place an order from your office where the IT department prevents you from connecting to some external sources, you may need to have your firewall settings adjusted. Talk to someone in your IT department to help you make a connection.



3. **If you haven't set up an account already, fill in the information and step through the wizard by clicking the Next button on each page. If you have set up an account, supply your logon information.**



**Figure 14-14:** Choose File⇨Order Prints to open the Kodak EasyShare Wizard.

The selected files in the Organizer are automatically loaded in Step 1 of the wizard's order page.

**4. You can modify your order by deleting files from the order and specifying different print sizes and quantities.**

One nice feature in the service is the option for sending duplicate prints to another party. You can keep an address book on the provider's Web site and specify whom you want to receive an order. This feature is helpful if you're away spending your children's inheritance on a Caribbean cruise and want to send all your kids photos of the great time you're having. Just pop open your laptop on the pool deck, load the digital camera images, and connect via a wireless connection. Before you return to Buffalo in midwinter with a suntan, your kids will frown as they fan through the prints they received a week earlier.

**5. Continue stepping through the wizard to upload your files and confirm your order, click the Finish button on the last pane, and your order is complete.**

## Exploring Other Print Options

Photoshop Elements provides you with other options for printing things, such as video images and contact sheets; adding borders and trim lines; and inverting images for heat transfers, such as the ones you may use for iron-on T-shirt designs. You can find these options in the Print dialog box. Most of these print options are intuitive and easy to use. Just poke around, experiment, and have fun. When it comes time to print, follow the recommendations we offer here for getting your color right.

# Showing It Onscreen

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Understanding packaging options
- ▶ Outputting to a slide show
- ▶ Burning CDs and DVDs
- ▶ Creating files for Web viewing
- ▶ Photo and blog sites
- ▶ Flipping photos

**E**lements is a great packaging tool that you can use to deploy your photos and projects for screen viewing. And that's not just your computer monitor. You can edit photos or assemble creations that are exported for Web viewing, too, and you can even prepare files to show on your television.

In Chapter 3, you can find out about resolutions and color modes. The output requirements for printing files, which we cover in Chapter 14, are much different from what you use for screen viewing.

In this chapter, we cover the options for Web and screen viewing that get you started with basics, including saving images for the Web (or for screen viewing), setting up a slide show, and burning your images on CDs or DVDs.

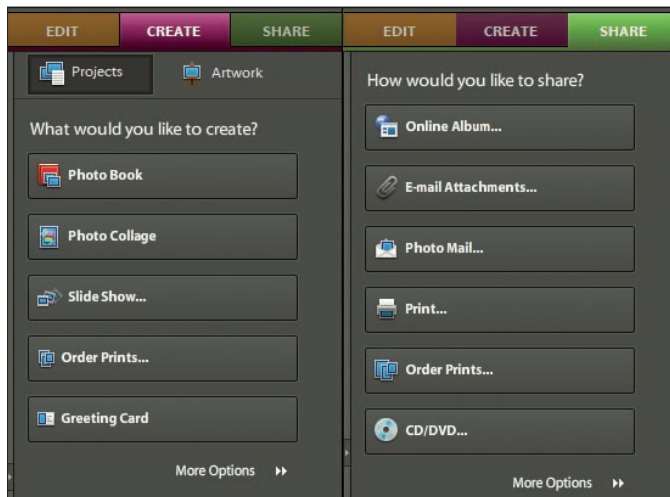
## *Getting Familiar with the Elements Sharing and Printing Options*

Before we delve into telling you how to make creations for screen viewing, you should be familiar with your available options for not only screen images, but also sharing and printing. When you open the Organizer and look at the Panels Bin, you see two tabs on the right side at the top of the bin for Create and Share. The Create and Share panels are available in the Organizer and both Full Edit and Quick Edit modes. Options available to you in the panels are identical in each editing space.



Figure 15-1, shows the menu options for the respective items:

- ✓ **Create:** The Create tab contains options for creating different kinds of projects, such as photo albums, photo calendars, photo collages, online photo galleries, and slide shows.
- ✓ **Share:** The Share tab provides a number of different options for sharing photos. On this tab, you find options for developing online photo galleries, e-mailing photos, ordering photo prints, and writing files to CD/DVDs.



**Figure 15-1:** Two panels provide a number of different sharing and photo creation options.



Note that each panel contains a More Options button. Click the button to find more creation and sharing options.

In Chapter 14, we talk about ordering online prints by using the Order Prints option in the Share panel. In this chapter and in Chapter 16, we cover various commands in the Create panel and other options in the Share panel.

## Creating a Slide Show

*This Million Dollar Baby is no Mystic River — it's simply Absolute Power!* Well, maybe you won't travel the same path from Rowdy Yates to multiple Academy Award-winning director and filmmaker Clint Eastwood, but even Mr. Eastwood might be impressed with the options for moviemaking with the Photoshop Elements slide show creations. When he's not rolling out his

Panaflex camera, he may just want to take photos of the grandkids and do the directing and producing, as well as the editing, right in Photoshop Elements.

For the rest of us, we can be our own Clint Eastwood wannabes by using the powerful features of the Photoshop Elements Slide Show Editor to create PDF slide shows and movie files. It's so easy that Elements promises you won't be *Unforgiven*.

## Creating a project

You create a project file in the Slide Show Editor and then export it for a number of different uses. In this section, you can find out how to create and save your project. In the following section, you dive into exporting.

Here's how to create a slide show project that you can edit and export later:

- 1. Open the Organizer and select the pictures you want to use in your slide show.**

- 2. Click the Create button in the Panels Bin and click Slide Show.**

The Slide Show Preferences dialog box opens. Just about everything in the dialog box can be adjusted in the Slide Show Editor, so don't worry about making choices here. If you want to keep the Slide Show Preferences dialog box from reappearing when you make slide creations, deselect the Show This Dialog Each Time a New Slide Show Is Created check box.

- 3. Click OK in the Slide Show Preferences dialog box.**

The Slide Show Editor opens, as shown in Figure 15-2.

- 4. If your Slide Show Editor doesn't show you a screen similar to the one shown in Figure 15-2, maximize the window by clicking the Maximize button in the upper-right corner of the Editor window.**

This way, you can see the Storyboard at the bottom of the screen and the Panels Bin on the right side of the editor.

- 5. (Optional) Create a Pan & Zoom view.**

When slides are shown, you can zoom and pan a slide. Click the Enable Pan & Zoom check box and click the Start thumbnail. A rectangle appears in the preview area. Move any one of the four corner handles in or out to resize the rectangle. Moving the cursor inside the rectangle and clicking the mouse button enables you to move the rectangle around the preview.

For the end zoom position, click the End thumbnail and size the rectangle to a zoomed view or a view that you want to stop the zoom. Notice in Figure 15-2 that the End thumbnail is selected and the rectangle is sized down to the zoom area on a portion of the photo.





**Figure 15-2:** The Slide Show Editor is where you create slide shows.

### 6. (Optional) Add a graphic.

A library of graphics appears in the Extras pane in the Panels Bin. Drag a graphic to a slide. If you want a blank slide to appear first and then add text and graphics to the blank slide, click Add Blank Slide on the Shortcuts bar at the top of the Editor.

### 7. (Optional) Add text.

Click the Text tool in the Extras pane in the Panels Bin and drag a text style to the blank slide or the opening slide in the slide show. After you drag text to a slide, the Properties pane opens in the Panels Bin. The text you drag to the slide is placeholder text. To edit the text, click Edit Text in the Properties pane. You can also select a font, a font point size, a color for the text, text alignment, and a font style. After setting the type attributes, click inside the text and move it to the position you want.

### 8. (Optional) Set transitions.

The icons between the slides in the Storyboard (at the bottom of the Slide Show Editor) indicate a default transition applied to the slide show. You can change transition effects for each slide independently or to all the slides in the show. Click the right-pointing arrow on the right side



of a transition icon to open a pop-up menu containing a number of different transitions, as shown in Figure 15-3. If you want to apply the same transition to all slides, choose Apply to All from the menu commands.

Be conservative with the transition effects. Too many transitions of different types can make the slide show appear amateurish and distracting to the viewers.

### 9. (Optional) Add audio and media.

You can add audio to the slide show by choosing Add Media⇨Audio from Organizer (or from Folder). Select an audio file and click OK.

You can also add movie files to your slide show. A movie file can be added on top of a slide or on a new slide. When the slide show is played, the video file plays. Choose Add Media⇨Photos and Videos from Organizer (or from Folder).

This same set of commands can also be used to add more pictures to the slide show.

### 10. (Optional) Record your own sounds.

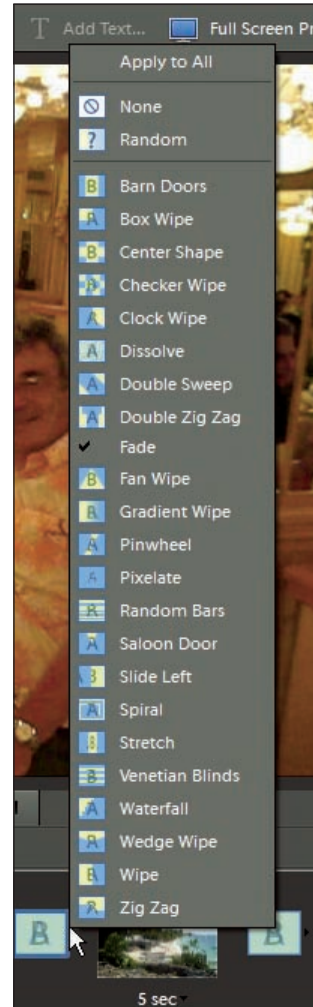
If you want to add narration, click the Narration tool (represented by a microphone icon) in the Panels Bin, and the Extras panel changes to provide you with tools to record a sound or import a sound file. Note that this option requires you to have a microphone properly configured on your computer.

### 11. (Optional) Fit slides to the audio.

If you have 3 minutes of audio and the slide duration is 2 minutes 30 seconds, you can, with a single mouse click, fit the slide duration uniformly to fit the 3-minute audio time. Just click the Fit Slides to Audio tool below the preview image.

If you want to manually adjust time for slide durations, click the down arrow on the time readout below the slide thumbnails in the Storyboard.

### 12. Click Save Project on the Shortcuts bar and then, in the dialog box that opens, type a name and click Save.



**Figure 15-3:** Click a right-pointing arrow on a transition to open the Transitions pop-up menu.

Your project is added to the Organizer and is available for further editing later. Or, you can open the project to save in a number of different output formats, as we explain in the following section.

### 13. Preview the slide show.

Before exporting the slide show, you can see a preview by clicking the buttons directly below the image preview area. If you want a full-screen preview, click the Preview button on the Shortcuts bar and click the Play button.

## Exporting to slides and video

After creating a project, you have a number of different output options. You can write a project to disc for archival purposes and include slide shows on a VideoCD (videodisc) or DVD. You can e-mail a slide show to another user, share a project online, write a project compatible for display on a TV, or save to either a PDF slide show or Windows movie file.

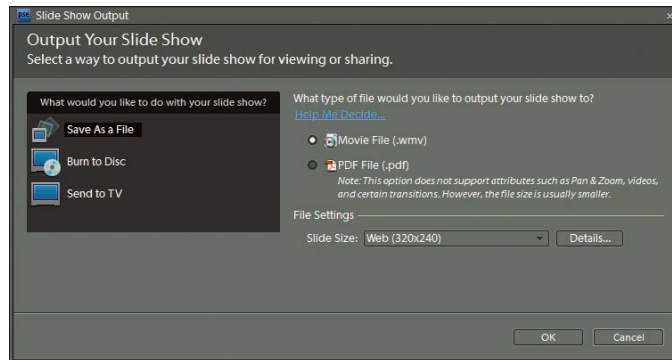
To write a PDF slide show or a movie file, follow these steps:

### 1. In the Organizer window, double-click the project thumbnail.

The project opens in the Adobe Photoshop Elements Slide Show Editor.

### 2. Click the Output tool on the Shortcuts bar.

The Slide Show Output Wizard opens, as shown in Figure 15-4.



**Figure 15-4:** Select Output in the Photoshop Elements Slide Show Editor to open the Slide Show Output Wizard.

### 3. Select the type of file you want to export to.

Select **Movie File (.wmv)** to export a Windows media video file. Your exported video can be viewed in Elements or in the Windows Media Player. You can import the video in all programs that support .wmv files.

Select **PDF File (.pdf)** if you want to create a PDF slide show. If you create a PDF slide show, some of the animation features, such as zooming slides and transition effects, aren't shown in the resultant PDF document.

4. In the dialog box that opens, which prompts you to add your output file to the Organizer, click **Yes**.

You can now easily view the file by double-clicking it in the Organizer window.

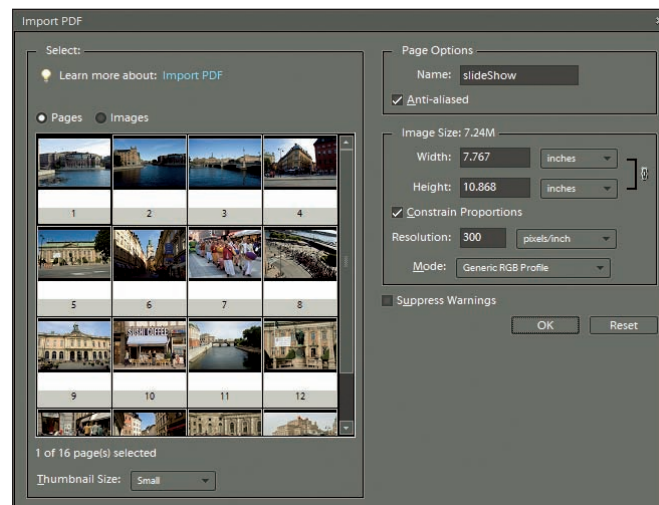
## Opening multipage PDF files in Elements

If you create a slide show and export the slide show to a PDF document, you can open individual PDF pages in Elements. Elements can open any PDF document created from any PDF producer. Here's how:

1. In the Organizer, select a file to open and click the **Full Edit** option on the Shortcuts bar.

Be sure to select the file and click Standard Edit. Don't double-click the file in the Organizer; that action opens the file in Adobe Reader.

When the file is opened in Full Edit mode, the Import PDF dialog box opens, as shown in Figure 15-5.



**Figure 15-5:** Select a PDF file to open in Elements, and the Import PDF dialog box opens.

2. In the dialog box, you can select one or more pages and specify the resolution and color mode.

If you want to select several pages in a noncontiguous order, press Ctrl (Control on the Mac) while clicking the pages you want to open.

3. Click OK to open the PDF pages in individual Image windows.

## Writing Creations to CDs and DVDs

You can output creations, such as slide shows and images you optimize for TV, to a CD or DVD by using the Slide Show Output Wizard. If you have a movie but don't have a DVD burner, most DVD players sold today enable you to view videodiscs written to CDs. The CDs just don't hold as much content as DVDs do.



VCDs display at lower resolutions than DVDs. (VCD is an 1150kbps video stream with a 352 x 240 resolution for NTSC, and DVD is 720 x 480 at variable bitrates between about 3000 and 9800kbps.) You can get 80 minutes of VCD on a 700MB CD (74 min on a 650MB).

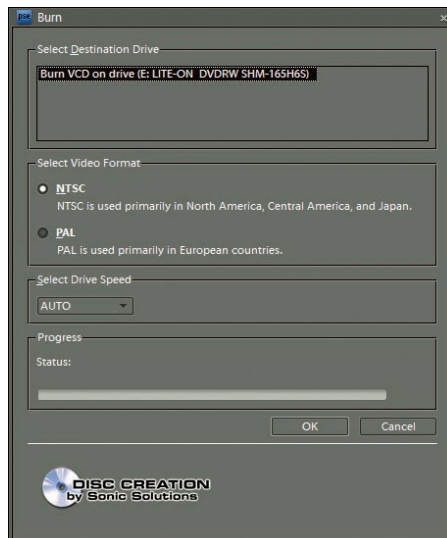
To write to a CD or DVD, follow these steps:

1. Open a project in the Slide Show Output Wizard by double-clicking a project in the Organizer.
2. Click Output in the Slide Show Editor.
3. Click Burn to Disc in the Slide Show Output Wizard.
4. Click OK in the first screen in the Slide Show Output Wizard.

If you want to burn additional slide shows to the same disc, check the Include Additional Slide Shows I've Made On This Disc box. Otherwise, just click OK to burn a single slide show to a disc.

5. Choose a file format.

Click either NTSC or PAL for the video format you use, as shown in Figure 15-6. NTSC is commonly used in the U.S. and Japan, whereas PAL is



**Figure 15-6:** Type a name and select the format to export in the Slide Show Output Wizard.

commonly used in Europe and other countries. Be certain to check the format used by your video players and TV before making a choice here.

**6. Click OK.**

The Burn dialog box opens, and your CD drive door on your computer opens.

**7. Insert a CD and click OK.**

The status bar shows the writing progress.

After the CD or DVD finishes writing, pop open your CD/DVD drive and remove the disc. Place the disc in your DVD player and press Play. The movie automatically starts playing, like any commercial videodisc.

## *Showing Your Files on the Web*

Another option for screen-viewing your photos is to display them on the Web. With Photoshop Elements, you don't need to know a hoot about Web page design and HTML coding. Elements creates all you need to upload attractive collections to your personal Web site. In addition, all the editing tools you need to prepare files for other kinds of Web hosting are all contained in Elements. Regardless of whether you want to display galleries of images or host images on your own personal blog, Elements provides you all the editing opportunities.

### *Creating an online photo album*

Galleries of images are usually added to Web sites with links and/or animation. You can prepare an online gallery of images, and Elements handles all the HTML coding you need to show an attractive display of your pictures with a professional look.

To see how easy it is to create a Web page showing off your photos, follow these steps:

- 1. Open the Organizer and select the photos you want to display on your Web site.**
- 2. Click Share in the Panels Bin and choose Online Album from the panel options.**

The Online Gallery panel opens in the Panels Bin.

- 3. Drag photos from the Organizer to the Online Album panel.**

If you created an album, as we explain in Chapter 6, you can open the Organizer, click the Organize button in the Panels Bin, and click the

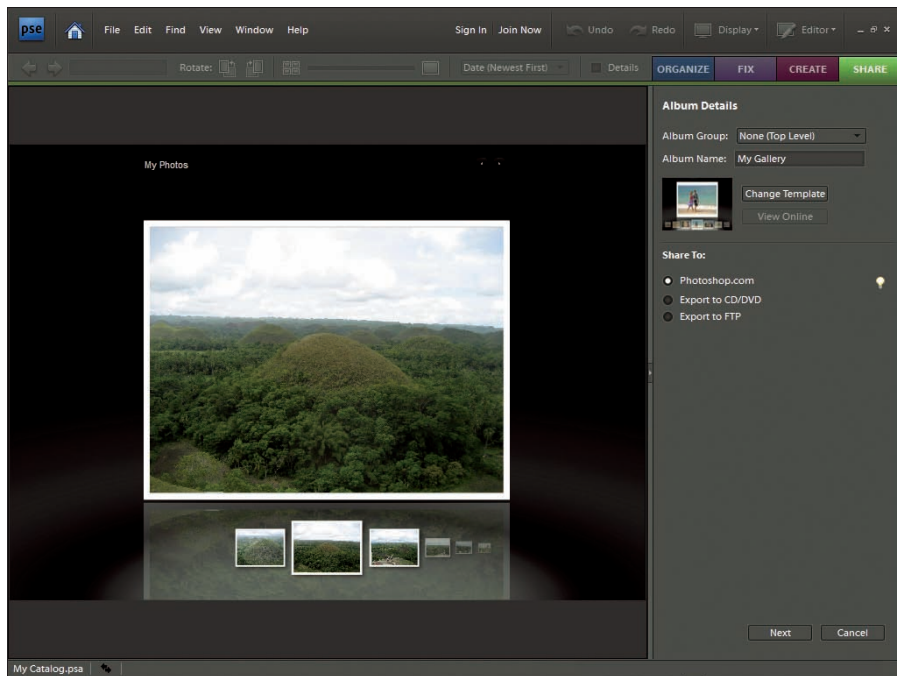


album you created for showing photos online. This option prevents you from having to sort through the Organizer window to find photos you want to add to the online gallery.

You can first select photos in the Organizer, then click Share and click Online Album. All the selected photos are added to a new album.

#### 4. Choose what you want to share to.

The first pane in the new creation is the Album Details. In this pane, you make a choice for distributing your album to Photoshop.com, to a CD/DVD, or to an FTP site. Click the radio button of your choice, as shown in Figure 15-7.



**Figure 15-7:** Make a choice for sharing and click Next to see a preview of your gallery.

#### 5. Choose a template.

Click Change Template to expand the Online Gallery panel to display a number of templates you can use for your gallery. Select a template and click Next to move to the next pane.

#### 6. Select options for your album.



If you choose to distribute on Photoshop.com, you need to log into your account. If you choose another option, fill in the fields for title, subtitle, and e-mail address.

**7. Click Next.**

A preview of your gallery appears, complete with animation effects. Review the file.

**8. Save your gallery.**

**9. Click Next and upload the file to Photoshop.com or an FTP site, or burn a CD/DVD.**

If you can't get a connection to your FTP site by using Elements, use an FTP program to upload files. Be certain to upload the entire folder that Elements created for you. Inside this folder is the `index.html` file Elements created. You can add links from other Web pages to this file and host a series of different creations, all made visible with different Web links.

## Flip 'Em Over with Flipbooks

Below the buttons for different create and share items in both the Create and Share panels, you can find a More Options button. Click More Options to open a menu where additional create/share items are found. With regard to the Create panel, the More Options menu contains a number of items, such as CD/DVD jackets and labels, VCD with a menu, and a flipbook.

At the bottom of the More Options menu in the Create panel, you can find a Flipbook option. If you want to create a quick little video that shows off your photos by flashing stills on your screen or your TV set, you can quickly create a flipbook. Here's how you do it:

**1. Open the Organizer and select the files you want to use.**

Note that you must select at least two files in order to create the flipbook.

**2. Click the Create tab in the Panels Bin and choose More Options ⇨ Flipbook.**

The Photoshop Elements Video Flipbook opens, as shown in Figure 15-8.

**3. Set the playback speed by typing a value in the Speed text box or moving the slider to the desired speed.**



**Figure 15-8:** The Photoshop Elements Video Flipbook dialog box permits you to select a speed and movie file size.

Note that flipping through photos looks best at low speeds, such as 1 or 2 frames per second (fps). Also, you can select the size for your video file from options on the Movie File Size drop-down menu.

**4. Click Output.**

The Save Video Flipbook dialog box opens.

**5. Type a filename and click Save.**

Your file is written as a .wmv file. You can use Microsoft Movie Maker to write the file to a CD or DVD.

# Making Creations and Sharing

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Understanding common creation assembly
- ▶ Creating photo album pages
- ▶ Constructing greeting cards and postcards
- ▶ Making your own CD and DVD labels
- ▶ Using sharing services
- ▶ Examining other online services

**A**dobe Photoshop Elements offers you a number of creations that can be shared onscreen or in print. From both the Create and Share panels in the Panels Bin in the Organizer and both editing modes, you have a number of menu choices for making creations designed for sharing.

In Chapter 15, we look at creating files for screen and Web viewing. In this chapter, we talk about creations designed for print and sharing. It's all here in Elements, but shhhhh. Don't tell the Photoshop people because Photoshop doesn't have all these wonderful creation features.

## *Getting a Grip on Assembling Creations*

In Chapter 15, we talk about slide shows, videodiscs, online galleries, and video flipbooks. These creations offer different output options, such as e-mailing, burning files to disc, and creating HTML documents — as well as printing and PDF creation.



You work with the remaining creations — Photo Books, Photo Collages, Photo Calendars, Greeting Cards, E-mail Attachments, various sorts of online sharing, and PhotoStamps — by choosing options from the Create and Share panels. All these creations are designed for output to your printer or for sending files to an online printing service, or friends and family.

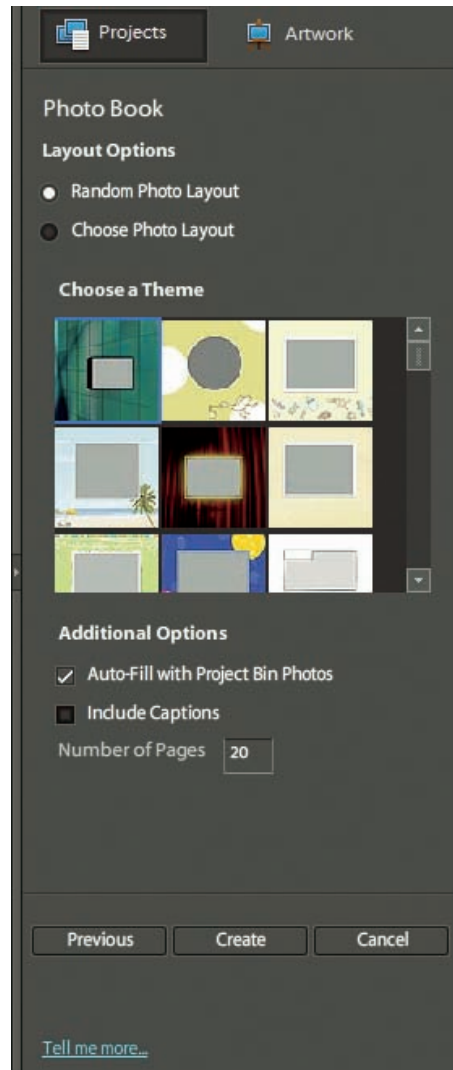


When you make a creation that will ultimately be sent to an online service or shared with other users, keep in mind that you first must select the photos you want in your creation. For example, creating a Photo Book by clicking the Photo Book button in the Create panel first requires you to select photos to let Elements know what photos are to be used in your photo book. If you happen to click a button and nothing happens, more than likely, you haven't selected any photos.

Many creation options follow a similar set of steps to produce a file that will be shared with other users or sent to an online printing service. In the Panels Bin, you can find all you need to make a new project by making choices for layouts and producing a creation. Among some of the common tasks you'll find when making a choice from both the Create and Share panels are

- ✓ **Layout options:** Select some photos in the Organizer and click an item, such as Photo Book, to make the Create panel change to the Project view. This view displays some information about making a new creation.

Read the help information and click Next to arrive at the second panel, as shown in Figure 16-1. At the top of the panel, your first choice is a layout option. Click the radio button for either Random Photo Layout or Choose Photo Layout. Below the radio button choices, you find a set of templates in a scrollable window.



**Figure 16-1:** The Panels Bin contains all the options you need to create a new project.

- ✓ **Auto-Fill with Project Bin Photos:** By default, this check box is selected, and the files you see in the Project Bin will be added to your project.
- ✓ **Include Captions:** Select this check box if you want the photo captions to appear on each page below their respective photos.
- ✓ **Number of Pages:** Elements automatically creates the number of pages to accommodate the number of photos you selected in the Organizer. Note that some creations require a minimum number of photos to produce a project. Photo Book, for example, requires a minimum of 18 pages.

After assembling your creation, click the Done button. Elements then adds the selected photos to the layout and the theme you specified in the panel. Be patient and wait for Elements to complete the task.

After a creation has been made, the document appears like any other image you open in Elements. You can crop, modify, and print images, and more. Using an Elements file, you choose File⇧Save to open the Save As dialog box. Type a name and click Save.

## Creating a Photo Book

Elements provides some fancy ways to create pages for a photo album. In the Photo Book creation panel, you have many different options for choosing page templates, adding artwork and type, printing your album pages, or sending the files to an online service for professional printing.

Follow these steps to create a Photo Book:

### 1. Select files in the Organizer and click the Create tab.

The procedure for all creations is the same. You first select files in the Organizer (or an editing mode) and then click the Create tab in the Panels Bin. Ideally, it's best to create an album, as we explain in Chapter 6, and click the album to display the album photos in the Organizer window. But remember, after you display an album in the Organizer, you still need to select all the photos.

To select all photos shown in an Organizer window, press Ctrl+A (Control+A on the Mac).

### 2. Click Photo Book in the Create panel.

Regardless of whether you're working in the Organizer or an editing mode, the Photo Book option is available in the same Create panel. The Create panel changes to the first of several panes that walk you through the steps to create a Photo Book. If you start in the Organizer, clicking Photo Book in the Create panel opens your selected photos in Full Edit mode.



### 3. Choose a photo for the title page.

The first photo in the Project Bin in Full Edit mode is the photo that's used for the title page in your Photo Book. To change the photo to a different image you want to use for the title page, drag the thumbnail image in the Project Bin to the first position.

### 4. Click Next and choose a layout.

### 5. Click Next in the Create panel to select a theme for your Photo Book.

The third pane in the Create panel provides options for choosing a theme and photo layout for your book pages. Select a theme from the scrollable list in the panel.

### 6. (Optional) Click the Include Captions check box.

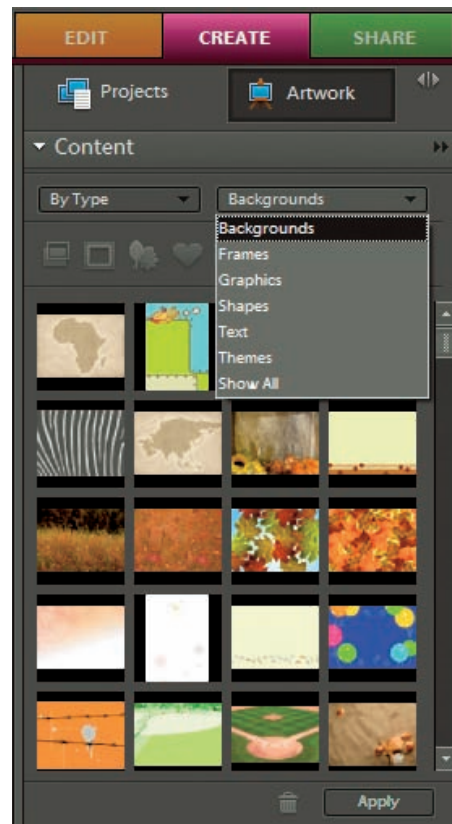
Follow this step only if you want photo captions to appear below your images.

### 7. Click Create.

Wait a few minutes while Elements lays out the page or pages. After the pages are created and the photos are added to your layout, the Projects panel changes to the Artwork panel, where you can choose from various options to add artwork to your pages, such as creating frames and drop shadows, adding text, adding clip art, and masking images with various stencils. In Figure 16-2, a drop-down menu shows various options for changing backgrounds; adding frames, graphics, shapes, and text; and changing themes. With each selection you make from the drop-down menu, the panel changes to display choices for the menu item selected.

### 8. (Optional) Add text to a page.

Choose Text from the drop-down menu, shown in Figure 16-2, and drag a text font and style to the page where you want to add text or click the Apply button in the panel. For example, you may want to add a caption to the title page. After dragging the text frame (or selecting text and clicking Apply) to the page, delete the default text and type new text.



**Figure 16-2:** In the Artwork panel, you can add art and text elements to your album pages.

**9. As with any other Elements file, choose File⇨Save to save the project.**

All the options in the Artwork panel are used in the same manner. For example, if you want to change the background artwork, choose Backgrounds from the menu shown in Figure 16-2. Click a background from the panel and drag the background to the page you want to edit. (Note that you can also select a background and click the Apply button.) When adding frames and shadows to your pictures, choose Frames from the menu and drag a frame to a picture on a page, or select a frame and click Apply.

Elements provides you with many different editing options for creating the design for your photo pages. Try to spend some time choosing different options in the Artwork panel and drag items (or select them and click Apply) to the pages to see how easy it is to change your Photo Book appearance.

After you create a Photo Book, you can print the album pages to your desktop printer or click the Order button in the Image window, where a book page appears. When you click Order, you can place an online order for a professionally printed book that will be mailed to you.



When you edit an image on a photo page, a bar with two icons appears above the image. The check mark icon is used to accept the edit you make. The circle with a diagonal line represents a Cancel button. Click the button to cancel your edits.

## Greetings!

Creating greeting cards follows the same steps as creating a Photo Book with similar panel options. As with your options for photo albums, you select a template and a theme.

Follow these steps to create your own, personal greeting cards:

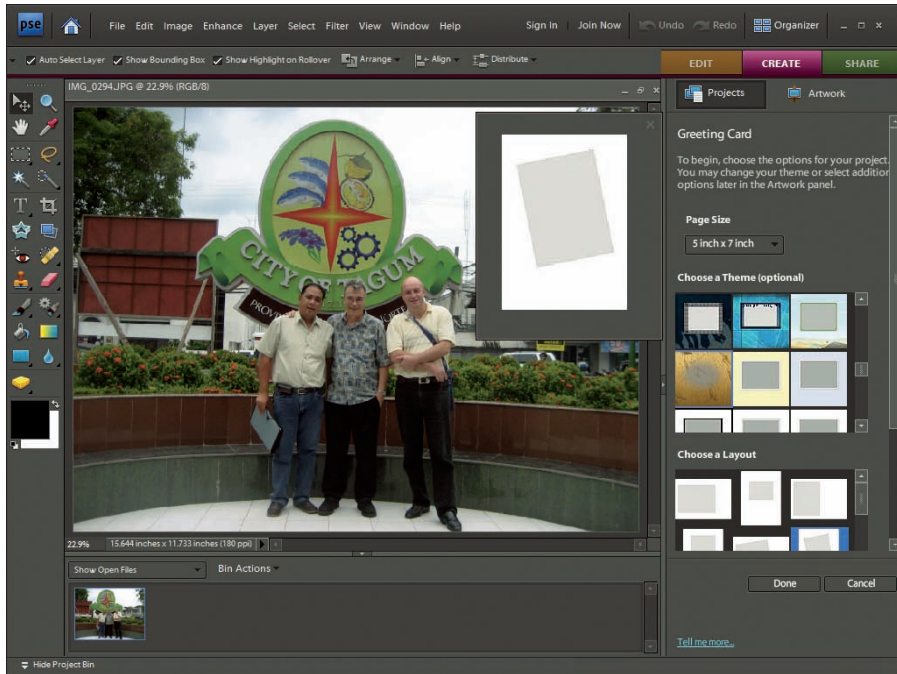
- 1. Open the Organizer and select a photo.**
- 2. Click More Options to open the More Options menu and click Greeting Card.**

Full Edit mode opens with the Create panel showing similar options to those available with Photo Book creations.

- 3. Select a theme and layout.**

Select a theme from the Choose a Theme scrollable window and select a layout from the Choose a Layout scrollable window, as shown in Figure 16-3.





**Figure 16-3:** Add a theme and layout.

#### 4. Click Done.

The photo shown in the Project Bin (the one you selected in the Organizer window in Step 1) is placed on a design you chose from the Choose a Theme and Choose a Layout options in Step 3. The design appears in a new Image window, where you can use all the editing tools.

#### 5. Add some type.

Click the Type tool and add some text to the card, as shown in Figure 16-4.

#### 6. Save the file.



**Figure 16-4:** Add some text to your greeting card.



When you create a project and add photos to your project pages, the photos are added as new layers. If you want to add text or make edits with the Tools panel, you can click the Edit tab and use the same tools on a project as you use in other editing sessions. In other words, you're not restricted to using just the text options you find in the Artwork panel if you want to add text in a different font and style.

## Creating CD and DVD Labels

Another creation option in Elements is the simple, easy way to create CD and DVD labels. From the Create panel, click More Options and choose a menu item for CD Jacket, DVD Jacket, or CD/DVD Label. From templates provided in the panel, Elements offers you an easy method for printing your own, personal labels and jackets for CDs and DVDs.



This feature for printing CD/DVD labels is a bit weak in Elements. You may need to fiddle around quite a bit to get the images to fit a label. Using some templates provided by the label developers is often a much better method for printing labels.

## Spreading the Love through Sharing

Several methods of sharing your creations are available in Elements. You can use the new Adobe-hosted Photoshop.com service, place print orders with third-party online services, or e-mail photo files to friends.

### Going online with photoshop.com



Adobe has now made it super convenient and easy for you to share your favorite images online with the new Photoshop.com service. Although it's available only in the United States right now, Adobe plans on eventually extending the service to other countries. In addition to photo sharing, Photoshop.com offers automated backup and synchronization of your files, which enables you to manage your photos and other media assets online from any Web browser.

### Creating a photoshop.com account

If you're a U.S. resident, you can sign up for a free account and share photos and videos via your own, personal Web page. You can set up an account from the Elements Welcome screen or from the Editor or Organizer.

Follow these steps to set up a photoshop.com account:

- 1. At the Elements Welcome screen, click the Join Now button on the Photoshop.com Membership panel, which appears on the left of the window.**

If you blew by the Welcome screen, you can also click the Join Now button in the top-right of either the Editor or Organizer window (Mac users need to use Adobe Bridge).

2. **Fill out the usual form fields — name, e-mail address, and password. Then enter your personal URL.**

This URL will be your personal Web address for displaying and sharing your photos and videos online.

3. **Click Create Account.**
4. **Choose a free Basic account, which gives you up to 5MB in storage, or a Plus account, which gives you additional storage options and other added features (for a fee). Click Done.**

An e-mail is sent to you.

5. **Reply to the e-mail to activate your account, and you're ready to go.**

### *Sharing a photo album online*

To share a photo album, you simply need to mark the album as Shared in Elements. Shared albums are then uploaded to your Photoshop.com account and displayed on your personal URL.

Follow these steps to share a photo album online:

1. **On the Organize panel, select an existing photo album name and then click the Share icon to the right of the album's name.**

To create a new online album, click the Online Album button on the Share panel. Or, you can click the Add icon on the Organize tab, select New Album, and then select Share To: Photoshop.com. Then click the Add Photos button (the plus sign [+] icon) in the gallery section and drag and drop your desired photos to the Add photos panel.

2. **Customize the title and subtitle, change your background color, and show any captions, if desired. Click Next.**
3. **In the Album Details panel, click Change Template to change your photo gallery template, if desired. Select Photoshop.com to share your photos online.**

You can also choose to export your photos to CD/DVD or an FTP site.

4. **Click Next.**
5. **Specify your sharing options, as shown in Figure 16-5.**

Choose whether to share your photos publicly or by invitation only via e-mail. For invites only, type your message and specify your invitees. Choose whether viewers can download or order prints of the photos.

6. **Click Share.**

Elements cranks away and then gives you a message that your album has been created and will be available after the upload is complete. A completed online photo album displayed on Photoshop.com is shown in Figure 16-6.

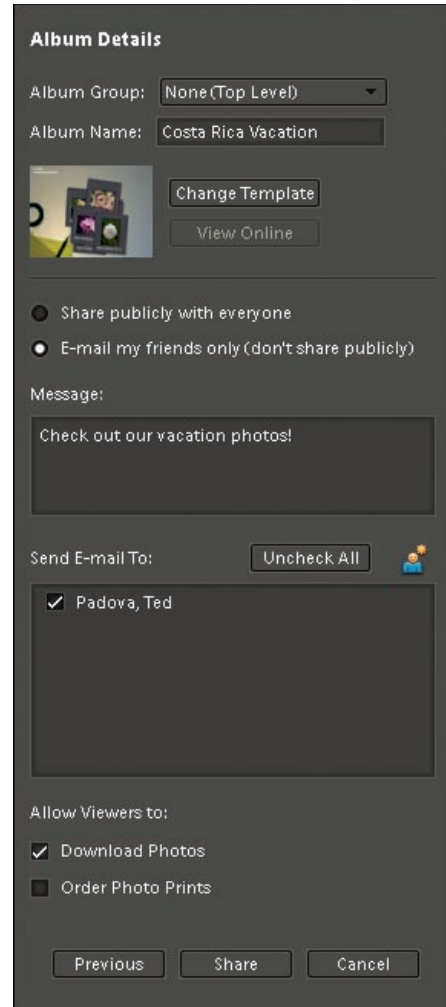
Here are a few other tidbits regarding online albums:

- ✓ Albums are listed on the Organize panel with an online album icon to the right of the name.
- ✓ To make changes to an album, right-click (Control-click on the Mac) the album name.
- ✓ To stop sharing an album, select the album in the Organize pane and click the Stop Sharing icon to the right of the name.
- ✓ When you add or delete images from your online album, Elements automatically updates your photo album online.
- ✓ Click the Web Gallery button on the Elements Welcome screen to be transported to Photoshop.com, where you can view online albums.

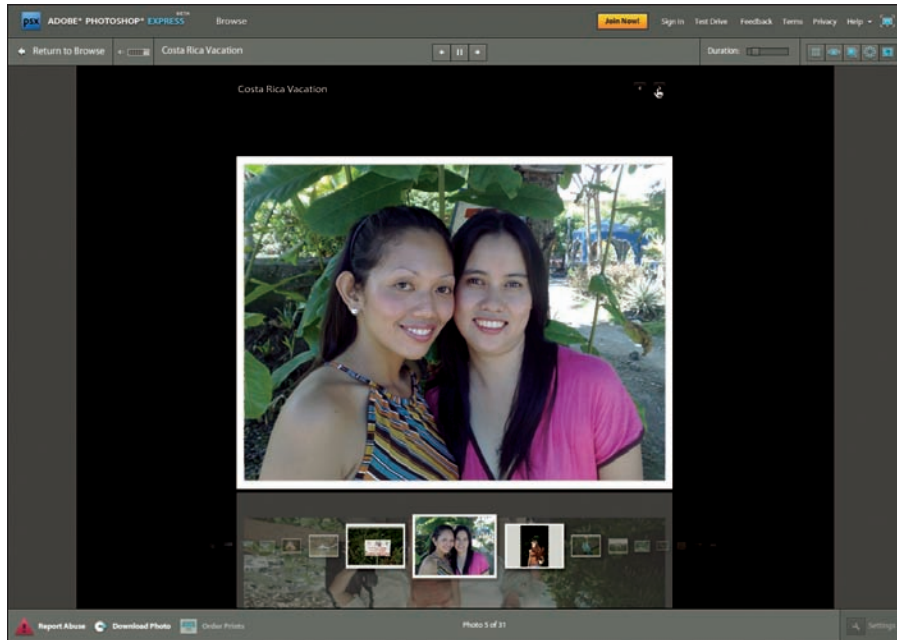
### *Backing up and synchronizing your files*

Photoshop.com enables you to back up and synchronize your files. Why would you want to back up and synchronize? First of all, it lets you access your photos and other media assets from any Web browser by using your Photoshop.com account, which you may find useful if you travel a lot or just like to be able to access your home images from work, or vice versa. Any changes you make — adding, deleting, reorganizing, or editing photos — are synchronized back to your Photoshop Elements desktop. If you edit your images, they don't overwrite your originals on your desktop, but instead create a version set, thereby giving you the option of using the original or the edited version.

Secondly, if your computer crashes and burns, you can restore your catalog to a new computer by logging onto your Photoshop.com account. Then simply choose **Edit** → **Preferences** → **Backup/Synchronization**, select the albums you want restored to your new computer by selecting the Sync check box next to each album, and click OK.



**Figure 16-5:** Share your photo album online.



**Figure 16-6:** View online albums.

Follow these steps to set up your Backup/Synchronization preferences:

- 1. Log on to your Photoshop.com account.**
- 2. On the Elements Welcome screen, click the Backup Settings button in the Photoshop.com Membership panel on the left.**

You can also choose Edit⇨Preferences⇨Backup/Synchronization in the Organizer (Adobe Bridge for Mac users).

- 3. In the Backup/Synchronization preferences panel, specify your options.**

For example, when deleting a file online, you may want Elements to ask whether you want to delete that file from your computer, instead of Elements deleting the file automatically.

- 4. Click OK.**

### *Getting help with Elements from photoshop.com*

Photoshop.com offers you a lot of help via tutorials that Adobe and other Elements users have uploaded. Click the Tutorials button on the Elements Welcome screen to launch the Adobe Inspiration browser, which delivers you to the Tutorials doorstep.

## Ordering prints online

Right from within your Photoshop Elements workspace, you can place orders for prints, Photo Books, and greeting cards, and then have your creations mailed to you and any number of friends and colleagues.

For online print orders, select the photos you want to order and click Order Prints in the Share panel.

The Kodak EasyShare Wizard opens, where you add the order and logon information, and then submit your order. The steps are straightforward and intuitive. In addition to having your prints mailed to you, you can also add other recipients in the Order Prints Wizard. Elements makes it easy to send photos to family members living across the country.

## E-mailing creations

After you put together a creation with the Creation Wizard, you can e-mail the creation to your friends, family, or whomever you want by choosing a simple menu command. (We introduce this method and other ways to share creations in the section “Getting a Grip on Assembling Creations,” earlier in this chapter.) Additionally, you can e-mail photos to mobile phones. The options are all located in the Share panel.

Rather than save your file from Elements and then open your e-mail client and select the photo to attach to an e-mail message, you can use Elements to easily share photos via e-mail with one click.

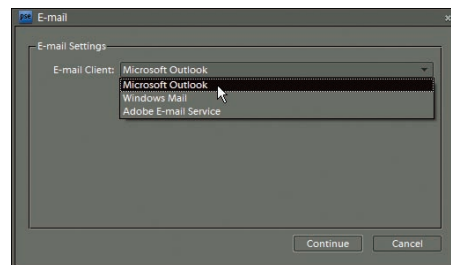
When you want to e-mail a creation, follow these steps:

- 1. In the Organizer, select the photos you want to e-mail to a friend.**
- 2. Open the Share panel and select E-mail Attachments.**

The first time you select E-mail Attachments, a dialog box opens, prompting you to select your e-mail client.

- 3. If you're using this feature for the first time, select your e-mail client in the dialog box and click Continue.**

You can use your own e-mail client, Windows Mail, or the Adobe E-Mail Service, as shown in Figure 16-7. If you select Adobe E-Mail Service, your creation e-mails are sent through Elements' built-in service, so Adobe serves as your e-mail client. If you select Adobe E-Mail Service, you need to log on to the service.



**Figure 16-7:** Select an e-mail service from which you want to send your creation.

Click Continue, and the panel changes to the view shown in Figure 16-8.

**4. In this panel, select the size and quality of your prints, and then click Next.**

**5. In the panel that appears, specify**

- *Message:* In an optional item, type the text that you want to appear in your e-mail message in the Message window.
- *Select Recipients:* You can add recipients by clicking the Edit Contacts button on the top-right side of the Select Recipients panel and adding names and e-mail addresses. Select the check box adjacent to the name of each recipient with whom you want to share your photos.
- *Save As Quick Share Flow:* The default is No. Leave the setting at the default if you want to just attach a file to an e-mail message. If you want to save the file configuration, you can choose Yes, and the file appears in the Quick Share panel at the bottom of the Share panel.

**6. Click Next.**

Your images are prepared according to the attributes specified in the Share panel. The files you selected are attached to a new e-mail message.

**7. Click the Send button in your e-mail client.**

The photos are e-mailed to the recipients you identified.

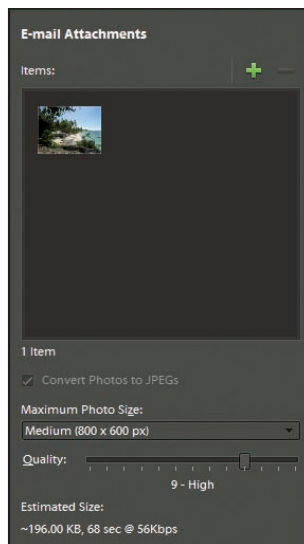


TIP

By default, Elements uses your primary e-mail client application, which may or may not be the e-mail program you use. You can change the default e-mail client by pressing Ctrl+K (Control+K on the Mac) to open the Preferences dialog box when you're in the Organizer and then clicking Sharing in the left pane. From a drop-down list in the Sharing preferences, select the e-mail client application that you want Elements to use.

## Using Photo Mail

Another form of e-mailing files to your friends and family is using the Photo Mail options in the Share panel. Click one or more photos in the Organizer window and open the Share panel. Click the Photo Mail button in the Share panel, and the panel changes to display the photos you selected in the



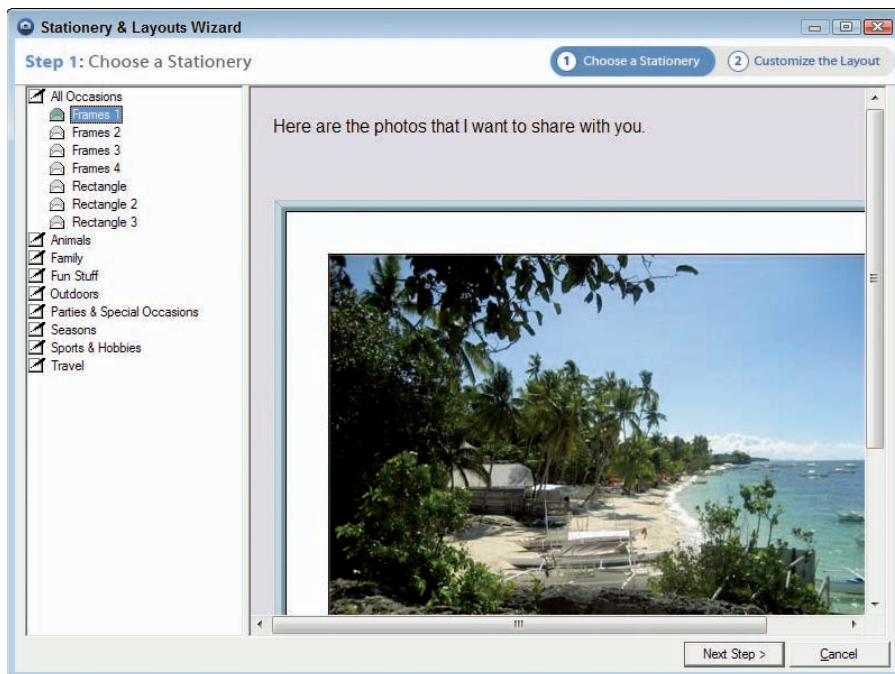
**Figure 16-8:** Click the Share panel and select E-Mail Attachments to open this panel.



Organizer. You can add photos by clicking the plus sign (+) icon or delete photos by selecting them in the panel and clicking the minus sign (-) icon.

Click the Next button, and you arrive at the second panel in Photo Mail. Add a message and select recipients much like you do when ordering online prints. Click Next, and you arrive at a pane in which you can add or edit a design template. Select from options in the left side of the pane and add elements you like to create a polished design.

When finished with your design, click Next Step, and you arrive at a pane in which you can change the layout and make selections for the font used in your design, as shown in Figure 16-9. Click Next, and the file is added as a new e-mail attachment. Open your default e-mail client and click Send/Receive.



**Figure 16-9:** Click Next in the final panel to add the file to a new e-mail message.



# Part VI

## The Part of Tens



## *In this part . . .*

**T**he Part of Tens offers a couple of fun chapters to help you take your photography and Elements skills a little further. In Chapter 17, you can find our top ten tips for composing better photos. Find out about the rule of thirds, framing, and other simple tricks that can make your photos look better than ever. Also, in Part V, we introduce the creations that Elements helps you make, but why stop there? Chapter 18 offers even more ideas for projects you can create for your home or work, such as flyers, posters, inventories, and more.



# Ten Tips for Composing Better Photos

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Finding a focal point and using the rule of thirds
- ▶ Cutting the clutter and framing your shot
- ▶ Employing contrast, leading lines, and viewpoints
- ▶ Using light and giving direction
- ▶ Considering direction of movement

A few things have to come together to make a great photograph. One is being in the right place at the right time. Another is the ability to tell a story. Yet another is excellent composition. Unfortunately, we can't help with your schedule or storytelling, but we can give you several easy tips on how to take photographs that are interesting and well composed. Some of these tips overlap and contain common concepts. But they're all free; they don't require any extra money or equipment. They require only an open mind and an eye that's willing to be trained over time.

## *Find a Focal Point*

One of the most important tools for properly composing a photo is establishing a *focal point* — a main point of interest. If too many elements are competing for attention, a photo probably doesn't have a clearly defined focal point. Your eye, therefore, doesn't know where to look. Too many images without a focal point cause the viewer to tire quickly or lose interest. The eye wants to be drawn to a subject.





Excessive background elements, such as furniture, walls, tables, fences, buildings, and even random bystanders, don't add much to the compositional or emotional value of your shot. What you really want to capture are the smiles and expressions of your family and friends.

Keep these tips in mind to help find your focal point:

- ✓ **Pick your subject and then get close to it.**
- ✓ **Include a point of interest in scenic shots.** Sunrises and sunsets are pretty, but after you've seen a few, you've seen them all. Try to capture an early morning fisherman casting his line off the pier or a child checking out a rogue hermit crab at dusk. That potentially ho-hum scenic shot now has some visual punch.
- ✓ **When it's appropriate, try to include an element in the foreground, middle ground, or background to add depth and a sense of scale.** Just make sure that it's a meaningful element and not random clutter, as shown in Figure 17-1.



Brand X Pictures

**Figure 17-1:** Including elements in the foreground adds depth to a photo.



## Use the Rule of Thirds

After you find a focal point for your shot, the next step is to try to put that focal point, or subject, in a prime location within your viewfinder or LCD display. Those prime locations are based on the photographic principle called the *rule of thirds*. If you divide an image into a grid of nine equal segments, as shown in Figure 17-2, the elements most appealing to the eye and most likely to be noticed first are those that fall close to one of the four intersections of the dividing lines.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 17-2:** Position your subject at one of the intersecting points on the rule-of-thirds grid.

When you're composing your shot, try to mentally divide your frame into vertical and horizontal thirds and position your most important visual element at any intersecting point. When you're shooting landscapes, remember that a low horizon creates a dreamy and spacious feeling and that a high horizon gives an earthy and intimate feeling. For close-up portraits, try putting the face or eyes of a person at one of those points.

If the rule of thirds is too hard for you to remember or employ, when you look through the viewfinder, just repeat the mantra "Move from center." We all have a natural tendency to want to center everything. Get it nice and orderly. But centered subjects are often static and boring. Asymmetry often gives you more dynamic and interesting images.



If you have an autofocus camera, you need to lock the focus when you're moving from center because the autofocus sensor locks onto whatever's in the center of the viewfinder — not on your point of interest. Autofocus can also be problematic when you're trying to do something as simple as photographing two people (in this case, you may want the two people in the center) and your camera keeps focusing on the space in the distance between them. Center your subject in the viewfinder and apply slight pressure to your shutter release button to lock the focus. Then, reposition your subject at an intersecting point on the rule-of-thirds grid and press down all the way to snap the photo.

## Cut the Clutter

Contrary to what you see on supermarket tabloid covers, those telephone poles, branches, car antennas, and other everyday objects don't naturally grow out of people's heads. Although these *mergers*, as photographers call



them, are good for a laugh, they're not good enough to make it into picture frames and scrapbooks.

Here are some ways you can cut the clutter from your background:

- ✔ **Get up close and personal.** Most people worry about getting their heads cut off when they get their photos taken. But more often than not, people tend to capture too much boring or distracting background. Fill your viewfinder frame with your subject. Although you can always crop your image later, you should try to get your subject to fill the frame when you take the photo.
- ✔ **Shoot at a different angle.** Yes, you can turn your camera! Most photos are horizontal merely because it's easier to hold the camera that way. That's fine for a lot of shots (such as the requisite group photo and some landscape shots), but other subjects (buildings, trees, waterfalls, mountain peaks, giraffes, Shaquille O'Neal) lend themselves to a vertical format.
- ✔ **Move around your subject.** Moving around may help eliminate unwanted clutter. Shoot from below or above your subject, if necessary.
- ✔ **Move your subject, if possible, to get the optimum background.** Although there are exceptions, an ideal background is usually free from distracting elements, such as tree branches, poles, wires, chain-link fences, signs, bright lights, a lot of loud colors, busy wallpaper, and so on. Include only what complements your subject.
- ✔ **Use background elements to enhance, not distract.** On the other hand, if your background is interesting and can make your photo stronger, include it. You can use famous landmarks, props, and even decorations in the background to give context to images, as shown in Figure 17-3.
- ✔ **Use space around a subject to evoke a certain mood.** A lot of space around a person can give a sense of loneliness, just as a closely cropped portrait can create a feeling of intimacy. Just make sure that the space is intentionally used in the shot.
- ✔ **If you're stuck with a distracting background, you can try blurring it by using a wider aperture (such as f/4, rather than f/11 or f/16) on your camera.** This makes the *depth of field* (areas of sharpness in relation to your focal point) shallower so that your subject is in focus but the background isn't.



**Figure 17-3:** Use background elements, such as decorations, to help define an event and add ambience to the subject



Because consumer digital cameras use image sensors that are typically one-third the size of a 35mm frame, the lens is very close to the sensor, which really increases the depth of field. This deep depth of field can make blurring the background difficult. Not a problem — you can also blur the background by making a selection and using the Blur filter in Elements. See Chapters 7 and 10 for more on selections and the Blur filter, respectively.

## Frame Your Shot

When it's appropriate, use foreground elements to frame your subject. Frames lead you into a photograph. You can use elements, such as tree branches, windows, archways, and doorways, to frame a wide or long shot, add a feeling of depth, and create a point of reference, as shown in Figure 17-4. You don't have to reserve the use of framing for wide and long shots, however. Close-ups can also be framed. Your framing elements don't always have to be sharply focused. Sometimes, if they're too sharp, they distract from the focal point. And, remember to avoid mergers!

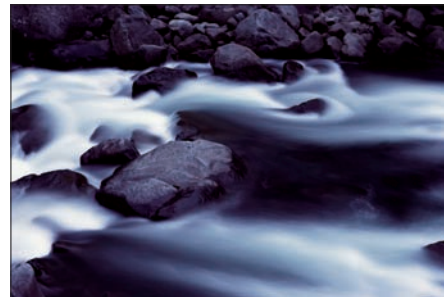


ImageState

**Figure 17-4:** Use elements that frame your subject.

## Employ Contrast

Just remember “Light on dark, dark on light.” A light subject has more impact and emphasis if it's shot against a dark background, and vice versa, as shown in Figure 17-5. When people view an image, their eyes go first to the area of the most contrast. Obviously, finding contrast in the environment is sometimes beyond your control. But when you're setting up a shot, you can certainly try to incorporate this technique. Keep in mind, however, that contrast needs to be used carefully. Sometimes, it can be distracting, especially if the high-contrast elements aren't your main point of interest.



PhotoDisc, Inc./Getty Images

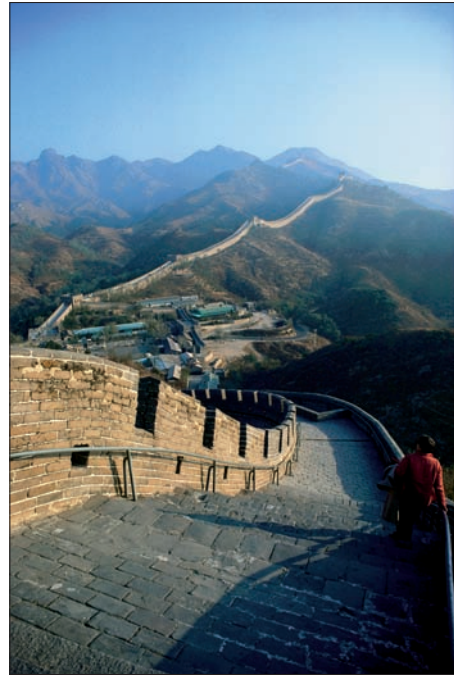
**Figure 17-5:** High-contrast shots demand attention.

## Use Leading Lines

*Leading lines* are lines that, by either the actual elements in the image or the composition of those elements, lead the eye into the picture and, hopefully, to a point of interest. These lines add dimension, depth, and perspective by carrying the eye through the photo:

- ✓ **Diagonal lines** are dynamic and evoke movement.
- ✓ **Curves** are graceful and harmonious.
- ✓ **Horizontal lines** are peaceful and give a feeling of balance.
- ✓ **Vertical lines** are direct and active.

The best leading lines are those that enter the image from the lower-left corner. Many elements provide natural leading lines, especially in scenic or landscape photos, such as roads, walls, fences, rivers, shadows, skyscrapers, and bridges. The photo shown in Figure 17-6 of the Great Wall of China is an example of curved leading lines.



*Flat Earth*

**Figure 17-6:** You don't have to trek to China to find leading lines, although you may not find a longer unbroken curve than the Great Wall.

## Experiment with Viewpoints

Not much in the world looks fascinating photographed from a height of 5 to 6 feet off the ground. Unfortunately, this is the viewpoint of “Snapshotville.” Try to break out of this mode by taking photos from another vantage point. Experiment with taking a photo from above the subject (*bird's-eye view*) or below it (*worm's-eye view*). A different angle may provide a more interesting image:

✔ **Unexpected angles can exaggerate the size of the subject.** The subject may appear either larger or smaller than normal, as shown in Figure 17-7. Try extreme angles with scenic shots, which otherwise can tend to be rather static or boring.

✔ **Changing your viewpoint can change the mood of the image.** If the photo in Figure 17-7 had been taken from a front angle, it would've been pretty dull. Taken from below, looking up, exaggerates the height and makes for a stronger and more exciting composition, making the cactus seem like nature's skyscraper.

✔ **Use direct eye contact when you're photographing people.** It provides a sense of realism and makes the image more intimate and warm, pulling you into the photo. But remember that children are not at the same eye level as adults. We often shoot down at them, making them appear smaller than they really are. Try kneeling or sitting on the floor and getting down to their level. You'll also find that you get a less distracting background in the frame, and the lighting from your flash more evenly covers the face. Do the same for pets and other short-stature subjects, such as flowers.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 17-7:** Shooting subjects from extreme angles can exaggerate size, resulting in a more interesting shot.

## Use Light

When we think of light in regard to photography, the first thing that comes to mind are all those photos we took in the past that are either *overexposed* (too light) or *underexposed* (too dark). With lighting, you have to consider not only whether you have the right amount of lighting but also these factors:

- ✔ The direction of the light
- ✔ The intensity of the light
- ✔ The color of the light

- ✓ Natural light (outdoors) or artificial light (indoors)
- ✓ Creative use of lighting to lead the eye and create a certain mood

If the light isn't right for your shot, you have quite a few choices: Hurry up and wait, move yourself, move the subject, add more light with a flash, or diffuse the light. Of course, which one you choose depends on the circumstances of the shot and what's convenient or most productive. Here are a few tips to remember about light:

- ✓ **The best light for photographs is in the early morning and later afternoon.** The light is warmer and softer, and the shadows are longer and less harsh.
- ✓ **Avoid taking portraits at midday.** The overhead sun causes ugly shadows and makes people squint. If you must shoot then, use a reflector to block some of the sunlight or fill in the shadow areas. Or, you can use a *scrim* (white translucent fabric stretched across a frame) to diffuse the light.
- ✓ **Cloudy or overcast days can be great for photographing, especially portraits.** The light is soft and diffused and flatters the face.
- ✓ **Shooting subjects with *backlighting* (where the lighting comes from behind the subject) can produce dramatic results.** Figure 17-8 shows an example. If you want to see the details of the subject, and not just a silhouette, use a fill flash to lighten the shadow areas.

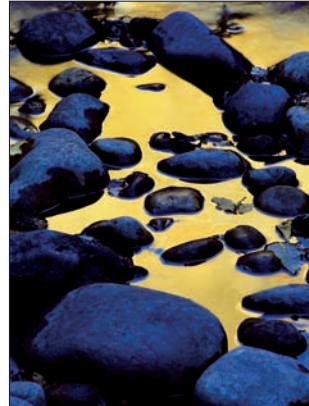


Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 17-8:** Backlighting can yield dramatic images.



- ✔ **Ensure that the brightest light source isn't directed right into the lens.** This causes *lens flare*, those strange light circles that appear in the photo.
- ✔ **Take into account the color of the light.** The light at noon is white, the light at sunset is orange, and the light at twilight is blue. The color of the light can make an image feel warm or cool.
- ✔ **Use a flash when necessary.** Use a flash in low-light conditions. If your built-in flash isn't cutting the mustard, you may want to invest in an accessory flash.
- ✔ **Get creative with light.** Look for those unique compositions created by the interplay between light and shadow areas, or how the light illuminates a particular subject. Lighting by itself can make or break a certain mood or emotion. Think of a simple beam of light coming through the roof of an old barn. Even in the lousiest weather, the most beautifully lit images can emerge. When wet objects are lit, they seem to shimmer, as shown in Figure 17-9.



Corbis Digital Stock

**Figure 17-9:** Lighting can create drama from the simplest objects.

## Give Direction

When you look at magazines that feature the year's best photos, they all appear as instances of pure serendipity. Sometimes that's the case, but more often than not, the photographer arranged the shot or waited for the right light or a special moment.

As a photographer, you also shouldn't be afraid to play photo stylist:

- ✔ **Give directions on where you want people to stand, how to stand, and so on.** For example, tell people to touch each other, bring their heads toward each other, or put their arms around each other, as shown in Figure 17-10.
- ✔ **Designate the location.**
- ✔ **Arrange people around props, such as trees or cars.**
- ✔ **Use a variety of poses.** Have some people sit and others stand.



IT Stock Free

**Figure 17-10:** Provide direction to the people you're photographing while also trying to capture their personalities.

- ✔ **If you're dealing with a large group of people, rambunctious kids, or excited pets, get someone to help direct.** Just make sure that the parties being photographed pay attention and look at the camera.
- ✔ **Try to get people to relax.** Although spontaneity can yield great images, you can still get good photos from posed subjects if they aren't hating the experience.

## Consider Direction of Movement

When the subject is capable of movement, such as a car, person, or animal, make sure that you leave more space in front of the subject than behind it, as shown in Figure 17-11. Otherwise, the viewer may subconsciously experience a feeling of departure or discomfort. You want to try to give the person or object room to move into the frame. Likewise, if a person is looking out onto a vista, make sure that you include that vista so that the person is given a point of view and the scene is given context.



*Brand X Pictures*

**Figure 17-11:** Always include room for your subject to move into the frame.



# Ten More Project Ideas

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Decorating your computer screen
- ▶ Advertising in flyers and online auctions
- ▶ Decorating your duds
- ▶ Going big with posters
- ▶ Creating a household inventory or project documentation
- ▶ Sprucing up your homework

So, you posted all your holiday and vacation photos in an online gallery and made enough photo books, slide shows, flipbooks, and greeting cards to keep your family and friends content for months to come? Sounds like you may be ready to take a crack at some other projects. In this chapter, you can find some ideas on how you can use your inventory of digital images to make your life more productive, more organized, and more fun. Remember that this chapter just scratches the surface. With a little imagination, before you know it, there won't be anything left in your life that doesn't include your photos.

## *Wallpaper and Screen Savers*

If you like an image so much that you want to gaze at it while you're toiling away at your computer, why not use that image for the background of your computer, better known as the *desktop wallpaper*? If you can't choose just one favorite image, you can use several to create a multi-image screen saver.



If you're serious about image editing, you really should have a neutral gray background. But as long as your wallpaper isn't showing while you do your color corrections, feel free to decorate your desktop with your favorite colorful photo. Follow these two easy steps to turn a photo into wallpaper:

1. **From the Organizer, select the photo you want to use.**
2. **Choose Edit⇨Set as Desktop Wallpaper.**

That's all there is to it! Your photo has now been transformed into desktop wallpaper.

If you have two or more photos you want to use, you can create a Windows Vista screen saver. Follow these steps:

1. **Select the desired photos from the Organizer.**
2. **Choose File⇨Export⇨As New File(s). In the Export New Files dialog box that appears, choose JPEG as the file type.**
3. **Select your photo size and choose a quality setting.**

We recommend using a size that matches the resolution setting you're using for your monitor. Use a quality setting of 12 for maximum quality.
4. **Click the Browse button.**
5. **Click the Make New Folder button, save the photos as JPEGs to that folder, and name the folder something appropriate, such as Screen Saver. Click OK.**
6. **Choose whether to use the Original Names of your files or a Common Base Name, such as screen 1, screen 2, and so on.**
7. **Click Export.**

If all goes well, Elements informs you that it has executed the command.
8. **Click OK.**
9. **In Windows Vista, choose Start⇨Control Panel.**
10. **Click Appearance and Personalization in the Control Panel window. Under Personalization, click Change Screen saver.**
11. **In the Screen Saver Settings window, choose Photos from the Screen Saver drop-down list. Click Settings.**
12. **In the Photos Screen Saver Settings window, select Use Pictures and Videos. Click Browse and navigate to the folder containing your desired images.**
13. **Click OK and Save.**
14. **Specify your other options, such as wait time, power settings, and so on.**
15. **Click Apply and then OK to close the window. Close the Control Panel window as well.**

## Flyers, Ads, and Online Auctions

Everyone knows that a picture is worth a thousand words. Whether you're selling puppies or advertising an open house, adding a photo to an ad or flyer really helps to drive home your message.

Here are the abbreviated steps to quickly create an ad or flyer:

- 1. In the Editor, in Full Edit mode, choose File⇨New⇨Blank File.**
- 2. In the New dialog box, enter your desired document specifications and then click OK.**

Note that you can choose a preset size, such as U.S. Paper, from the Preset drop-down menu.

We recommend entering the final dimensions and resolution for your desired output. If you want to print your ad or flyer on your desktop printer or at a service bureau, a good guideline for resolution is 300 pixels per inch (ppi). For more on resolution and sizing images, be sure to check out Chapter 3. Leave the color mode as RGB and the Background Contents as White.

If you want to fill your background with color, as we did in Figure 18-1, choose Edit⇨Fill Layer and choose Color from the Contents pop-up menu. Choose your desired color in the Color Picker and then click OK.

- 3. Open your photos and then drag and drop them onto your new canvas with the Move tool. Make sure to choose Window⇨Images⇨Cascade to view all your canvases at the same time.**

Your image is automatically put on a separate layer. For more on layers, see Chapter 8. If you want to use only a portion of the image, as we did with the puppy in Figure 18-1, use your favorite selection method to pluck out your element. For more on selections, see Chapter 7.

- 4. Select the Type tool, click the canvas, add your desired text, and then position your type with the Move tool.**



*PhotoDisc, Inc./Getty Images*

**Figure 18-1:** Quickly put together ads and flyers.

Note that your type will also reside on its own layer.

5. **When you're done, choose File⇨Save.**
6. **Name your file and choose Photoshop (.PSD) from the Format drop-down menu and make sure that the Layers and Color check boxes are selected.**

If you want to take your document to a service bureau or copy shop, such as FedEx Kinko's, you should save your document as a Photoshop PDF (.pdf) file. That way, you don't have to worry about fonts, compatibility issues, or printing snafus.

7. **If you want to save a copy of your ad or flyer in the Organizer, check the Include in Organizer option. In addition, select Layers, ICC Profile and Use Lower Case Extension options and click Save.**



If you're preparing photos for online auction sites, such as eBay or Yahoo! Auctions, be sure to keep your images at a low resolution — 72 ppi, to be exact — and at 100 percent scale. Save the file as a JPEG to ensure that your file stays lean and mean while preserving colors. Be sure to check the image specifications posted on your online auction site.

## *Clothes, Hats, and More*

Many local copy shops, retail stores, and Web sites (such as Zazzle.com or Cafepress.com) enable you to add photos to T-shirts, hats, buttons, tote bags, ties, mouse pads, and many other items. If you can produce it, they can put a photo on it. But it's easy, and less expensive, to tackle this project yourself.

Buy plain white T-shirts at your local discount store or plain aprons and tote bags at your craft or fabric store. Then, buy special transfer paper at your office supply or computer store. Print your photos on the transfer paper (be sure to flip the images horizontally first) and iron the print onto the fabric, and you've got yourself a personalized gift for very little cash.

What do you get for the person who has everything? How about a blanket of memories? You can transfer photos onto patches of fabric and create unique memory quilts. What grandmother wouldn't love to have a quilt with photos of her children and grandchildren?

## *Posters*

For special events, important announcements, or maybe just your favorite family photos, you can get posters and large-size prints at many copy shops and service bureaus. Call and talk to a knowledgeable rep at your copy shop or service bureau so that you know exactly how to prepare your file. Here are a few questions to ask:

- ✓ What file format and resolution should the file be?
- ✓ What print sizes do you offer?
- ✓ Do you provide mounting and lamination services? In addition to printing large prints, many service bureaus mount prints on foam core or the sturdier *gator board*. These service bureaus also can laminate prints to protect them from scratches and UV rays.

## Household and Business Inventories

Don't wait for a natural disaster or theft to get you motivated to prepare an inventory of your household or business assets. Take your digital camera and shoot pictures of your items. Double-click your selected image and add text to describe the items in the caption section of the Organizer. You can also select the image and choose Edit→Add Caption. Be sure to include makes, models, purchase dates, and dollar values of each piece.

Then create a single PDF document from those multiple files by creating a slide show (see Figure 18-2). Click the Create button in the top right of the Application window. Click the Slide Show button in the Create panel. Set your Slide Show Preferences and click OK. In the Slide Show Editor dialog box that appears, select Output. In the Slide Show Output dialog box that opens, select Save as File (on the far left) and select PDF File. Select your Slide Size (we recommend the largest size for inventories) and click OK. In the Save Slide Show as PDF dialog box that appears, name the file, navigate to your desired location, and click Save.

After the PDF is finished, you can upload the PDF file to a Web storage site, or burn a CD or DVD and place it off-site in a safety deposit box or other secure location. If the need arises, your insurance agent can view the PDF by using the free Adobe Reader software. For more on outputting to slide shows and writing to CD and DVD, see Chapter 15.



PhotoSpin

**Figure 18-2:** Create an inventory of your assets.

## Project Documentation

Nothing helps to document a process like images. The spoken word and the written word are great, but showing how something comes together is even more effective. Consider using your photographs to help document your projects from beginning to end. Whether it's a project involving home improvement, furniture building, crafts, or cooking, take photos at each stage

to record the project. If you're taking a class or workshop and the instructors don't mind, take your camera to class. Documenting the positions or steps of that new yoga, pottery, or gardening class can help you practice or re-create it on your own later, either for yourself or to explain to someone else.

Import your desired photos into the Organizer and create notes on each step of the project in the caption area. You can also create your text on the image itself by using the Type tool in the Editor. Output the images to a PDF (described in the preceding section), as shown in Figure 18-3.



Not into killing trees? Not to worry. You don't have to print every project you make. Any file you create can be left as a purely digital file and e-mailed to other users. For details on sharing files, see Chapter 16.

## School Reports and Projects

There's nothing like some interesting photos to jazz up the obligatory school report. Doing a botany report? Include some close-ups of a flower with text labels on the parts of the flower. Have to write a paper on the habits of the lemurs of Madagascar? Trek down to your local zoo and have a photo shoot. Create a simple collage of lemurs eating, sleeping, and doing the other things that lemurs do. You can use the Photo Collage command in the Create panel (see details about this command in Chapter 16). Or you can create your own custom collage by making selections in the Editor (see more in Chapter 7) and dragging and dropping them onto a blank canvas. In fact, buying your children their own inexpensive point-and-shoot cameras may give them a little more enthusiasm for school work.

## Wait — There's More

Before you start taking your photos to the next dimension, here are a few extra ideas: Make fun place cards for dinner party guests, create your own business cards if you need only a few, design your own gift wrap and tags, or label storage boxes with photos of their contents. The possibilities are endless.



*PhotoDisc, Inc./Getty Images*

**Figure 18-3:** Document your favorite projects for easier re-creation later.

# Index

## • Numerics •

1:1 zoom level, Options bar, 106  
3-D objects, digital camera advantages, 70  
8-bit images, 37–38  
16-bit images, 38  
24-bit images, 37–38  
32-bit images, 38

## • A •

accounts, Photoshop.com, 347–348  
Action Menu button, 103  
Actual Pixels button, 104  
Add Noise filter, 232  
Add Photos dialog box, 133–134  
Add Photos with Keyword Tag to Search Results command, 119  
Adjust Color for Skin Tone dialog box, 226  
Adjust Sharpness command, 236–237  
Adjust Smart Fix command, 192  
adjustment layers, 170, 174–176  
Adobe E-Mail Service, 351–352  
Adobe Partner Services pane, 34–35  
Adobe PDF, 61–62  
Adobe Photoshop Services, 327–328  
Adobe Reader, PDF files, 28, 61–62  
Adobe RGB (1998) color models, 40–41  
ads, 369–370  
After view, 22–23  
Airbrush mode, 278  
Album Details pane, 338  
Album Group, 125–127  
albums, 34, 122–127, 337–339, 348–349  
Albums panel, 123–127  
alignments, text, 301  
Alt (Option) key, 141–142  
anchor points, Point type mode, 297  
And Higher view, 123  
And Lower view, 123  
angles, 279, 360, 363  
anti-alias, 284, 300  
Anti-Alias button, marquee selections, 142  
apertures, 360  
Apple, PICT (Picture) file format, 62  
areas, Impressionist Brush tool, 281  
Arrange command, Layers menu, 172

artifacts, removing, 232–233  
Attach Keyword Tag to Selected Items command, 119  
attachments, 60–61, 119  
audio file formats, 66  
audio, slide show addition, 333  
Auto Color Correction command, 193  
Auto Contrast command, 192–193  
Auto Levels command, 192  
Auto Red Eye Fix command, 194  
Auto Sharpen command, 194  
Auto Smart Fix command, 191–192  
Auto-Fill, projects, 343  
Automatically Suggest Photo Stacks command, Organizer, 128  
AutoPlay Wizard, 72–73  
Average filter, 234

## • B •

Background Brush tool, 162  
background clutter, avoiding, 359–361  
background colors, 162, 271–272, 274–275  
Background Eraser tool, 159–160  
Background icons command, 164–165  
backgrounds, layer conversion, 168–169  
backlighting, subject framing, 364  
Backup Catalog to CD/DVD or Hard Drive Wizard, 135–136  
Backup/Synchronization pane, 35  
backups, 35, 135–136, 349–350  
Before view, 22–23  
Bevels style, 256–257  
Bin Actions menu, 25  
bit depth, 37–38, 86, 91  
Bitmap (.BMP/.RLE./DIB) file format, 51, 59  
Bitmap dialog box, 52  
Bitmap mode, 51–52  
black-and-white images, 51–55, 198–199  
blend modes, 171, 258–263  
Blur filter, 234  
Blur More filter, 234  
Blur tool, 207–208  
blurs, 233–235  
borders, 165, 283, 296, 303–305  
bounding box, 298–299  
brightness, 86, 90–91, 312  
Brightness/Contrast command, 216



Bring Image to Foreground command, 108  
 Brush tool, 272, 278–280  
 Burn tool, 204–205  
 Burn/Backup Wizard, 135–136  
 burning, CDs/DVDs, 336–337  
 business cards, 372  
 business inventory, 371



calendars, Organizer Date view, 97  
 Camera or Card Reader pane, 34  
 Camera Raw, 71–72, 85–91  
 Canon printers, 324–325  
 captions, 111, 112, 130–131, 343–344  
 card readers, Organizer preferences, 34  
 cascade view, 107  
 Catalog Manager dialog box, 120–121  
 catalogs, 120–122, 135–136  
 CD/DVD labels, 347  
 CDs, 135–136, 336–337  
 cell phones, importing files, 81–82  
 Change Keyword Tag to a Sub-Category command, 119  
 Change Layer Content command, 172  
 circles, selections, 141–142  
 clarity filters, 232–233  
 Clipboard, emptying contents, 181  
 clipping, Camera Raw, 88  
 Clone Stamp tool, 199–200  
 Close button, 13–14  
 clothes, project idea, 370  
 CMYK (process color) mode, 50  
 collages, marquee selections, 142  
 Collapse All Keyword Tags command, 118  
 Collapse Items in Version Set command, 130  
 Collapse Photos in Stack command, 128  
 Collections panel, 111  
 collections. *See* keyword tags  
 Color blend mode, layers, 262–263  
 Color Burn blend mode, 259  
 color channels, 36–37, 224–225  
 color corrections, print preparation, 312  
 Color Curves command, 224  
 Color Dodge blend mode, 259–260  
 color mappers, 230–232  
 color modes, 50–56  
 Color Picker, 272–273, 288  
 color profiles  
   custom profile, 322–323  
   Epson inkjet printer, 315–321  
   HP inkjet printer, 323–324  
   no color management, 313  
   Photoshop Elements managed, 313  
   printer managed, 312–313  
   printer profile conversion, 313–315  
   printer profile selection, 321–322

Color Replacement tool, 210–212  
 Color Settings dialog box, 40–41  
 Color Swatches folder, 274  
 Color Swatches panel, 18, 273–274  
 color swatches, 271–272  
 color temperatures, 86, 90, 229–230  
 color tints, Camera Raw, 86, 90  
 Color Variations command, 227–229  
 colorcasts, 192–193, 319–320  
 colors  
   Adobe RGB (1998) mode, 40–41  
   Auto Color Correction, 193  
   background, 271–272  
   bit depth, 37–38  
   color channels, 36–37  
   Color Picker, 272–273  
   Color Replacement tool, 210–212  
   Color Swatches panel, 18, 273–274  
   colorcast removal, 219–220  
   custom gradients, 286–288  
   deleting color swatches, 274  
   Eyedropper tool, 274–275  
   fill layers, 176–177  
   fill techniques, 281–283  
   foreground, 271–272  
   hue/saturation adjustments, 220–221  
   ICC (International Color Consortium) Profile, 57  
   Levels command adjustments, 216–219  
   loading color swatches, 274  
   Magic Extractor, 161–162  
   mapping, 230–232  
   multicolored gradients, 284–288  
   numeric values, 272, 275–276  
   output device matching, 38–40  
   pixels, 36, 43–44  
   preset, 274  
   preset gradients, 284–286  
   removing, 222  
   resolutions, 44–46  
   saving color swatches, 274  
   selection borders, 283  
   shape editing, 294  
   Sponge tool, 209–210  
   sRGB mode, 40–41  
   switching, 222–223  
   text, 301  
   type stylizing, 306–308  
   workspace configuration, 40–41  
 ColorVision Spyder2express, 39  
 commands. *See individual command*  
 commercial printers, 50, 62  
 Complex style, 256  
 composite images, 263–269  
 composition, 357–366  
 compression, 60–61, 63–64  
 CompuServe GIF (.GIF) file format, 59  
 Constrain Proportions, 48

context menus, 12, 25  
 Contract/Expand commands, 164  
 contrast  
   Auto Color Correction, 193  
   Auto Contrast, 192–193  
   Auto Levels, 192  
   black-and-white images, 198–199  
   composition element, 361  
   Levels command adjustments, 216–219  
   lighting adjustments, 216  
 Convert to Black and White command, 222  
 Convert to Black and White dialog box, 55  
 Convert Version Set to Individual Items  
   command, 130  
 Cookie Cutter tool, 156–158  
 Copy command, 179–180  
 Copy Merged command, 179  
 Correct Camera Distortion filter, 251–253  
 Costco, file preparation, 313–315  
 Create Album Group dialog box, 126–127  
 Create button, 20–21, 23  
 Create Keyword Tag dialog box, 116–117  
 Create mode, 11  
 Create panel, 329–336, 339–340, 342–347  
 Create tool, Organizer preferences, 34  
 Creation Wizard, 351–352  
 Crop tool, 22, 86–87, 187–189  
 CRT monitors, 39–40  
 Current Tool command, 15  
 cursors, 32  
 curves, 362  
 Custom tool, 291–292, 294



Darken blend mode, 258–259  
 Darker Color blend mode, 259  
 Date View pane, 34  
 Date view, Organizer, 97  
 dates, 34, 109–111  
 Defringe command, 227  
 Delete button, 103  
 Delete Hidden Layers command, 172  
 Delete Keyword Tag command, 119  
 Delete Linked Layers command, 172  
 depth of field, 360  
 Deselect All Layers command, 173  
 Deselect command, 163  
 desktop wallpaper, 367–368  
 Despeckle filter, 232  
 Detail icons, Camera Raw, 86, 88  
 Detail Smart Brush tool, 237, 239–240  
 diagonal lines, 362  
 Difference blend mode, 262  
 digital cameras  
   32-bit images, 38  
   background clutter, 360–361

Camera Raw format, 84–94  
 Correct Camera Distortion filter, 251–253  
 flash, 365  
 image resolutions, 49  
 JPEG versus Camera Raw formats, 71–72  
 lens flare, 365  
 Organizer preferences, 34  
 resizing images, 75–76  
   versus film cameras/scanners, 70–71  
 direction of movement, 366  
 directions, subject instructions, 365–366  
 Display & Cursors pane, 32  
 Display menu, 109–110  
 display, program preferences, 32  
 Dissolve blend mode, layers, 258  
 distortions, 249–253, 301, 308  
 distractions, background clutter, 360  
 Divide Scanned Photos command, 80, 190–191  
 Document Dimensions command, 14  
 document feeders, 71  
 Document Profile command, 14  
 Document Size area, 47  
 Document Sizes command, 14  
 documentation, project idea, 371–372  
 documents, 82–84. *See also* files; images  
 Dodge tool, 204–205  
 downsampling, images, 46–49  
 drawing tablets, Brush tool settings, 278  
 drawings, 276–277, 290–294  
 Drop Shadows style, 256–257  
 Dry Creek Photo, 313–315  
 Duplicate Layers command, 53–55  
 Dust & Scratches filter, 232–233  
 dust, removing, 232–233  
 DVDs, 135–136, 336–337



Edge Contrast percentages, 147  
 Edit button, Shortcuts bar, 20–21  
 Edit Keyword Tag command, 119  
 Edit Keyword tag dialog box, 117  
 Edit menu, 15  
 Editing pane, 34  
 effects, 253–257, 332–333  
 Efficiency command, 15  
 Ellipse tool, 291–293  
 Elliptical Marquee tool, 140–141  
 E-mail Attachments, 351–352  
 e-mail, 34, 60–61, 351–353  
 Encapsulated PostScript, 59–60  
 Enhance menu, 16  
 Epson inkjet printers, 315–323  
 Equalize command, 230–231  
 Eraser tool, 158–160, 272  
 Exclude Photos with Keyword Tag from Search  
   Results command, 119

- Exclusion blend mode, 262
  - Exit button, 103
  - Expand All Keyword Tags command, 118
  - Expand Items in Version Set command, 130
  - Expand Photos in Stack command, 128
  - Explorer pane, 110
  - Export New Files dialog box, 132–134
  - Export Selected Items dialog box, 131–134
  - exposures, Camera Raw, 90–91
  - eXtensible Markup Language (XML) files, 118, 127
  - Extras pane, 332
  - eye contact, 363
  - Eyedropper tool, 86–87, 274–275
- F ●**
- faces, 113, 267–268
  - Fade, Brush tool dynamics, 278
  - Faded Photo effect, 254
  - faux bold, 300
  - faux italic, 301
  - favorites rankings, 104
  - Feather button, 142–143
  - Feather command, 164
  - feathering, selections, 164
  - file extensions, 57–58
  - file formats. *See also individual formats*
    - audio, 66
    - editing, 131–134
    - layers, 184
    - reference, 64–65
  - File menu, file navigation, 15
  - filenames, editing, 131–134
  - files. *See also documents; images*
    - adding pages, 83–84
    - adding to the Organizer when saving, 57
    - backing up, 136
    - e-mail sharing preferences, 34
    - hiding/displaying, 127
    - importing into Organizer, 80–81
    - lowercase/uppercase extensions, 57–58
    - online printing services, 327–328
    - online services, 81
    - opening in Full Edit mode, 11–13
    - Organizer preferences, 34
    - PDF (Portable Document Format), 28
    - photo service preparation, 313–315
    - Photoshop.com backups, 349–350
    - print service submission, 326–327
    - program preferences, 31
    - renaming, 135
    - reverting to last saved version, 26
    - saving a version set w/original, 57
    - saving albums, 127
    - saving keyword tags, 118
    - saving selections, 166
    - saving with a thumbnail, 57
    - untagged item search, 111
  - Files pane, Organizer preferences, 34
  - Fill Layer dialog box, 282–283
  - fill layers, 172, 176–177
  - fills, 284–286, 289
  - film cameras, versus digital cameras, 70–71
  - Filter Gallery, 247–248
  - Filter menu, 16
  - filters
    - Add Noise, 232
    - application methods, 244–245
    - Average, 234
    - Blur, 234
    - Blur More, 234
    - blurs, 233–235
    - clarity adjustments, 232–233
    - Correct Camera Distortion, 251–253
    - corrective versus destructive, 245
    - Despeckle, 232
    - Dust & Scratches, 233–233
    - fading, 245–246
    - Filter Gallery, 247–248
    - Gaussian Blur, 234–235
    - Liquify, 249–251
    - Median, 233
    - Motion Blur, 234
    - one-step versus multistep, 245
    - photo, 229–230
    - Radial Blur, 234
    - Reduce Noise, 233
    - selection application, 246–247
    - Smart Blur, 234
    - type stylizing, 306
  - Find by Caption or Note dialog box, 112
  - Find by Details (Metadata) dialog box, 112
  - Find menu, by date search, 110–111
  - Fit in Window button, 104
  - Fit Screen button, Options bar, 106
  - flash, low-light conditions, 365
  - Flatten Stack command, 128
  - Flatten Version Set command, 130
  - flipbooks, 339–340
  - flyers, 369–370
  - focal points, 357–358
  - focus, 194, 208–209, 235–237
  - Folder Location, 34, 96, 110
  - folders, 34
  - font family, 299
  - font size, 300
  - font styles, 300

Foreground Brush tool, 161–162  
 foreground colors  
   Color Replacement tool, 210–212  
   Eyedropper tool sampling, 275  
   Magic Extractor, 161–162  
   Tools panel display, 271–272  
 Frame effect, 253–254  
 framing, 361  
 freeform shapes, 144–149  
 Frequency values, 147  
 From File command, 118  
 Full button, 20–21  
 Full Edit mode, 11–13, 21–23, 244  
 Full Screen view, 99–104  
 Full Screen View button, 103  
 Full Screen View Options dialog box, 100–102

## • G •

gamma, image midlevel tones, 39  
 Gaussian Blur filter, 234–235  
 General Fixes panel, 23  
 General pane, 30–31, 34  
 Get Photos from Files and Folders dialog box, 94–95, 121  
 gift wrap, project idea, 372  
 Glossary of Terms command, 27  
 Gradient Editor, 286–288  
 Gradient Map command, 231  
 Gradient panel, 284–286  
 Gradient Picker, 285  
 Gradient tool, 272, 284–288, 307–308  
 gradients  
   custom creation, 286–288  
   fill layers, 176–177  
   preset, 284–286  
   saving, 288  
   type stylizing, 306–308  
 graphic designers, 63–64  
 graphics, slide show addition, 332  
 Grayscale color mode, 52–55  
 Grayscale command, 52  
 grayscale images, scanning, 78  
 Greeting Cards, 345–346  
 GreTag MacBeth Eye-One Display 2. *See* X-Rite Eye-One Display 2  
 Grid pane, program preferences, 32  
 grids, program preferences, 32  
 group shots, composite images, 266–267  
 Groups with Previous command, 172  
 Grow command, selections, 165–166  
 Guided button, 20–21  
 Guided mode, 216, 226

## • H •

Hand tool, 22, 86–87, 108, 165  
 hard drives, scratch disk settings, 31  
 Hard Light blend mode, 260–261  
 Hard Mix blend mode, 261  
 Hardness, Brush tool dynamics, 278  
 hats, project idea, 370  
 hazy images, 192–193  
 Healing Brush tool, 201–203  
 height dimension, 47  
 Height text box, 143–144  
 Help menu, 16, 27  
 Help system, 28, 34–35  
 hexadecimal values, colors, 272, 275–276  
 hidden files, Organizer, 127  
 Hide Project Bin text, 25  
 high bit depths, scanners, 78  
 Highlight button, Camera Raw, 86, 88  
 highlights  
   Auto Smart Fix, 191–192  
   Camera Raw, 88  
   Color Curves command, 224–225  
   lighting adjustments, 214–215  
 histograms, Camera Raw, 86, 88  
 history states, 26  
 history, image search, 112  
 holiday dates, 34  
 horizontal lines, 362  
 hot spots, 159  
 house icon, 11  
 household inventory, 371  
 HP inkjet printers, 323–324  
 Hue blend mode, 262–263  
 Hue Jitter, 278  
 Hue/Saturation command, 220–221  
 Hue/Saturation dialog box, 53–55  
 Hybrid maps, 99

## • I •

Ignore Palettes check box, 106  
 image corrections  
   Adjust Sharpness command, 236–237  
   Adjust Smart Fix, 192  
   Auto Color Correction, 193  
   Auto Contrast, 192–193  
   Auto Levels, 192  
   Auto Red Eye Fix, 194  
   Auto Sharpen, 194  
   Auto Smart Fix, 191–192  
   blur filters, 233–235  
   Blur tool, 207–208

- image corrections (*continued*)
  - Brightness/Contrast command, 216
  - Burn tool, 204–205
  - clarity filters, 232–233
  - Clone Stamp tool, 199–200
  - color adjustments, 219–232
  - Color Curves command, 224
  - color mapping, 230–232
  - Color Replacement tool, 210–212
  - Color Variations command, 227–229
  - Correct Camera Distortion filter, 251–253
  - Defringe command, 227
  - defringing layers, 227
  - Detail Smart Brush tool, 237, 239–240
  - Dodge tool, 204–205
  - focus, 235–237
  - Healing Brush tool, 201–203
  - Hue/Saturation command, 220–221
  - Levels command, 216–219
  - lighting adjustments, 214–219
  - Photo Filter command, 229–230
  - photo filters, 229–230
  - Quick Fix, 195–199
  - Red Eye Removal tool, 194–195
  - Remove Color Cast command, 219–220
  - Remove Color command, 222
  - Replace Color command, 222–223
  - Shadows/Highlights command, 214–215
  - Sharpen tool, 208–209
  - skin tones, 224–226
  - Smart Brush tool, 237–239
  - Smudge tool, 206–207
  - Sponge tool, 209–310
  - Spot Healing Brush tool, 203–204
  - Unsharp Mask command, 235–236
- image editing, 35–36, 46–49, 195–199
- image editors, 34
- image layers, 173
- Image menu, 15
- Image Size dialog box, 46–48, 76
- image windows. *See also* workspaces
  - bringing an image to foreground, 108
  - cascading images, 107
  - Close button, 13–14
  - closing, 14
  - Full Edit mode, 21–23
  - image panning, 108
  - Information box, 13–15
  - Magnification box, 13
  - matching location, 107
  - matching zoom level, 107
  - Maximize button, 13–14
  - Maximize mode, 107
  - menu bar, 15–16
  - Minimize button, 13–14
  - multiple document views, 106–108
  - Navigator panel, 108–109
  - opening an existing file, 12–13
  - opening multiple, 13
  - Options bar zoom tools, 106
  - Project Bin, 12–13, 23–25
  - Quick Edit mode, 21–23
  - scroll bars, 13
  - Shortcuts bar, 20–21
  - Size box, 13–14
  - switching between editing modes, 21–23
  - tiling images, 107
  - Title bar display, 13–14
  - Tools panel, 17–20
  - zooming in/out, 104–106
  - zooming to a selection, 105
- images. *See also* documents; files
  - AutoPlay Wizard import, 72–73
  - backing up, 136
  - Before/After views, 22–23
  - by captions search, 111–112
  - by date search, 110–111
  - by faces search, 113
  - by notes search, 111–112
  - Camera Raw format, 85–91
  - captions, 130–131
  - cell phones, 81–82
  - composite, 263–269
  - creating, 82–84
  - cropping, 187–189
  - custom pattern creation, 290
  - dimension/resolution relationships, 46
  - dividing scanned, 190–191
  - e-mail selections, 351
  - Eyedropper tool color sampling, 275
  - flattening, 184–185
  - gamma, 39
  - Greeting Card selections, 345
  - ICC (International Color Consortium) Profile
    - embedding, 57
  - importing to a catalog, 121
  - keyword tags, 116–120
  - merging layers, 184, 186
  - metadata search, 112
  - notes, 130–131
  - one pass multiple image scan, 79–80
  - online photo album selections, 337–338
  - online services, 81
  - ordering prints online, 351
  - Organizer thumbnail addition, 94–95
  - panning, 108
  - Photo Book selections, 343
  - Photo Downloader import, 74–75
  - print preparations, 312
  - quality editing, 131–134
  - raster, 44
  - ratings, 122–123

- resampling, 46–49
- resizing, 46–48
- resizing after importing, 75–76
- resolutions, 44–46
- reverting to last saved file, 26
- saving a file with a thumbnail, 57
- scanner requirements, 77–78
- setting as desktop wallpaper, 368
- slide shows, 99–104, 331
- sorting, 109–110
- stacking, 127–129
- status bar information display, 14
- straightening, 189–190
- version sets, 129–130
- Yahoo! Maps, 97–99
- Import Batch date, 109
- Import Batch view, 95
- Impressionist Brush tool, 280–281
- Indexed Color dialog box, 56
- Indexed Color mode, 55–56
- Information box, 13–15
- Inner Glows style, 256
- Inner Shadows style, 256–257
- installation CD, PDF files, 28
- International Color Consortium (ICC)
  - Profile, 57
- Invert command, 231
- inverters, blend modes, 261–262

## • J •

- jackets, CD/DVD, 347
- Joint Photographic Experts Group (.JPEG/.JPG/.JPE) format, 60–61, 71–72
- JPEG 2000 (.JPF/.JPX/.JP2/.J2K/.JPC) file format, 61

## • K •

- keyboard shortcuts, 17–18
- Keyword Tags and Albums pane, 34
- Keyword Tags panel, 118–119
- keyword tags, 116–119
- Kodak EasyShare Wizard, 351
- Kodak EasyShare, 327–328
- Kodak, importing files, 81

## • L •

- labels, CD/DVD, 347
- Lasso tools, 144–149
- layer masks, 174–176
- Layer menu, 16

- Layer Style command, 172
- layer styles, 255–257
- Layer via Copy command, 180
- Layer via Cut command, 180
- layers
  - adjustment, 174–176
  - Color blend mode, 262–263
  - color fills, 282–283
  - content editing, 172
  - converting between types, 172
  - copying, 179–180
  - creating, 179–180
  - defringing, 227
  - deleting layers, 172
  - Dissolve blend mode, 248
  - dragging/dropping, 181
  - duplicating, 180–181
  - fill, 176–177
  - flattening, 173, 184–185
  - Hue blend mode, 262–263
  - image, 173–174
  - image combining, 167–168
  - Luminosity blend mode, 263
  - merging, 173, 184, 186
  - moving contents, 182–183
  - Paint Bucket tool, 284
  - pasting into a selection, 181–182
  - renaming, 172
  - RGB to Grayscale conversion, 53–54
  - Saturation blend mode, 262–263
  - selecting/deselecting all, 173
  - shape, 172, 177–178
  - similar type selections, 173
  - simplifying type, 302–303
  - stacking order, 172
  - supported file formats, 184
  - transforming, 183–184
  - type, 178
- Layers menu, 172–173, 179–180, 185
- Layers panel, 168–171, 185
- layouts, 342, 344–346
- LCD monitors, 39–40
- leading lines, 362
- leading, type spacing, 301
- legacy files, 61
- lens flare, 365
- Levels command, 216–219
- libraries
  - preset color swatches, 274
  - preset gradients, 284–286
  - Preset Manager settings, 35–36
  - saving custom gradients, 288
  - saving/loading a custom brush, 279–280
- Lighten blend mode, 259–260
- Lighter Color blend mode, 260



## lighting

- adjustments, 214–219
- Auto Smart Fix, 191–192
- blend modes, 260–261
- composition element, 363–365
- line art, scanned images, 78
- Line tool, shape drawing, 291–292, 294
- Linear Burn blend mode, 259
- Linear Dodge blend mode, 260
- Linear Light blend mode, 260–261
- linked layers, deleting, 172
- links, layers, 171
- Liquify filter, distortions, 249–251
- locks, layers, 171
- lossless compression, 61
- lowercase letters, 57–58
- Luminosity blend mode, 263
- LZW compression, 64

## • M •

- Magic Eraser tool, 160
- Magic Extractor dialog box, 160–162
- Magic Selection Brush, 22
- Magic Wand tool, 149–151
- Magnetic Lasso tool, 147–149
- magnification box, 13
- Make a CD/DVD dialog box, 136
- Map panel, Yahoo! Maps display, 97–99
- mapping, 192, 230–232
- Marquee tools, 140–144
- marquees, 140
- Match Location command, 107
- Match Zoom command, 107
- Maximize button, 14
- Maximize mode, 107
- measurement units, 32, 144
- media
  - AutoPlay Wizard import, 72–73
  - importing files into Organizer, 80–81
  - Photo Downloader import, 74–75
  - slide show addition, 333
  - sorting, 110
- media cards, 34
- media files, 121
- Median filter, 233
- memory, 26, 31
- menu bar, 15–16
- menus, 15–17
- Merge and Flatten command, 173
- mergers, background clutter, 359–361
- metadata, 112
- midtone, 224–225
- Minimize button, 14
- Mode button, 143–144

## Modify menu, 165

- moiré patterns, 234
- monitors
  - color profiles, 41
  - output color matching, 38–40
  - resolutions, 44–46, 49–50
- Monotone Color effect, 254
- Motion Blur filter, 234
- motion blurs, 306–307
- Move tool, 182–183, 294
- movie files, 333, 335
- MP3 file format, 66
- Multiply blend mode, 259
- music, importing into catalogs, 121

## • N •

- narration, 333
- Navigator panel, 108–109
- New Catalog dialog box, 121
- New Category command, 118
- New dialog box, 82–83
- New Keyword Tag command, 118
- New Search Using Keyword Tag command, 119
- New Sub-Category command, 118
- Next Photo button, 103
- noise, removing, 232–233
- Normal blend mode, 258
- notes, 111–112, 130–131
- NTSC file format, 336–337
- numeric values, 272, 275–276

## • O •

- Old Photo effect, 254
- online albums, 348–349
- online auctions, 369–370
- Online Gallery panel, 338
- online Help system, 20
- online photo album, 337–339
- online printing services, 327–328
- online prints, 351
- online service orders, 34–35, 81
- Online Support command, 27
- Only view, 123
- opacity
  - layer settings, 171
  - Paint Bucket tool, 284
  - type stylizing, 306
- Open Copy button, 86, 91
- Open dialog box, 12–13, 86
- Open Image button, 86, 91
- Open Preferences dialog box tool, 86–87
- optical character recognition (OCR), 70



- Options bar
    - Cookie Cutter tool, 157
    - Eraser tool, 159
    - Eyedropper tool color sampling, 275
    - image zooms, 106
    - Lasso tool selections, 147
    - Magic Wand tool selections, 150–151
    - marquee selections, 142–144
    - preset gradients, 285
    - Quick Selection Brush, 155
    - Selection Brush, 153
    - shape drawing, 292
    - tool attribute selections, 17, 19
    - type settings, 299–301
  - Order Prints wizard, online prints, 351
  - Organizer & Share pane, 34
  - Organizer
    - adding files when saving, 57
    - Albums panel, 124–127
    - automating tasks, 131–135
    - by captions search, 111–112
    - by faces search, 113
    - by history search, 112
    - by notes search, 111–112
    - captions, 130–131
    - catalogs, 120–122
    - Collections panel search, 111
    - Date view, 97
    - e-mail photo selections, 351
    - Find menu searches, 110–113
    - Folder Location view, 96
    - Full Screen view, 99–104
    - Greeting Card image selections, 345
    - hiding/displaying files, 127
    - hiding/displaying the Panels Bin, 96
    - image organization tool, 10
    - image ratings, 122–123
    - image sorting, 109–110
    - Import Batch view, 95
    - importing cell phone images, 81–82
    - importing files, 80–81
    - keyword tags, 116–120
    - launching from the Welcome screen, 10
    - media type sorting, 110
    - metadata search, 112
    - notes, 130–131
    - online photo album selections, 337–338
    - opening multipage PDF files, 335–336
    - Photo Book image selections, 343
    - program preferences, 32–35
    - renaming files, 135
    - search by date, 110–111
    - Show Maps, 97–99
    - slide show image selections, 331
    - slide shows, 99–104
    - stacking images, 127–129
    - switching to Full Edit mode, 11–12
    - Thumbnail display, 95
    - thumbnail image addition, 94–95
    - untagged item search, 111
    - version sets, 129–130
  - Organizer Preferences dialog box, 33–35, 78
  - orientation, text, 301
  - Outer Glows style, 256
  - outlines, 140, 283
  - output devices, 38–40, 44–46
  - overexposures
    - Auto Smart Fix, 191–192
    - Color Curves command, 224–225
    - lighting adjustments, 214–215
  - Overlay blend mode, 260–261
- *p* ●
- page numbers, projects, 343
  - Paint Bucket tool, 283–284
  - painting
    - Brush tool, 278–280
    - Detail Smart Brush tool, 237, 239–240
    - Paint Bucket tool, 283–284
    - Impressionist Brush tool, 280–281
    - Quick Selection Brush, 155–156
    - Selection Brush, 153–155
    - Smart Brush tool, 237–239
    - Stroke command, 283
    - type stylizing, 306–308
  - PAL file format, 336–337
  - Pan & Zoom view, 331
  - Panel Options command, 173]
  - Panels Bin, 19, 22, 96, 329–330
  - panning, images, 108
  - panoramas, 263–269
  - Pantone Huey Monitor Color, 39
  - Paragraph type mode, 296, 298–299
  - Paste command, 179–180
  - Paste into Selection command, 181–182
  - Pattern Stamp tool, 290
  - patterns, 177, 284, 189–190
  - PC Paintbrush (.PCX) file format, 61
  - Pencil tool, drawing techniques, 276–277
  - Performance pane, 31
  - Photo Books, 343–345
  - Photo Downloader, 74–75
  - Photo Filter command, 229–230
  - photo filters, 229–230
  - Photo Mail, 352–353
  - Photo Project Format (.PSE) file format, 59
  - photo sharing, Share panel, 330
  - Photomerge Faces command, 267–268
  - Photomerge Group Shot command, 266–267
  - Photomerge Panorama command, 263–265

- Photomerge Scene Cleaner command, 268–269
- Photoshop (.PSD/.PDD) file format, 59, 184
- Photoshop Elements Help command, 27
- Photoshop EPS (.EPS) file format, 59–60
- Photoshop Portable Document Format (.PDF/.PDP) file format, 61–62
- Photoshop RAW (.RAW) file format, 62
- Photoshop.com
  - account creation, 347–348
  - album sharing, 348–349
  - file backups, 349–350
  - file synchronization, 349–350
  - importing files, 81
  - member services, 10
  - online photo albums, 337–339
  - synchronization preferences, 35
  - tutorials, 350
- Picture (.PCT/.PICT) File format, 62
- Pin Light blend mode, 260–261
- Pixar (.PXR) file format, 62
- Pixel Dimensions area, 47
- pixels
  - color theory, 36
  - color theory, 43–44
  - fringe, 227
  - halo, 227
  - raster images, 44
  - resolutions, 44–46
  - soft-edged selections, 140
  - versus vectors, 290–291
- place cards, project idea, 372
- Place on Map command, 119
- Play/Pause button, 103
- plug-ins, 32, 78–79
- Point type mode, 296–298
- Polygon tool, 291–293
- Polygonal Lasso tool, 146
- pop-up menus, context menus, 17
- pop-up toolbar, Tools panel selections, 18
- Portable Document Format (PDF) files
  - installation CD, 28
  - layers, 184
  - slide shows, 334–336
- Portable Network Graphics (.PNG) file format, 62
- Posterize command, 231–232
- posters, project idea, 370–371
- Preferences dialog box
  - accepting/canceling changes, 30
  - Display & Cursors pane, 32
  - General pane, 30, 31
  - Grid pane, 32
  - history states, 27
  - panes list, 30
  - Performance pane, 31
  - Plug-Ins pane, 32
  - resetting to default, 31
  - Saving Files pane, 31
  - Shift key preferences, 18
  - switching between panes, 31
  - Transparency pane, 32
  - Type pane, 32
  - Units & Rulers pane, 32
- Preset Manager
  - brush tip libraries, 279
  - gradient presets, 288
  - Help system, 35
  - library settings, 35–36
  - saving settings, 35–36
  - tool editing options, 35
  - view settings, 35
- Previous Photo button, 103
- Print dialog box, 321–322
- Print Size button, 106
- printers
  - 8-bit images, 37–38
  - Canon, 324–325
  - color profile conversion, 313–315
  - color profiles, 41, 312–315
  - custom profile, 322–323
  - Epson inkjet, 315–323
  - HP inkjet, 323–324
  - output color matching, 38–40
  - printer profile selection, 321–323
  - resolutions, 44–46, 49–50
- printing, 312, 315–328
- process color (CMYK) color mode, 50
- profiles, color workspace, 40–41
- Project Bin
  - adding files, 25
  - adding pages to an existing file, 83–84
  - Bin Actions menu, 25
  - hiding/displaying, 24–25
  - image navigation tool, 9
  - new view creation, 24
  - reordering images, 23
  - switching between views, 24
  - thumbnail image display, 12–13, 23–24
- projects
  - adding pages to an existing file, 83–84
  - ads, 369–370
  - Auto-Fill, 343
  - business cards, 372
  - business inventory, 371
  - captions, 343
  - CD/DVD Labels, 347
  - clothes, 370
  - Create panel selections, 329–330
  - documentation, 371–372
  - flipbooks, 339–340
  - flyers, 369–370
  - gift wrap, 372

Greeting Cards, 345–346  
 hats, 370  
 household inventory, 371  
 layout selections, 342  
 online auctions, 369–370  
 online photo albums, 337–339  
 page numbers, 343  
 Photo Books, 343–345  
 place cards, 372  
 posters, 370–371  
 .PSE (Photo Project Format), 59  
 saving, 344  
 school reports, 372  
 screen savers, 367–368  
 slide shows, 330–336  
 wallpaper, 367–368  
 Properties panel, 122–123, 131

## • Q •

quality, file editing, 131–134  
 Quick button, Shortcuts bar, 20–21  
 Quick Edit mode, 9, 21–23, 57  
 Quick Fix mode, 11, 196–199, 244  
 Quick Selection Brush, 155–156  
 QuickTime file format, 66

## • R •

Radial Blur filter, 234  
 raster format, 296  
 raster images, 44  
 Ratings menu, 122–123  
 ratings, images, 122–123  
 Rectangle tool, 291–293  
 Rectangular Marquee tool, 140  
 red eye, Auto Red Eye Fix, 194  
 Red Eye Removal tool, 23, 86–87, 194–105  
 Reduce Noise filter, 233  
 Remove Color Cast command, 219–220  
 Remove Color command, 222  
 Remove from Map command, 119  
 Remove Item(s) from Version Set command, 130  
 Remove Photo from Stack command, 128  
 Rename dialog box, 135  
 Replace Color command, 222–223  
 Resample Image check box, 47–48  
 resampling, 46–49  
 Resize Windows to Fit check box, 106  
 resolutions  
   downsampling, 46  
   image dimension relationships, 46  
   output devices, 44–46, 49–50  
   print preparation, 312

  resizing images, 46–48  
   resizing images after importing, 75–76  
   scanned images, 77–78  
   upsampling, 46  
 Revert command, 26  
 Revert to Original command, 130  
 RGB color channel, 36–37  
 RGB mode, 51–53  
 RGB values, Camera Raw, 86, 88  
 Rotate 90 Degrees Left button, 103  
 Rotate 90 Degrees Right button, 103  
 Rotate Left tool, 86–87  
 Rotate Right tool, 86–87  
 Rounded Rectangle tool, 291–293  
 Roundness, 279  
 Rule of Thirds, 359  
 rulers, 32

## • S •

Satellite maps, 99  
 Saturation blend mode, 262–263  
 Save As dialog box, 57–58  
 Save dialog box, 57  
 Save Image button, 86, 91  
 Save Keyword Tags to a File command, 118  
 Save Selection dialog box, 166  
 Saving Files pane, 31  
 Scale Styles, 48  
 scanned images, 190–191, 234  
 Scanner pane, 34  
 scanners  
   16-bit images, 38  
   artwork preparation, 77  
   automatic document feeders, 71  
   dividing scanned images, 190–191  
   grayscale images, 78  
   high bit depths, 78  
   image requirements, 77–78  
   legacy pictures, 71  
   line art, 78  
   multiple images with one pass, 79–80  
   OCR (optical character recognition), 70  
   Organizer preferences, 34  
   platen cleaning, 76  
   plug-ins, 78–79  
   SCSI (Small Computer Systems Interface)  
     connections, 76  
     source material cleaning, 77  
     sweet spot, 77  
     versus digital cameras, 70–71  
 Scatter, Brush tool dynamics, 278  
 school reports, project idea, 372  
 Scitex Continuous Tone (.SCT) file format, 62  
 scratch disk, 31

- Scratch Sizes command, 15
- scratches, 232–233
- Screen blend mode, 259–260
- screen savers, 367–368
- scroll bars, 13–14
- searches, 110–113, 119
- Select All command, 163
- Select All Layers command, 173
- Select Layers of Similar Type command, 173
- Select menu, 16, 163–166, 173
- selection borders, 149, 189
- Selection Brush, 153–155
- selections
  - adding to, 152
  - Background Eraser tool, 159–160
  - borders, 165
  - collision avoidance, 152–153
  - Cookie Cutter tool, 156–158
  - defining, 139–140
  - defringing, 227
  - edge refining, 164–165
  - Elliptical Marquee tool, 140–141
  - Eraser tools, 158–160
  - expanding/contracting, 164, 165
  - feathering, 164
  - fill techniques, 281–283
  - filter application, 246–247
  - freeform, 144–149
  - growing, 165–166
  - Image window zooms, 105
  - intersecting, 152
  - inversing, 164
  - Lasso tools, 144–149
  - Layers panel, 170
  - loading, 166
  - Magic Eraser tool, 160
  - Magic Extractor command, 160–162
  - Magic Wand tool, 149–151
  - Magnetic Lasso tool, 147–149
  - Marquee tools, 140–144
  - marquees, 140
  - moving, 141
  - outlining, 283
  - Polygonal Lasso tool, 146
  - preset gradient fill, 284–286
  - preset patterns, 289
  - Quick Selection Brush, 155–156
  - Rectangular Marquee tool, 140
  - reselecting, 163
  - saving, 166
  - Select menu, 163–166
  - selecting/deselecting all, 163
  - Selection Brush, 153–155
  - similar, 165–166
  - soft-edged, 140
  - subtracting from, 152
  - separator bar, 24
  - service centers, 326–327
  - Set as Top Item command, 130
  - Set as Top Photo command, 129
  - Shadow button, Camera Raw, 86, 88
  - shadows
    - Auto Smart Fix, 191–192
    - Camera Raw, 88
    - Color Curves command, 224–225
    - lighting adjustments, 214–215
  - Shadows/Highlights command, 214–215
  - shape layers, 172, 177–178
  - Shape Selection tool, 294
  - shapes, 290–294
  - Share button, Shortcuts bar, 20–21
  - Share panel
    - Auto-Fill, 343
    - captions, 343
    - e-mailing creations, 351–352
    - layout selections, 342
    - number of pages, 343
    - online photo albums, 337–339
    - Photo Mail, 352–353
    - photo sharing selections, 329–330
  - Share workspace, 11
  - Sharing pane, 34
  - Sharpen tool, 208–209
  - sharpening, 235–237
  - Shift key, 18, 141–142
  - Shortcuts bar, 20–21, 23, 109, 123
  - Show Files from Organizer command 25
  - Show Maps, Organizer, 97–99
  - Show on Map command, 119
  - Show Only Navigation Controls button, 104
  - Show Open Files command, 25
  - Side by Side/Above and Below button, 103
  - Similar command, 165–166
  - Simplify command, 172
  - Size box, 14
  - Size dialog box, 312
  - skin tones, 224–226
  - sky, brightening, 198
  - Slide Show Editor, 331–334
  - Slide Show Output Wizard, 334–337
  - slide shows, 99–104, 330–336
  - Small Computer Systems Interface (SCSI), 76
  - Smart Blur filter, 234
  - Smart Brush tool, 237–239
  - Smooth command, 164
  - Smudge tool, 206–207
  - Soft Light blend mode, 260–261
  - sorts, 109–110
  - sound recordings, 333
  - spacing, 278, 360
  - Specify zoom level button, 104
  - Sponge tool, image corrections, 209–310

Spot Healing Brush tool, 203–204  
 squares, selections, 141–142  
 sRGB color models, 40–41  
 Stack Selected Photos command, 128  
 stacking order, layers, 169, 172  
 star ratings, images, 122–123  
 status bar, image information display, 14  
 Straighten tool, 86–87, 189–190  
 strikethrough, type style, 301  
 Stroke dialog box, outlines, 283  
 styles, 281, 301  
 subjects, 357–358, 360–366  
 Sync Pan and Zoom button, 104  
 synchronization, 35, 239–350  
 system resources, .BMP file format, 59

## • T •

Tablet Pressure (pen icon), 147  
 Tagged Image File Format (.TIFF/.TIF), 63, 184  
 tags, 34  
 Targa (.TGA/.VDA/.ICB/.VST) file format, 63  
 teeth, whitening, 198  
 temperatures, 86, 90  
 templates, 338  
 text. *See also* type  
   alignments, 301  
   colors, 301  
   editing, 301–302  
   orientation, 301  
   Paragraph type mode, 296, 298–299  
   Photo Books, 344  
   Point type mode, 296–298  
   slide show addition, 332  
   type layers, 178  
   warped, 301, 308  
 text attributes, 32  
 themes, 344–346  
 Threshold command, 231  
 Thumbnail display view, 95  
 thumbnails  
   Organizer image addition, 94–95  
   Project Bin display, 12–13, 23–24  
   saving files, 57  
 tiles, 107  
 Timing command, 15  
 tinted photos, 221  
 tints, Camera Raw, 86, 90  
 Title bar, 14  
 title pages, Photo Books, 344  
 tolerance  
   Impressionist Brush tool, 281  
   Magic Wand tool, 149–150  
   Paint Bucket tool, 284  
 tonal range, 90–91, 224, 227–229

toolbars, 18, 102–104  
 Tools panel, 17–20, 22, 271–272  
 ToolTips, Help system, 20, 28  
 Touch Up pane, image corrections, 198  
 transformations, layers, 183–184  
 transitions, slide shows, 332–333  
 Transparency pane, 32  
 Truevision, Targa file format, 63  
 tutorials, Photoshop.com, 350  
 type, 296, 299–308. *See also* text  
   Type command, 172  
   type layers, 178, 255  
   Type Mask tool, 296, 303–305  
   Type pane, 32  
   Type tool, 44, 296–299, 301–302

## • U •

underexposures, 191–192, 214–215  
 underline, type style, 301  
 Undo command, 25  
 Undo History panel, 25–26  
 Ungroup command, 172  
 Units & Rulers pane, 32  
 universal serial bus (USB), 31  
 Unsharp Mask command, 235–236  
 Unstack Photos command, 128  
 untagged items, searches, 111  
 updates, 34–35  
 uppercase letters, 57–58  
 upsampling, images, 46–49

## • V •

vector format, 296  
 vector objects, 44, 172, 177–189  
 vectors, versus pixels, 290–291  
 version sets, images, 129–130  
 vertical lines, 362  
 video clips, 71  
 video file formats, 66  
 Video Flipbook dialog box, 339–340  
 videos, flipbooks, 339–340  
 View menu, 16  
 viewpoints, 362–363  
 Vintage Photo effect, 254  
 Visibility style, 256  
 Vivid Light blend mode, 260–261

## • W •

wallpaper, 59, 367–368  
 warped text, type distortion, 301, 308

- WAV file format, audio files, 66
- Web graphics, 59, 62
- Web pages, 337–339
- Web safe colors, 272, 275–276
- Web sites
  - Adobe Reader, 28
  - Amazon, 39
  - Cafepress.com, 370
  - Costco, 314
  - Dry Creek Photo, 313
  - online Help system, 20
  - Photoshop.com, 10
  - Wiley support, 6
  - Zazzle.com, 370
- Welcome screen, 10–12
- White Balance, 86, 89–90
- width dimension, 47
- Width text box, 143–144, 147
- Window menu, 16, 19
- Windows Mail, 351–352
- Windows Vista, screen savers, 368
- wizards
  - AutoPlay, 72–73
  - Backup Catalog to CD/DVD or Hard Drive, 135–136
  - Burn/Backup, 135
  - Creation, 351–352
  - Kodak EasyShare, 351
  - Order Prints, 351
  - Slide Show Output, 334–337
- WMA file format, audio files, 66
- WMV file format, video files, 66
- workspaces, 11, 21–23, 40–41. *See also* image windows
- wrap text, Paragraph type mode, 298–299



XML (eXtensible Markup Language) files, 118, 127

X-Rite Eye-One Display 2, 39



Yahoo! Maps, 97–99, 117, 119



ZIP compression, 64

Zoom All Windows check box, 106

Zoom In tool, 98, 106, 108

zoom levels, resolutions, 45–46

Zoom Out button, 104

Zoom Out tool, 98, 106, 108

Zoom presets, Camera Raw, 86, 91

Zoom slider, Options bar, 106

Zoom tool, 22, 24, 86–87, 105, 165

zooms, 13, 98, 104–106